

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the V501SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- For instructions on how to use Vodafone live!, see Vodafone live! manual.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible Vodafone services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

V501SH transmits at 1.5 GHz and is compatible with the Vodafone K.K. network.

This product is exclusively for use in Japan.

Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see P.17-21) concerning unclear or missing information.

Symbols

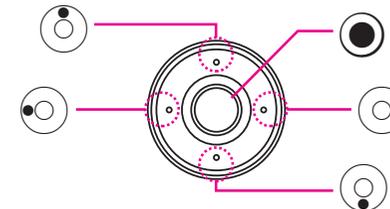
Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc.

In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.

Basic Multi Selector Operations

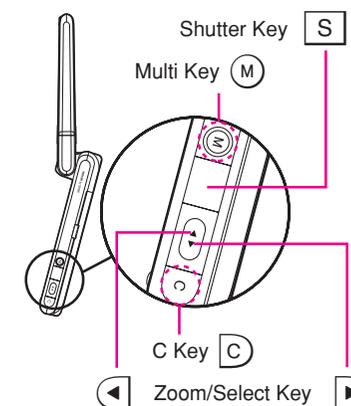
- : Press or
- : Press or
- : Press , , or



Side Keys

Use Side Keys when Display is in Viewer position (see P.1-12). In this manual, Side Keys are indicated as shown to the right.

"S" is not inscribed on the actual Shutter Key.



Note

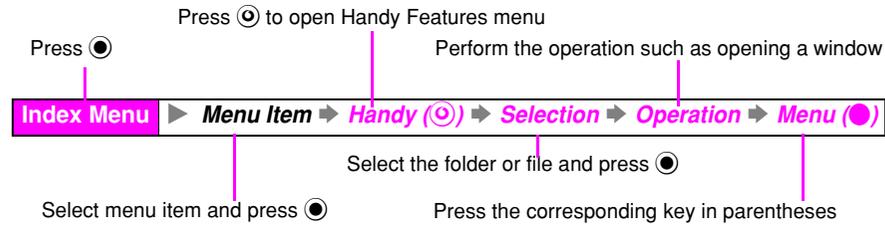
- In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (clamshell open: see P.1-11).
- Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

Page References

When  appears next to a page reference, indicated pages are in Vodafone live! Manual. When only the page numbers appear, indicated pages are in Basic Operations Manual.

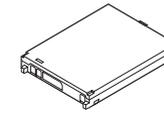
Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Index Menu are abbreviated as follows:

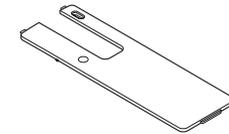


Accessories

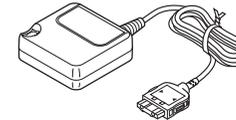
■ **Battery (SHBAC1)***
(Type 1 lithium-ion battery)



■ **Texture Panel x 2***



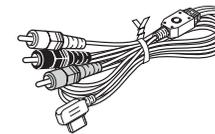
■ **Rapid Charger (SHCQ01)***



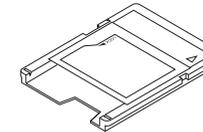
■ **miniSD™ Memory Card★**
(32 MB card preloaded with Custom Screens)



■ **Video Cable (SHPU01)***



■ **miniSD™ Memory Card Adapter★**



*May also be purchased separately.

★Complimentary sample

Optional Accessories

■ **Desktop Holder**

■ **Analog Conversion Cable**

■ **In-Car Charger**

■ **Digital Conversion Cable**

■ **LCD Remote/Mic**



- For accessory-related information, please contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.17-21).
- In this manual, miniSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card."

Contents

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Symbols..... | i |
| Accessories..... | iii |
| Contents..... | iv |
| Safety Precautions..... | xvii |
| General Notes..... | xxvi |
| Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)..... | xxviii |

1 Getting Started

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Function & Feature Preview..... | 1-2 |
| Handset Parts & Functions..... | 1-4 |
| ■ Handset..... | 1-4 |
| ■ Display Indicators..... | 1-8 |
| ■ Sub Display Indicators..... | 1-10 |
| Display Positions & Key Ops..... | 1-11 |
| ■ Rotating Display..... | 1-11 |
| ■ Side Key Assignments (Viewer)..... | 1-13 |
| ■ Motion Control..... | 1-14 |
| Texture Panel..... | 1-15 |
| ■ Replacing Texture Panel..... | 1-15 |
| Battery & Charger..... | 1-17 |
| ■ Getting Started..... | 1-17 |
| ■ Installing & Removing Battery..... | 1-21 |
| ■ Rapid Charger..... | 1-23 |
| ■ Desktop Holder..... | 1-24 |
| ■ In-Car Charger..... | 1-25 |
| Handset Power On/Off..... | 1-26 |
| ■ Key Guard..... | 1-27 |
| Clock Settings..... | 1-28 |
| Handset Menus..... | 1-29 |
| ■ Index Menu..... | 1-29 |
| ■ Functions Menu..... | 1-30 |
| ■ Soft Keys..... | 1-32 |
| ■ Using MC Cursor..... | 1-33 |
| ■ Quick Operations..... | 1-34 |
| ■ Keypad Shortcuts..... | 1-35 |
| ■ Guide..... | 1-35 |
| Handset Codes..... | 1-36 |
| ■ Security Code..... | 1-36 |
| ■ Center Access Code..... | 1-36 |

2 Basic Handset Operations

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Initiating a Call..... | 2-2 |
| ● Viewer Position..... | 2-3 |
| ■ Redial..... | 2-4 |
| ■ International Call & Send With Code..... | 2-5 |
| ● Setup Preset..... | 2-5 |
| ● International Call & Send With Code..... | 2-5 |
| ■ Emergency Calls..... | 2-5 |
| Incoming Call..... | 2-6 |
| ● Viewer Position..... | 2-6 |
| ■ Call History..... | 2-8 |
| Handling Incoming Calls..... | 2-9 |
| ■ Placing Callers on Hold..... | 2-9 |
| ● Viewer Position..... | 2-9 |
| ■ Quick Recorder..... | 2-10 |
| ■ Clamshell Closed..... | 2-11 |
| Delayed Ringer..... | 2-12 |
| Engaged Call Operations..... | 2-13 |
| ■ Earpiece Volume..... | 2-13 |
| ■ Voice Memo..... | 2-14 |
| ■ Notepad Memory..... | 2-15 |
| ● Opening Entries..... | 2-15 |
| Redial & Call History..... | 2-16 |
| ● Delete..... | 2-16 |
| Information Menu..... | 2-17 |
| ■ Information Menu Contents..... | 2-18 |
| ■ Information Menu Settings..... | 2-19 |
| ● Reset..... | 2-19 |
| ● Incoming Light..... | 2-19 |
| ● Time Out Setting..... | 2-19 |
| Call Time..... | 2-20 |
| ● Reset..... | 2-20 |
| ● Instant Display..... | 2-20 |
| Call Charge..... | 2-21 |
| ● Reset..... | 2-21 |
| ● Instant Display..... | 2-21 |
| My Number & Owner Profile..... | 2-22 |
| ● Edit, Delete & Copy..... | 2-22 |

| | | |
|----------|----------------------------|--|
| 3 | Manner Mode | Minding Mobile Manners 3-2 |
| | | Manner Mode 3-3 |
| | | ■ Activating & Canceling 3-3 |
| | | ■ Manner Mode Settings 3-4 |
| | | ● Message Recorder 3-4 |
| | | ● Ring Tone Level 3-4 |
| | | ● Vibration 3-4 |
| | | ● Alarm Volume 3-4 |
| | | ● Alarm Vibration 3-4 |
| | | ● LED Indicator 3-5 |
| | | ● Whisper Mode 3-5 |
| | | ● Sound Volume 3-5 |
| | | ● V-Appli Volume 3-5 |
| | | ● V-Appli Vibration 3-5 |
| | | Off-Line Mode 3-6 |
| 4 | Entering Characters | Character Selection 4-2 |
| | | ■ Entry Modes 4-2 |
| | | ■ Key Assignments 4-3 |
| | | Entering Characters 4-4 |
| | | ■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana 4-4 |
| | | ■ Entering Alphanumerics 4-6 |
| | | ■ Symbols, Pictographs & Emoticons 4-7 |
| | | ■ Mail & Web Extensions 4-8 |
| | | ■ Copying from Phone Book 4-9 |
| | | ■ Character Code 4-9 |
| | | ■ Pager Code 4-10 |
| | | Conversion Methods (Japanese Only) 4-12 |
| | | ■ Phonetic Conversion 4-12 |
| | | ■ One-Hiragana Conversion 4-12 |
| | | ■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion 4-13 |
| | | ■ Quick Conversion (for Hiragana) 4-13 |
| | | ■ Conversion Settings 4-14 |
| | | ● Disable Predictive/Previous Usage 4-14 |
| | | ● Reset Learning 4-14 |
| | | Dictionaries (Japanese Only) 4-15 |
| | | ■ User Dictionary 4-15 |
| | | ● New Entry 4-15 |
| | | ● Edit 4-15 |
| | | ■ V501SH Download Dictionary 4-15 |
| | | ● Acquire Dictionary 4-15 |
| | | ● Cancel 4-16 |
| | | Editing Characters 4-16 |
| | | ■ Deleting 4-16 |
| | | ■ Replacing 4-16 |
| | | ■ Copy/Cut & Paste 4-17 |
| | | ■ Deleting Text Before or After Cursor 4-17 |

| | | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| | | Text Memo 4-18 |
| | | ■ Entering Text 4-18 |
| | | ■ Text Memo Functions 4-20 |
| | | ● Edit/Delete 4-20 |
| | | ● To Data Folder 4-20 |
| | | ● Change to Vnote 4-20 |
| 5 | Phone Book | Overview 5-2 |
| | | Saving to Phone Book 5-3 |
| | | ■ Phone Book Entry Items 5-3 |
| | | ■ New Phone Book Entries 5-4 |
| | | ■ Photo 5-6 |
| | | ■ Saving Secret Mode Entries 5-7 |
| | | ■ Saving from Redial or Call History 5-8 |
| | | ■ Phone Book Memory Status 5-8 |
| | | Option Settings 5-9 |
| | | ■ Overview 5-9 |
| | | ■ Setting Options 5-10 |
| | | ● Personal Ring Tone & Incoming Notice 5-10 |
| | | ● Mail Folder 5-10 |
| | | ● Auto Reply 5-11 |
| | | Using Phone Book 5-11 |
| | | ■ Dialing from Phone Book 5-11 |
| | | ■ Phone Book Search 5-12 |
| | | ● Memory No. Search 5-13 |
| | | ● Katakana Search 5-13 |
| | | ● Group Search 5-13 |
| | | ● Search by Reading 5-13 |
| | | ■ Speed Dial 5-14 |
| | | ■ Show Photo 5-14 |
| | | Editing Phone Book 5-15 |
| | | ■ Correction/Change 5-15 |
| | | ■ Deleting Entries 5-15 |
| | | Group Settings 5-16 |
| | | ■ Changing Group Name 5-16 |
| | | ■ Group Ring Tone 5-16 |

6 Mobile Camera

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Getting Started | 6-2 |
| ■ File Formats & Save Locations | 6-2 |
| ■ Mobile Camera Basics | 6-3 |
| ■ Camera Display Indicators | 6-4 |
| ■ Viewfinder & Key Assignments | 6-5 |
| Still Images | 6-8 |
| ■ Still Image Modes | 6-8 |
| ■ Capturing Still Images | 6-10 |
| ● Add to Phone Book | 6-12 |
| ● Save As Thumb | 6-12 |
| ● Rotate Thumb | 6-12 |
| ■ Still Image Functions | 6-12 |
| ■ Self Timer | 6-13 |
| ■ Adding Frames | 6-14 |
| ■ Burst Mode | 6-16 |
| Video | 6-18 |
| ■ Video Mode | 6-18 |
| ■ Recording Video | 6-20 |
| ■ Video Recording Operations | 6-22 |
| Shooting Options | 6-23 |
| ● Toggle Preview | 6-23 |
| ● Show/Hide Indicators | 6-23 |
| ● Shutter Click | 6-23 |
| ● Mobile Light | 6-24 |
| Image Settings | 6-24 |
| ● Brightness | 6-24 |
| ● Image Size | 6-25 |
| ● Image Quality | 6-25 |
| ● Shoot by Scene | 6-25 |
| ● Mic Settings | 6-25 |
| Additional Settings | 6-26 |
| ● Select Mode | 6-26 |
| ● Save to | 6-26 |
| ● Auto Save | 6-26 |
| ● Auto Reset | 6-27 |
| ● Key Ops Guide | 6-27 |
| Opening Images & Playing Video | 6-27 |
| ■ Opening Still Images | 6-27 |
| ■ Playing Video | 6-29 |
| Memory Status | 6-30 |

7 Display

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Editing Video | 6-30 |
| ■ Clipping Video | 6-31 |
| ■ Saving Images from Video | 6-32 |
| ■ Clipping Portions between Two Points | 6-32 |
| ■ Cropping Video Clips | 6-33 |
| ■ Editing Telops | 6-33 |
| ● Text Effects | 6-35 |
| ● Telop Scroll | 6-35 |
| Sending Images & Video | 6-36 |
| ■ Sha-mail Mode Images | 6-36 |
| ■ Camera Mode Images | 6-38 |
| ■ Video Clips | 6-38 |
| Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) | 6-39 |
| ■ Selecting Images & Prints | 6-39 |
| ■ Print Settings | 6-40 |
| ● Number of Copies | 6-40 |
| ● Add Date | 6-40 |
| ● Index Print | 6-40 |
| ● Check Settings | 6-40 |
| Postcard & Calendar | 6-41 |
| ■ Postcard | 6-41 |
| ■ Calendar | 6-42 |
| Wallpaper | 7-2 |
| Clock & Calendar | 7-3 |
| ■ Clock Display | 7-3 |
| ■ Calendar | 7-4 |
| Display Images | 7-5 |
| Index Menu Display | 7-6 |
| ■ Preset Patterns | 7-6 |
| ■ Original Patterns | 7-6 |
| Fonts | 7-7 |
| Custom Screens | 7-8 |
| ■ Basics | 7-8 |
| ■ Downloading Custom Screens (Requires Japanese) | 7-9 |
| ■ Purchasing Custom Screen Keys | 7-9 |
| ■ Custom Screen Setup | 7-10 |
| ● Delete | 7-11 |
| ● Open Link | 7-11 |
| Display Patterns | 7-11 |
| Light Settings | 7-12 |
| ● Brightness | 7-13 |
| ● In-Car Backlight | 7-13 |

| | |
|---|--|
| 7 Display | Sub Display Settings7-13 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Sub Display On/Off7-13 ● Backlight Settings.....7-13 ● Adjust Contrast.....7-14 ● Recipient Display7-14 |
| | Other Display Settings7-14 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Language7-14 ● Power On Message.....7-14 ● Viewer Display7-15 ● Dialing Display7-15 ● Standby Animation7-15 ● Screen Animation.....7-16 ● Vodafone live! Animation7-16 |
| 8 Sounds & Related Functions | Call Functions8-2 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Ring Tone Level8-2 ■ Ring Tone.....8-3 ■ Handset Vibration.....8-4 ■ Mobile/Small Light8-5 ■ Ring Time8-5 |
| | Sound Effects8-6 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Sounds8-6 ■ Basic Sound Settings8-7 ● Sound Volume/ Set LED to Sound.....8-7 |
| | Original Voice8-8 |
| | Original Ring Tone8-9 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basics8-9 ■ Creating an Original Ring Tone8-13 ■ Editing an Original Ring Tone8-15 ■ Deleting an Original Ring Tone8-17 |
| | Instrument Effects8-17 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basics8-17 ■ Creating Instrument Effects.....8-21 |
| | Other Sound Related Functions8-22 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Speaker Phone/Speaker8-22 ● Tone Octave.....8-22 | |
| 9 Music Player | Music Player Basics9-2 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basic Functions9-2 ■ Music Key & Music Player9-3 |
| | Recording Music9-4 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basic Functions9-4 ■ Connecting to Audio Sources.....9-6 ■ Recording.....9-8 |

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Recording Settings.....9-9 ● Monitor Level9-9 ● Synchro Recording9-9 ● Bit Rate9-10 ● Track Break Level.....9-10 |
| | Playing Music9-10 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basic Functions.....9-10 ■ Playback9-12 ■ Playback Settings9-14 ● Play Setting.....9-14 ● Sound Effect9-14 ● Train (Volume Control)9-14 ● Incoming Settings9-15 |
| | Music Files9-15 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Play List9-15 ■ Managing Music Files9-15 ● Property9-15 ● Rename Play List Items.....9-16 ● Move9-16 ● Erase9-16 |
| 10 Voice Recorder | Recording Voice10-2 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basic Functions.....10-2 ■ Recording.....10-3 ■ Recording Settings.....10-4 ● Mic Level.....10-4 ● Recording Mode10-4 ● Delete10-4 |
| | Playback10-5 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Basic Functions.....10-5 ■ Playback10-5 ■ Playback Settings10-7 ● Play Setting.....10-7 ● Train (Volume Control)10-7 ● Split Data10-7 |
| | Voice Ring Tone10-8 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Editing Voice Files10-8 ■ Using as Ring Tone10-8 |
| | Before Use11-2 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Precautions11-2 ■ Inserting & Removing Memory Card.....11-3 ■ Memory Card Adapter.....11-4 ■ File Organization.....11-5 |
| | Using Memory Card11-6 |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Format Card.....11-6 ■ Opening Memory Card Files11-6 |

| | | | |
|-----------|--------------------|--|--|
| 11 | Memory Card | Transferring Files 11-8 ■ Copy or Move 11-9 ■ Transfer All 11-10 Additional Functions 11-12 ● Local Contents 11-12 ● Synchronize 11-12 ● Autorun 11-12 | |
| | 12 | Managing Files (Data Folder) | File Organization 12-2 Data Folder 12-3 ■ Contents 12-3 ■ Window Description 12-4 ■ Icons 12-5 ■ Opening Files 12-6 ■ Display Settings 12-8 Opening Files 12-8 ■ Handset Data Folder 12-8 ■ Sending Files via Super Mail 12-9 ■ Properties 12-10 Animation File 12-11 ■ Simple Animation 12-11 ■ Converting Animation Format 12-13 ■ Creating E-Animation 12-14 ■ Opening Animation Files 12-19 Using Images & Animation 12-20 ■ Changing Display Size 12-20 ■ Setting Image & Animation as Wallpaper 12-20 ■ Setting Image & Animation as Display Images 12-20 ■ Saving Burst Shot Images 12-21 ■ Slide Show 12-21 Editing Images 12-22 ■ Changing Image Size 12-22 ■ Entering Text 12-24 ■ Adding Stamps 12-24 ■ Visual Effects 12-25 ■ Face Arrange 12-26 ■ Additional Picture Effects 12-28 ● Frames 12-28 ● Rotate 12-28 ● File Format & Size 12-28 ● Moving Photo Frame 12-29 Combining Images 12-29 ■ Split Screen 12-30 ■ Panorama Images 12-31 ■ Combining Split Mail Images 12-33 |
| | | | Melody Files 12-33 ■ Playback Volume 12-33 ■ Using for Incoming Tone/Sound Effects 12-34 Chaku-Uta 12-34 ■ Playback 12-34 ■ Playback Settings 12-35 ● Play Setting 12-35 ■ Using as Ring Tone 12-35 ● Incoming Tone 12-35 vFiles 12-36 ■ Basics 12-36 ■ File Organization 12-36 ■ Creating vFiles 12-38 ■ Importing vFiles 12-39 SVG Files 12-39 E-Books 12-40 ■ Reading Content 12-40 ■ Using E-Book Images 12-43 ● Save as Wallpaper 12-43 ● Embedded Information 12-43 ■ Using a Dictionary 12-43 ● Look Up Word 12-43 ● Property 12-43 Editing Files & Folders 12-44 ■ Adding Folders 12-44 ■ Changing File/Folder Name 12-44 ■ Deleting Files & Folders 12-45 ■ Protecting Folders 12-45 ■ Copying/Moving Files 12-46 |
| | 13 | Infrared | Getting Started 13-2 ■ Available Files 13-2 ■ Precautions 13-3 IR Password 13-3 Transferring Files 13-4 ■ One File Transfer 13-4 ■ All File Transfer 13-5 ■ Folders 13-6 |
| | 14 | Handset Security | Changing Security Code 14-2 Handset Locks 14-2 ■ Keypad Lock 14-2 ■ Auto Key Lock 14-3 ■ Phone Book Lock 14-3 ■ Restrict Dial 14-3 |

14 Handset Security

| | |
|--|------|
| Accept Call & Reject Call | 14-4 |
| ■ Saving Entries | 14-4 |
| ■ Accept Call | 14-5 |
| ■ Reject Call | 14-5 |
| ■ Rejecting Other Calls | 14-5 |
| Secret Mode | 14-6 |
| ■ Activating Secret Mode | 14-6 |
| ■ Opening Secret Mode Entries | 14-6 |
| Reset | 14-7 |
| ■ Reset Defaults | 14-7 |
| ■ Reset All | 14-7 |

15 Additional Functions

| | |
|--|-------|
| Handy Call Functions | 15-2 |
| ■ Signal Alert | 15-2 |
| ■ Push Tones | 15-2 |
| Side Key Settings | 15-3 |
| ■ For Incoming Calls | 15-3 |
| ■ Standby c | 15-3 |
| Message Recorder | 15-4 |
| ■ Activating | 15-4 |
| ■ Deactivate | 15-5 |
| ■ Playing Messages | 15-5 |
| Voice Memos | 15-6 |
| Alarm | 15-7 |
| ■ Setting Alarm | 15-7 |
| ■ Alarm Options | 15-9 |
| ■ Canceling & Reactivating Alarm | 15-10 |
| ● Cancel | 15-10 |
| ● Delete | 15-10 |
| ● Settings | 15-10 |
| Auto Power On/Off | 15-11 |
| ■ Auto Power On | 15-11 |
| ■ Auto Power Off | 15-12 |
| Schedule | 15-13 |
| ■ Saving Entries | 15-13 |
| ■ Setting Alarm | 15-16 |
| ● Alarm | 15-16 |
| ■ Schedule & Action Item Options | 15-18 |
| ■ Opening Entries | 15-19 |
| ■ Editing Entries | 15-20 |
| ■ Deleting Entries | 15-20 |
| ● Delete Item | 15-20 |
| ● One Day Schedules | 15-21 |
| ● Delete All | 15-21 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| ■ Other Schedule Settings | 15-21 |
| ● Auto Delete | 15-21 |
| ● Set Color | 15-21 |
| ● View | 15-21 |
| ● Even List | 15-21 |
| Motion Control Sensor & Settings | 15-22 |
| ■ MC Sensor | 15-22 |
| ■ Motion Control Settings | 15-22 |
| ● M-key Settings | 15-22 |
| ● b-Key Settings | 15-22 |
| ● Viewer Setting | 15-23 |
| Compass | 15-23 |
| Shake Counter | 15-24 |
| Shake Sound | 15-25 |
| User Shortcuts | 15-27 |
| ■ Using Shortcuts | 15-27 |
| ■ Assigning User Shortcuts | 15-29 |
| ■ Editing & Deleting Shortcuts | 15-30 |
| ● Change Name | 15-30 |
| ● Delete | 15-30 |
| Stopwatch | 15-30 |
| Kitchen Timer | 15-31 |
| Barcode | 15-32 |
| ■ Scan & Capture | 15-33 |
| ● Scan during Text Entry | 15-35 |
| ■ Reading Saved Barcode Images | 15-35 |
| ■ Opening Saved Scan Results | 15-36 |
| Create QR Codes | 15-37 |
| ■ Creating from Create QR Code Menu | 15-37 |
| ● Owner Profile | 15-37 |
| ● Phone Book | 15-37 |
| ● Mail | 15-38 |
| ● Text | 15-38 |
| ● Melodies & Images | 15-38 |
| ■ Creating from Saved Data | 15-39 |
| Text Scanner | 15-39 |
| ● Scan during Text Entry | 15-41 |
| Battery Saving | 15-41 |
| ■ Power Saving | 15-41 |
| ■ Panel Saving | 15-41 |
| Calculator | 15-42 |
| Spending Memo | 15-43 |
| ● Entry | 15-43 |
| ● Totals | 15-43 |
| ● Delete | 15-43 |
| ● New Item | 15-44 |

15 Additional Functions

| | |
|---|--------------|
| Pen Light..... | 15-44 |
| ● Illuminate..... | 15-44 |
| ● Pen Light Settings..... | 15-44 |
| Viewing Images on Other Devices..... | 15-45 |
| ■ Connecting to Other Devices..... | 15-45 |
| ■ Activating Video Out..... | 15-46 |
| LCD Remote/Mic..... | 15-47 |
| ■ Initiating Calls..... | 15-47 |
| ■ Answering Calls..... | 15-47 |
| ■ Ringer Out..... | 15-48 |
| Fax & PC Transmissions..... | 15-48 |
| ● Fax Transmissions..... | 15-48 |
| ● PC Transmissions..... | 15-48 |

16 Optional Services

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Optional Services Overview..... | 16-2 |
| Call Forwarding..... | 16-3 |
| ● Set Fwd Number..... | 16-3 |
| ● Start Fwd..... | 16-3 |
| ● Cancel Secretary..... | 16-3 |
| ● Check Secretary..... | 16-3 |
| Voice Mail..... | 16-4 |
| ● Voice Mail..... | 16-4 |
| ● Cancel Secretary..... | 16-4 |
| ● Check Secretary..... | 16-4 |
| ● Play Voice Mail..... | 16-5 |
| Ring Time..... | 16-5 |
| ● Ring Time..... | 16-5 |
| Call Waiting..... | 16-6 |
| ● Call Waiting On/Off..... | 16-6 |
| ● Confirm Service..... | 16-6 |
| ● Incoming Calls..... | 16-6 |
| 3 Way Calling..... | 16-7 |
| ● Open Another Line..... | 16-7 |
| ● Switch Line..... | 16-7 |
| ● Break Away (while Switching Lines)..... | 16-7 |
| ● 3 Way Calling..... | 16-7 |
| ● Break Away (from 2 Open Lines)..... | 16-8 |

17 Appendix

| | |
|---|--------------|
| Function List..... | 17-2 |
| Troubleshooting..... | 17-6 |
| Character Code List..... | 17-9 |
| Specifications..... | 17-13 |
| Index..... | 17-15 |
| Warranty & After-Sales Services..... | 17-20 |
| Customer Service..... | 17-21 |

Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

■ Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on.

Symbols and their meanings are described below:

| | | |
|---|----------------|---|
|  | DANGER | Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use |
|  | WARNING | Risk of death or serious injury from improper use |
|  | CAUTION | Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use |

■ Symbols

| | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|
|  | Prohibited Actions |  | Compulsory Actions |  | Attention Required |
|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|

⚠ DANGER

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use only the specified battery, Charger or Holder (see P.iii).



Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.



Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.

Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire.



Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Disassemble, modify or break battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (see P.iii)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Eyes may be severely damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into handset.



Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset, Charger or Holder. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.



Fire or electric shock may occur.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.



Keep handset, Charger and Holder away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.

Avoid sources of fire.



Prevent fire or explosion. Do not use handset in the presence of gas or fine particles (coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.



Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

Keep handset, Charger or Holder away from microwave ovens.



Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat or ignite and cause accidents.

Do not disassemble or modify handset.



- Do not open housing of handset, Charger or Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Holder. Fire or electric shock may result.

If water or foreign matter is inside handset:



Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not subject handset to shocks.



Subjecting handset, Charger or Holder to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should the handset break, remove the battery and contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:



Should there be unusual sound, smoke or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery and unplug Charger and contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

WARNING

Handset

Preventing accidents

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (effective November 1, 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially at road/rail crossings to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by handstrap.

May result in injury or breakage.

Keep Memory Card and Memory Card Adapter out of the reach of children.

If swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Adjusting vibration and Ring Tone settings:

Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.

During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

- Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.
- Rapid Charger
100 VAC
 - In-Car Charger
12/24 VDC

Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.

Fire may result.
Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.

Charger Care

- Do not touch blades with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet. May generate excess heat or fire. 
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

WARNING

Charger

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

Keep metal away from terminals. May cause overheating, fire or electric shock.

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.

Preventing accidents

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.

If Rapid/In-Car Charger cord is damaged:

May cause fire or electric shock; contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance to replace.

During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.

Keep Charger & Desktop Holder out of the reach of children.

Electric shock or injury may occur.

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Implanted pacemakers or defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may be near.

Implanted pacemakers or defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Observe these rules when visiting medical facilities:

- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.

Consult manufacturer for radio wave effects on electronic medical equipment.

⚠️ WARNING

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite. 
- If there is leakage or abnormal odor, avoid fire sources. It may catch fire or burst.
- If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode. 

⚠️ CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care

- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

⚠️ CAUTION

Handset

Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may heat up and lead to burns.

Headphones & Video Cable

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord. May cause damage to the cord.
- Keep plug clean to avoid noise and malfunction.

Volume settings:

Keep handset volume moderate. Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.

Inside vehicles:

Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.

Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

See below for handset materials. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

| Parts | Materials & Finishing |
|--|--|
| Housing (Display side) | Magnesium alloy/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish) |
| Housing (Display back side) | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Housing (Display bottom side) | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Display window, lens cover | Acrylic resin |
| Back ornament (camera/Sub Display) | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: aluminum deposition, acrylic painting) |
| Screw cover (above Display) | ABS resin/Painted |
| Screw cover (below Display) | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting |
| Housing (Keypad/battery side), Battery cover | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Side Keys, Multi Selector, Vodafone live! Key, Mail Key, Power On/Off Key, Start Key, Keypad, Clear Key, Schedule/Memo Key, Text Key | PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting |
| Function Key | ABS resin/Chrome plating |
| Housing ornament | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting |
| Housing ornament (sides) | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Memory Card slot cover | ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting) |
| Headphone Connector cover, External Device Connector cover | Elastomeric resin |
| Screw cover (above Keypad, hinge) | Urethane resin |
| Battery | PC resin |
| Charger Terminal | Nylon 6T/Brass, Au plating (sealer: nickel, copper) |
| Screw (Display side, Keypad side) | SWCH12A/Ni plating |
| Face panel | Acrylic resin/in-mold decorating |

CAUTION

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected.  May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.

Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.

May cause burns.

Use only the specified fuse.

1 A fuse for In-Car Charger. Or may cause breakage/fire.

Always charge handset in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger/Desktop Holder. May cause damage/fire.

Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

Start engine before use. Or car battery may be weakened.

Long periods of disuse

Be sure to unplug Rapid/In-Car Charger after use.

Handset maintenance

When cleaning, disconnect Rapid/In-Car Charger to prevent shock/injury.

Installing In-Car Charger

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.

CAUTION

Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite. 

Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.  Overheating/fire may occur; may reduce performance.

Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate. 

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately. 

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a Vodafone shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal. 

Keep battery out of the reach of children. 

- Charge battery within a range of 5°C - 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate. 
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
- Do not leave battery uncharged. Charge at least once every 6 months.

General Notes

General Use

- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Please keep separate records of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. Vodafone is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C and 35% - 85% humidity.
Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.

- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
- When using headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Handset is not water-proof.**
Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- **Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided.**
May cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only specified products to Headphone Connector. Non-specified devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery.
If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed, or destroyed.
- Handset incorporates a magnetic sensor to detect its position. Handset may not operate properly near other magnetic objects.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

- **V501SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.**

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

- The highest SAR value for V501SH is 0.27 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

- Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites:

- Ministry of Public Management

- <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm>

- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

- <http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html>

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).



Getting Started

Function & Feature Preview

1 Getting Started

Memory Card is required for items with gray background.

Rotating Display
Change Display position for Camera use—Standard, Self Portrait, Viewer—and more.

P.1-11

Motion Control
MC Sensor detects handset movement for MC Shortcut, Shake Sound, Compass, etc.

P.1-14

Texture Panel
Change handset look and feel with interchangeable panels (14 styles available).

P.1-15

Manner Mode
Press a single key to mute ringer and activate Message Recorder automatically.

P.3-3

Phone Book
Save up to 500 entries (with up to three phone numbers and mail addresses each).

P.5-3

Camera
Capture still and video images with built-in 1.3-megapixel camera.

P.6-2

DPOF Printing
Specify images/print-count to print Camera images on DPOF-compatible devices.

P.6-39

Display Settings
Change Wallpaper, Display Images, Fonts, et cetera to customize handset UI.

P.7-2, P.7-5, 7-11

Custom Screen
Load uni-themed Wallpaper, Indicators, Ring Tones, and more, all at the same time.

P.7-8

Postcard Maker
Add text or calendar mask to still images to create original Postcards or Calendars.

P.6-41

Music Player
Download a Music Key (for a one-time fee) to record/play music to/from Memory Cards.

P.9-2

Voice Recorder
Record Voice Memos, etc. using handset microphone and save in Voice Folder.

P.10-2

1 Getting Started

Memory Card
Save files to Memory Card to expand handset memory or back-up your handset files.

P.11-2

Data Folder
Access handset image and sound files from here; files are organized by file type.

P.12-3

Chaku-Uta®
Download Chaku-Uta® (MP4) audio files and use them for Ring Tones/Alarm Tones.

P.12-34

Electronic Books
Purchase and download XPDF and E-Books via "Space Town" to Memory Card.

P.12-40

Infrared
Align handset IR port and a compatible device port for wireless file transfers.

P.13-2

Schedule
Enter daily, weekly and monthly events; set up Alarms, etc. for events.

P.15-13

Barcodes
Scan UPC and QR Codes or create QR Codes from Phone Book entries, etc. Enter URL directly via a QR Code scan.

P.15-32, P.15-37

Video Out
View handset camera still or video images, or a real-time Display image feed on external monitor.

P.15-45

Vodafone live!
Exchange mail, access the Mobile Internet, download V-Applications via Web, and retrieve timely area-specific information via Station.

Vodafone live! Manual

Optional Services

Call Forwarding
Automatically direct incoming calls to a specified number.

P.16-3

Voice Mail
Manually redirect or automatically direct incoming calls to VM.

P.16-4

Call Waiting
Reduce missed calls! Answer incoming call while line is engaged.

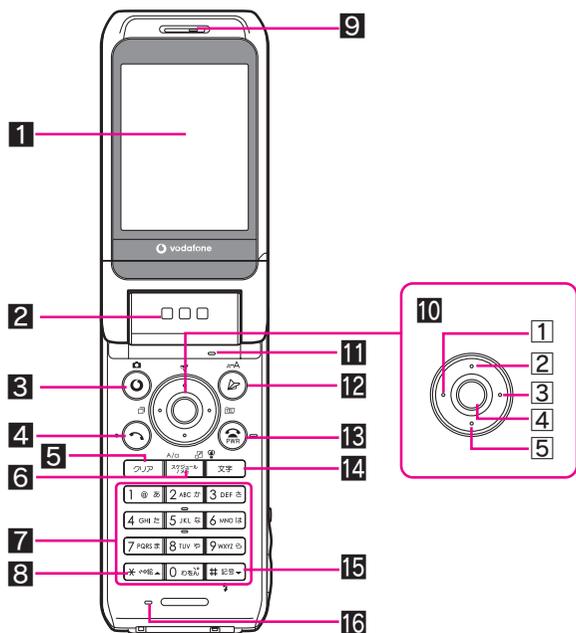
P.16-6

3 Way Calling
Switch between two lines or talk on both simultaneously.

P.16-7

Handset Parts & Functions

Handset



1 Display

2 Speaker

3 Vodafone live! & Mobile Camera Key

- Open Web menu or execute left Soft Key functions.
- Press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

4 Start Key

Initiate or answer calls.

5 Clear Key

Delete entries or return to previous window.

6 Schedule/Memo & A/a Key

Save/check Schedule or record/play Voice Memos. In text entry windows, toggle upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana. Change image display sizes.

7 Keypad

8 * Key

While an image or message appears, press to open previous one. In alphanumeric entry, open web/mail address prefixes & suffixes, and in kanji (hiragana) entry, toggle Symbol/Pictograph Lists.

9 Earpiece

10 Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. or use for the following:

1 Redial & Notepad Memory Key

Select dialed numbers or return to the previous window. Press for 1+ seconds to open Notepad Memory.

2 Shortcut Key

In Standby, open Shortcuts menu. Press for 1+ seconds to open V-Appli Library (default).

3 Phone Book Key

Open entries to make calls, send messages or open selected menu items. Press for 1+ seconds to save new entries.

4 Function & Key Guard Key

Access Functions Menu. Press for 1+ seconds to toggle Key Guard.

5 Call History Key

Open received call records. Press for 1+ seconds to adjust Earpiece Volume.

11 Microphone (in Viewer position)

12 Mail Key

Open Mail menu or execute right Soft Key functions. Press for 1+ seconds to enlarge font.

13 Power On/Off & End Key

End calls, place callers on hold or cancel operations. Press for 2+ seconds to turn handset power on/off.

14 Text & Manner Key (M)

Toggle between entry modes or create Phone Book entries. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Mode.

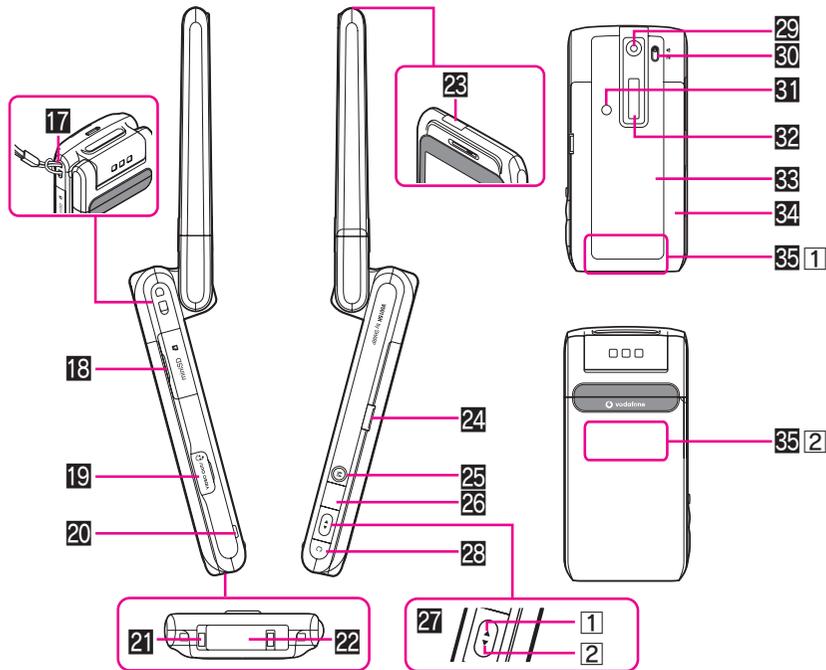
15 # Key

When handset is open and mobile camera is active, toggle Mobile Light on/off. While an image or message appears, press to open next one. In text entry windows, toggle Symbol/Pictograph Lists.

16 Microphone (clamshell open)



These descriptions (P.1-4 - 1-7) are illustrative of general handset usage. For mobile camera and other specific key assignments, refer to the descriptions for each function.

**17 Strap Eyelet**

Attach straps as shown.

18 Memory Card Slot

Insert Memory Card here.

19 Video Out/Headphone/Optical Digital/Line In Connector

Connect Video Cable, LCD Remote/Mic, etc.

20 Small Light

Illuminates red while charging. Set to flash for incoming calls.

21 Charger Terminal**22 External Device Connector**

Connect Charger here.

23 Infrared Port

Use for infrared data transmissions.

24 Battery Cover Latch**25 Multi Key**

Use for Motion Control. Double-press to activate Pen Light.

26 Shutter Key

In Viewer position, press to open selected menu items or execute functions. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

27 Zoom/Select Key

Select menu items, move cursor, etc.

1 Move cursor up

2 Move cursor down

28 C Key

In Viewer position, press to open Mail menu, cancel current operation/return to previous window; when camera is active, press for 1+ seconds to cancel.

29 Camera (lens cover)

Capture still and video images.

30 Portrait/Macro Selector**31 Mobile Light**

Flashes for incoming calls/mail. Serves as a strobe or Pen Light.

32 Sub Display**33 Texture Panel****34 Battery Cover****35 Internal Antenna Locations**

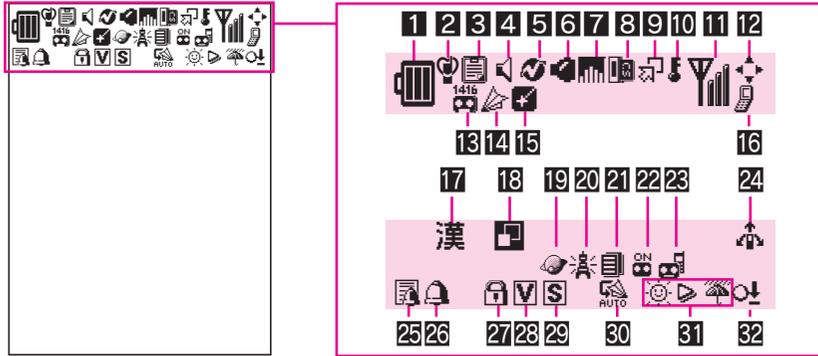
1 In Viewer position, handset transmits and receives signals from antenna located here.

2 Otherwise (open or closed), handset transmits and receives signals from antenna located here.

Note

Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.

Display Indicators



- 1** **Battery Strength**
Pen Light
 and flash when Pen Light is in use.
- 2** **Manner Mode Active**
- 3** **Information**
 Appears when there is an item in Information Menu.
- 4** **Off-Line Mode**
- 4** **Speaker Phone Active**
- Speaker Active**
- (gray) **Station Menu Manual Update**
- 5** **Active V-Application**
- Paused V-Application**
- 6** **Line Active**
 Mail Server or Service Center transmission is in progress
- Video Out Active**
 Handset is connected to other devices via Video Cable.
- 7** **Music Player Active**
- Voice Recorder Active**
- 8** **Memory Card Status**
- 9** **User Shortcut**
 A shortcut can be created for the window.
- SSL**
 SSL encrypted Web information.
- 10** **Secret Mode Active**
 Flashes when a Secret Mode entry is open.
- 11** **Signal Strength**
 ̶: Strong ̶̶: Moderate ̶̶̶: Low ̶̶̶̶: Weak
 OUT: Out-of-Range
- Infrared Transmission**
- 12** **Scroll**
 The menu, information, etc. can be scrolled.

- 13** **Voice Mail**
 New Voice Mail
- 14** **Mail**
 Unread mail except Super Mail
- 15** **Super Mail**
 Unread Super Mail
- 16** **Handset**, **Memory Card**
 Accessing handset or Memory Card
- 17** **Entry Mode**
 Current character entry mode
- 18** **Original**, **Enlarged**
 Mail, Web or Data Folder image display size
- 19** **Web**
 Unread Web information
- 20** (red) **Station**
 Unread Station information
- 21** **Delivery Report**
 New Delivery Report
- 22** **Message Recorder Active**
- 23** **Message**
 Message Recorder messages
- 24** **MC Shortcut Active**
- 25** **Schedule**
 Schedule alarm On /Off
- 26** **Alarm Set**
- 27** **Keypad Lock Active**
- 28** **Vibration Active**
- 29** **Silent**
 Ringer is Silent.
- Rising Tone**
 Ringer is set to Rising Tone.
- 30** **Auto Reply Set**
- 31** **Weather Indicators**
 Current forecast (A separate subscription is required.)
- 32** **Key Guard Active**

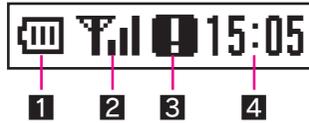
Note Display is a precision device. However, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.

Tip

- Although Vibration and Ring Tone Level for incoming calls and Vodafone live! functions are set separately, , and are Incoming Call indicators.
- When Wallpaper (see P.7-2) is set, cancel Standby Indicators (see P.7-11) to hide indicators.

Sub Display Indicators

Sub Display & Display indicators represent the same functions (see P.1-8 - 1-9).



1 Battery Strength

always appears in Standby. , , , or appears with messages for Alarm, incoming calls, information, etc.

Pen Light

and flash when Pen Light is in use.

2 Signal Strength

3 Information

Appears when there is an item in Information Menu.

- When appears, press for 1+ seconds to see specific indicators.



Off-Line Mode

Auto Reply Set

4 Time/Music Player or Voice Recorder Status

Current time and corresponding indicator flash when Stopwatch, Kitchen Timer, Music Player or Voice Recorder is running.



When handset is closed (clamshell closed), press for 1+ seconds or press to illuminate Sub Display Backlight. Backlight stays off if Sub Display Backlight Settings (see P.7-13) is set to *Off*.

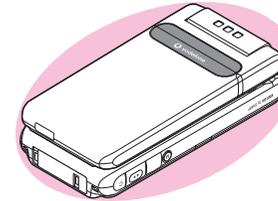
Display Positions & Key Ops

V501SH features a rotating Display. Select from four positions. In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (clamshell open). However, mobile camera operations (see P.6-2) are mainly described with Display in Viewer position.

Rotating Display

Hold handset with both hands when changing Display position.

1



Clamshell Closed

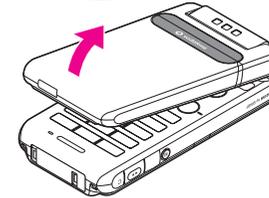
Handset is closed with Display facing inward.

- Keep handset in this position when not in use.



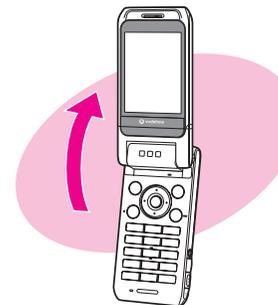
Place or answer calls with handset open (clamshell open) or in Viewer position.

2



3

Open handset



Clamshell Open

Handset is open with Display facing inward.

- Place or answer calls, or enter text.

4 Rotate Display 180 degrees clockwise



Self Portrait Position

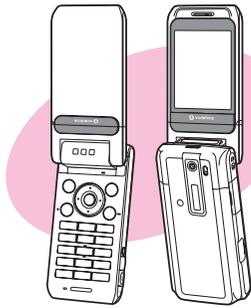
Handset is open with Display facing outward.

- Capture self portraits in this position.

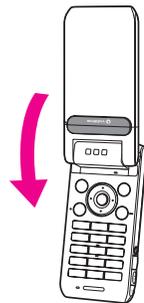
Note

- Place or answer calls with handset open (clamshell open) or in Viewer position.
- Do not rotate Display counterclockwise when changing to Self Portrait position.

5



6 Close handset



Viewer Position

Handset is closed with Display facing outward.

- Take landscape photos in this position.
- Perform basic operations using **S**, **C**, **D**, **←** or **M** instead of keys used with handset open (clamshell open).

Note

- Do not carry handset with Display in Viewer position. Display may be damaged.

7

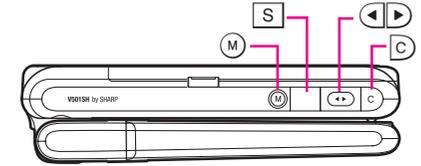


Side Key Assignments (Viewer)

When handset is in Viewer position, use **S**, **C**, **D**, **←** or **M** to operate handset.

In Standby

| | | |
|-----------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| S | Long Press | Activate mobile camera |
| | Press | Open Index Menu |
| C | Press | Open Mail menu |
| | Long Press | Open V-Appli Library ² |
| D ¹ | Press | List User Shortcuts ² |
| | Long Press | Adjust Earpiece volume ² |
| ← ¹ | Press | Open Call History ² |
| | Press | List User Shortcuts |



¹Key arrow directions appear reversed when handset is held Side Keys down.

²Not available when Calendar (see **P.7-4**) appears in Standby.

During Operations

Use Side Keys to execute corresponding keypad functions indicated below (except during calls, incoming calls, or while mobile camera or V-Application is active).

| | Viewer Position | Clamshell Open |
|-----------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| S | Long Press | |
| | Press | |
| C | Long Press | |
| | Press | |
| D ¹ | Press | |
| | Press | |

¹Key arrow directions appear reversed when handset is held Side Keys down.

²Depends on Display content.

Motion Control

Built-in sensor detects handset movement for the following functions.

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|-------------|
| MC Cursor | Tilt handset to move cursor and proceed | See P.1-33 |
| MC Shortcut | Shake handset to activate functions in User Shortcut | See P.15-28 |
| Shake Counter | Count the number of times handset is shaken | See P.15-24 |
| Shake Sound | Shake handset to produce sound effects | See P.15-25 |
| Compass | Find magnetic north to calculate direction | See P.15-23 |
| Viewer Display | In Viewer Position, change screen orientation automatically | See P.7-15 |

In this manual, the above functions are collectively referred to as "Motion Control."

Precautions

- Adjust MC Sensor (see P.15-22) before using Motion Control for the first time.
- When shaking or moving handset:
 - Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
 - Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Motion Control may not work correctly when:
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near magnetized objects
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - Near or inside elevators
- Motion Control may not work correctly after handset is placed near magnetized objects (see below for examples). In this case, adjust MC Sensor (see P.15-22).
 - Magnets (for whiteboards, furniture, bags, etc.)
 - Audio speakers, magnetic necklaces, etc.

Texture Panel

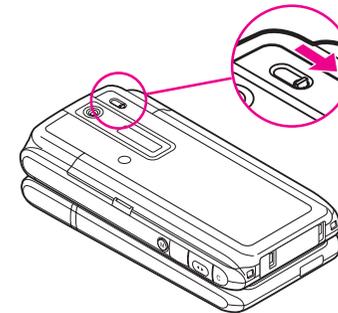
Change handset's tactile sensation by replacing the panel (Sub Display side).

- Two Texture Panels are included in the package.
- Additional Texture Panels may be purchased separately. Choose from various panels with different sensation and texture such as metal, leather, stone, etc.

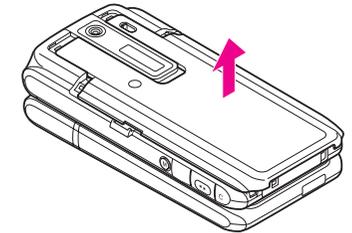
Replacing Texture Panel

Be careful not to remove battery when replacing Texture Panel with handset power on.

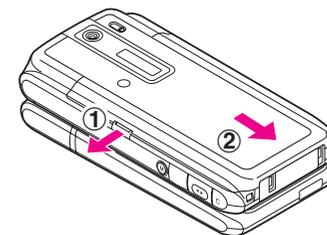
- 1** Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Portrait



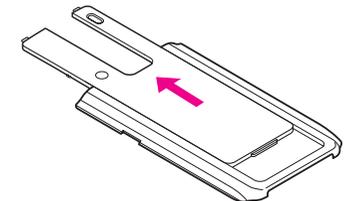
- 3** Lift and remove cover as shown

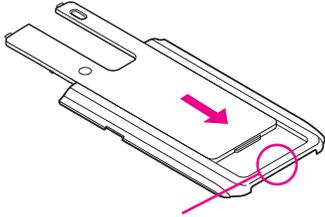


- 2** Pull out Battery Cover Latch as shown in ①, then slide cover as indicated in ②



- 4** Slide out Texture Panel

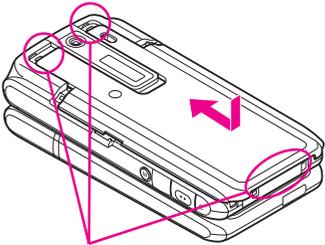


5 Insert another Texture Panel

- Position and slide the panel as shown until it stops.

6 With Portrait/Macro Selector set to Portrait, close cover

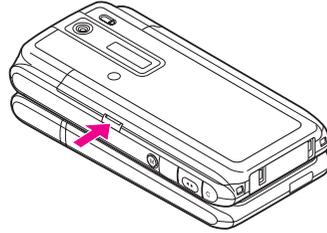
- Position and slide the cover as shown until it stops.



- Make sure these tabs are fitted into slots.

Note

- Never use handset without Texture Panel. Damage may result from accumulated dust.
- Texture Panel may become loose after repeated replacements.

7 Push in Battery Cover Latch until it clicks

Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Charge a new battery before use or after a period of disuse.

Battery Life

- Use specified Charger only. Other chargers may damage handset, or cause battery to deteriorate, overheat or ignite.
- Do not use or store battery at extreme temperatures. May shorten battery life. *Ideal working temperature is between 5°C - 35°C.
- Replace battery if operating time is noticeably shorter than normal.

Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Battery may short-circuit, overheat or burst from contact with metal objects.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take a while for the light to illuminate when handset power is off.)

Tip

- Battery must be inserted to charge handset.
- Handset will charge with power on.  flashes and stays on when complete.
- Handset will charge while open.

- Charging takes approximately 115 minutes (with handset power off).
 - Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.
- Charger and battery may become warm during charging.
- Move Charger away from home TVs or radios if interference occurs.

Precautions

- Use a dry cotton swab to clean handset, battery and Charger terminals.
- Avoid:
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Humidity, dust and vibration
 - Direct sunlight
- Do not leave battery uncharged. Charge at least once every 6 months.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| Continuous Call Time | 130 minutes |
| Continuous Standby Time | 450 hours |
| Continuous Operating Time | 230 minutes |
| Continuous Playback Time | 7.5 hours |

*Above values are calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level 4** (default).

- Continuous Call Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with both Power Saving and Panel Saving off, with stable signals.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed (clamshell closed) without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Continuous Operating Time is measured while handset is operated without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music is played in Off-Line Mode.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

Battery Time

Battery Time may shorten when handset is used in poor conditions:

• Poor Usage Conditions

- Extreme temperatures (use within a range of 5°C - 35°C)
- Dirty handset, battery or Charger terminals (charging may be hampered)
- Weak signals or out-of-range

• Operation

- V-Application is active
- Station service is in use
- Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
- Frequent use of Mobile Light
- Playing video images
- Frequent use of Pen Light
- Continuous Keypad use (Backlight stays on for long periods)
- Use of Music Player/Voice Recorder
- Frequent infrared transfers
- Frequent opening/closing of handset
- Frequent use of Motion Control

• Setting

- Backlight/Keypad Light time is set longer
- Wallpaper is animated
- Screen Animation is used
- Panel Saving is **Off**
- Backlight is set brighter

Extend Battery Time

Adjust the following settings:

- Backlight (see P.7-12)
- Sub Display Backlight (see P.7-13)
- Lighting Time of Mobile Light (see P.6-24) or Pen Light (see P.15-44)
- Panel Saving (see P.15-41)

When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds unless charged.

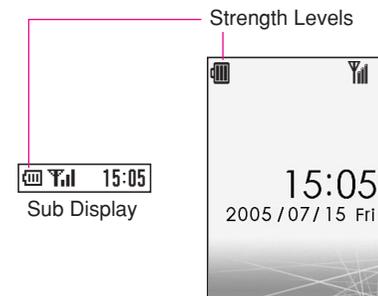
Press  to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner Mode.) If battery runs out during a call, short beeps sound every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a Vodafone shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Battery Strength



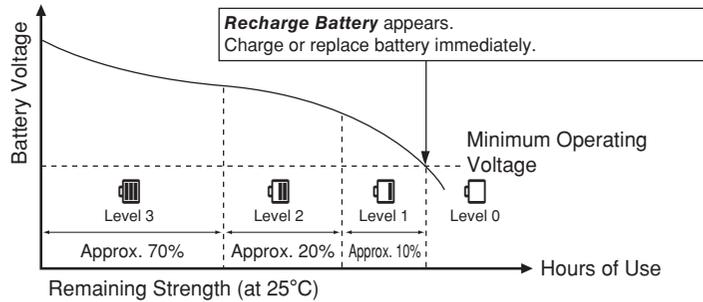
When battery runs out () **Recharge Battery** appears and short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

Indicator

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.

Charge or replace when level is low.

Battery Strength indicator is for reference only.



Battery Strength & Environment

At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.

At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

Note

At Level 1, some functions including Music Player, Voice Recorder, Motion Camera (MPEG) mode, etc. do not operate (see P.6-20, P.9-4, P.9-11, P.10-2).

Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator

Handset Power On

| Small Light | Indicator (🔊) | Conditions |
|-----------------|---------------|--|
| Off | Flashes | Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C - 35°C |
| Flashes red | Flashes | Battery life has ended, or battery defect |
| Illuminates red | Flashes | Charging |
| Off | Illuminate | Charging completed |

Handset Power Off

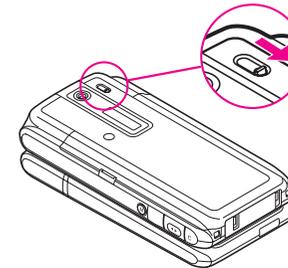
| Small Light | Indicator (🔊) | Conditions |
|-----------------|---------------|--|
| Off | Off | Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C - 35°C |
| Flashes red | Off | Battery life has ended, or battery defect |
| Illuminates red | Off | Charging |
| Off | Off | Charging completed |

Installing & Removing Battery

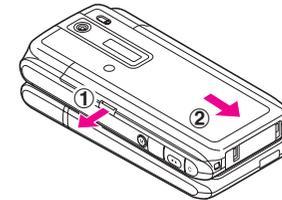
Inserting

Turn handset power off before inserting battery.

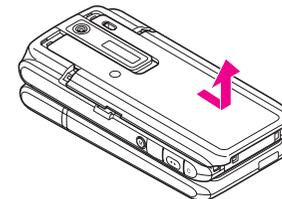
1 Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Portrait



2 Pull out Battery Cover Latch as shown in ①, then slide cover as indicated in ②

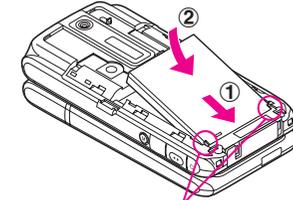


3 Lift and remove cover as shown



• Do not remove Texture Panel.

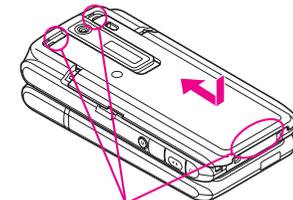
4 Insert battery



• With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

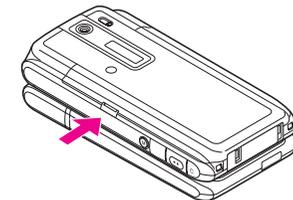
5 With Portrait/Macro Selector set to Portrait, close cover

• Position and slide the cover as shown until it stops.



• Make sure these tabs are fitted into slots.

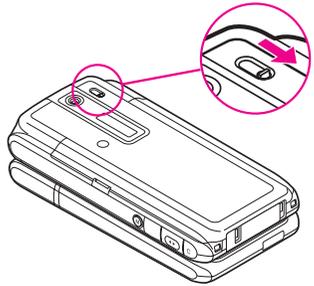
6 Push in Battery Cover Latch until it clicks



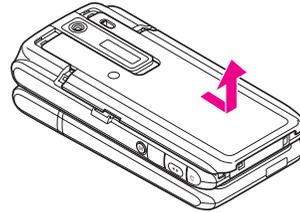
Removing

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

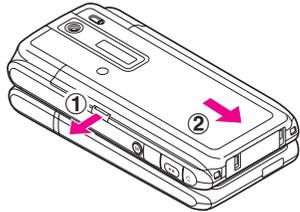
1 Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Portrait



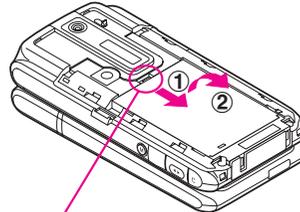
3 Lift and remove cover as shown



2 Pull out Battery Cover Latch as shown in ①, then slide cover as indicated in ②



4 Remove battery



- Take hold of Battery Tab here, push down as shown in ①, then lift as indicated in ②.

Tip

This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

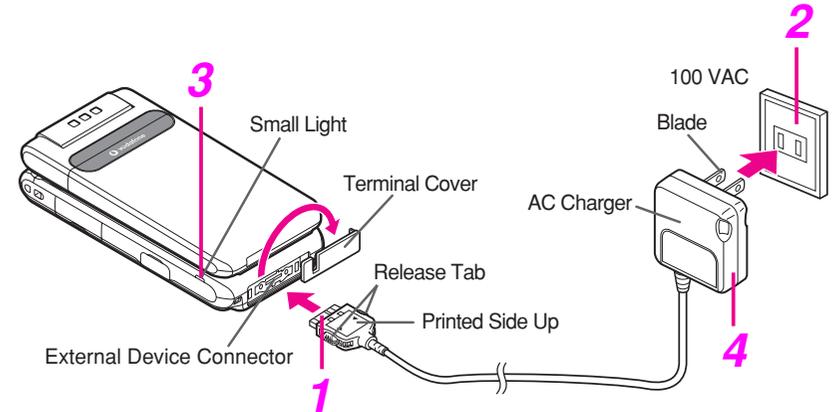
- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit batteries
 - Disassemble batteries



Li-ion

Rapid Charger

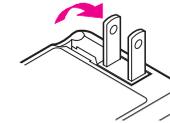
Use specified Charger only.



1 Open Terminal Cover and insert Charger connector until it clicks

2 Plug in Charger

- Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-20).



3 Charging is complete when light goes out

- See P.1-17 for charging time.

4 After Charging Unplug Charger from the AC outlet, then handset

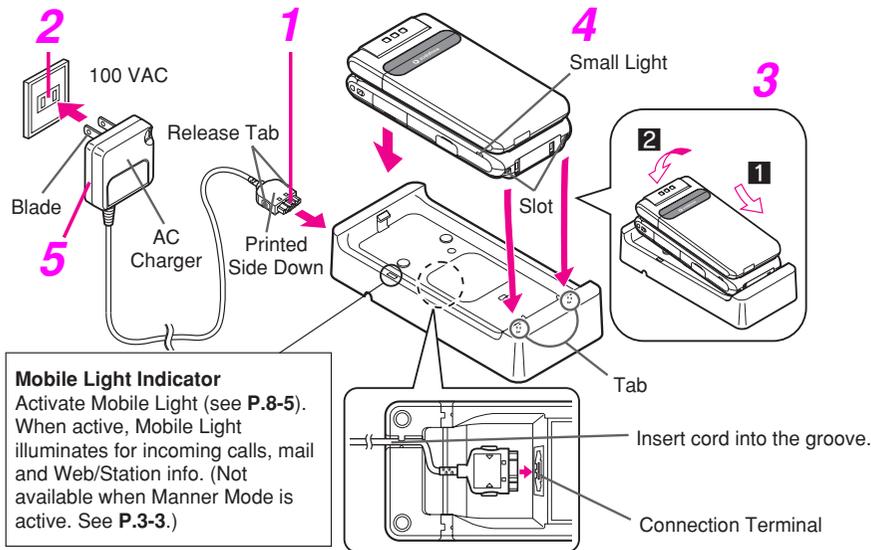
- Squeeze release tabs and pull connector straight out.
- Replace Terminal Cover to protect External Device Connector.

Note

Do not pull, bend or twist Rapid Charger cord.

Desktop Holder

Use specified Charger and Holder only.



Mobile Light Indicator

Activate Mobile Light (see P.8-5). When active, Mobile Light illuminates for incoming calls, mail and Web/Station info. (Not available when Manner Mode is active. See P.3-3.)

1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks

- Connection Terminal is on the back of Desktop Holder.

2 Plug in Charger

- Extend blades. Fold back when not in use.

Note

Make sure that Battery Cover and Texture Panel are set on handset.

3 Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-20).

4 Charging is complete when light goes out

- See P.1-17 for charging time.

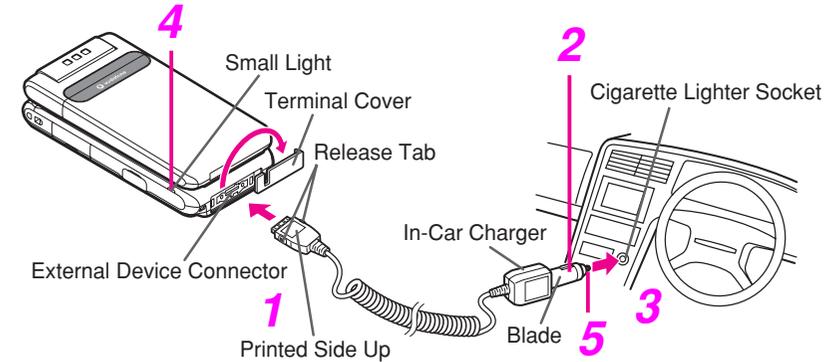
5 After Charging Unplug Charger from outlet and remove handset

Tip

For more information, see Desktop Holder manual.

In-Car Charger

Use specified In-Car Charger only.



1 Open Terminal Cover and insert Charger connector until it clicks

2 Plug in Charger

3 Start car engine

- Charging starts and Small Light illuminates red (see P.1-20).

4 Charging is complete when light goes out

- See P.1-17 for charging time.

5 After Charging

Unplug Charger from cigarette lighter socket, then handset

- Squeeze release tabs and pull connector straight out.
- Cap Terminal Cover.

Note

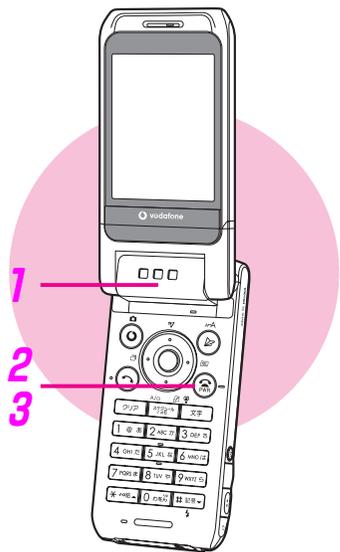
- Use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a negative earth only.
- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
- Never use handset while driving.

Tip

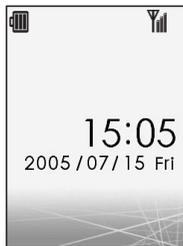
- For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
- Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

Handset Power On/Off

1 Getting Started



- 1 Open handset (clamshell open)
- 2 Press for 1+ seconds



Backlight illuminates; after Power On Graphics, handset enters Standby (shown above).

- 3 Press for 2+ seconds to exit
After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Clock Settings & Network Setup

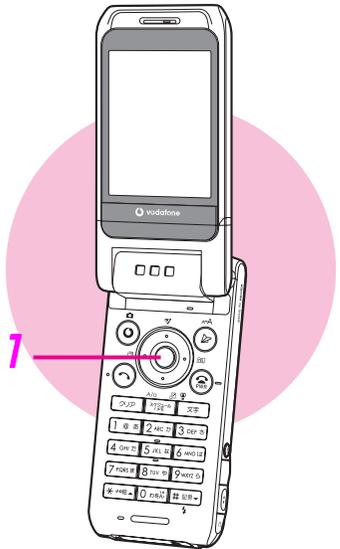
- If date and time have not been set, a confirmation appears after Power On Graphic.
Choose **1 Yes** → Press → **Clock Settings window opens (see P.1-28)**
 - Choose **2 No** → Press → Standby appears without date and time
- Handset initiates Network Setup when , , , , , or is pressed for the first time.
To continue, choose **1 Yes** → Press
 - See **P.1-4** for more about Network Setup.

- Tip**
- Handset receives incoming mail or Web/Station information while closed.
 - Display shuts down after a period of inactivity (see **P.15-41** "Panel Saving").

Key Guard

1 Getting Started

Use Key Guard to lock handset keys and prevent accidental activation of functions or operations.



Activating

- 1 Press for 1+ seconds
 appears and Key Guard is set.

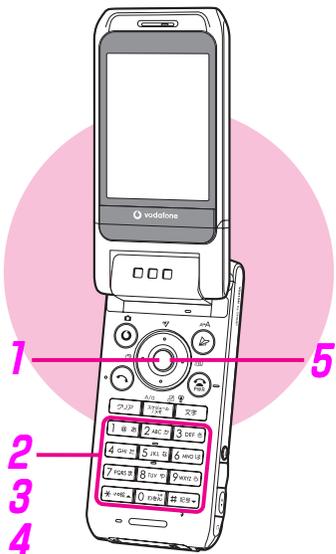
- Tip**
- When Key Guard is Active**
- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Key Guard. To answer calls, press keys for Anykey Answer (see **P.2-6**), or press for 1+ seconds in Viewer position. Key Guard reactivates after the calls end.
 - Handset power does not turn off even if is pressed for 2+ seconds.

Canceling

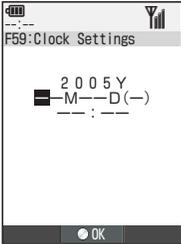
- 1 In Standby, press for 1+ seconds
 disappears.

Clock Settings

1 Getting Started



Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock*

- 1 Select **Clock Settings** and press
- 2 Enter the year

- 3 Enter the month and day
 Example: July 15 →
- 4 Enter the time
 Apply 24-hour clock format.
 Example: 3:05 PM →
- 5 Press
 Clock starts and Standby returns.
 The day of the week is set automatically.

Cursor

■ Use or to move cursor (■ or highlight bar). Enter or edit characters at the cursor position.

Note When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately one month), Clock will need to be reset.

Tip

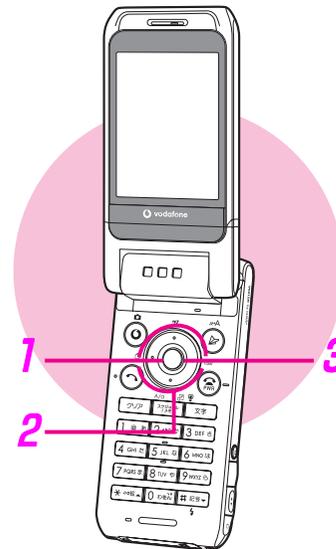
- When Clock has not been set, --/-- --/-- appears for date and time.
- Choose a Clock type and layout or use Calendar for Standby (see P.7-3, P.7-4)
- Clock can be set during calls.

Handset Menus

1 Getting Started

Index Menu

Access functions/operations from Index Menu.



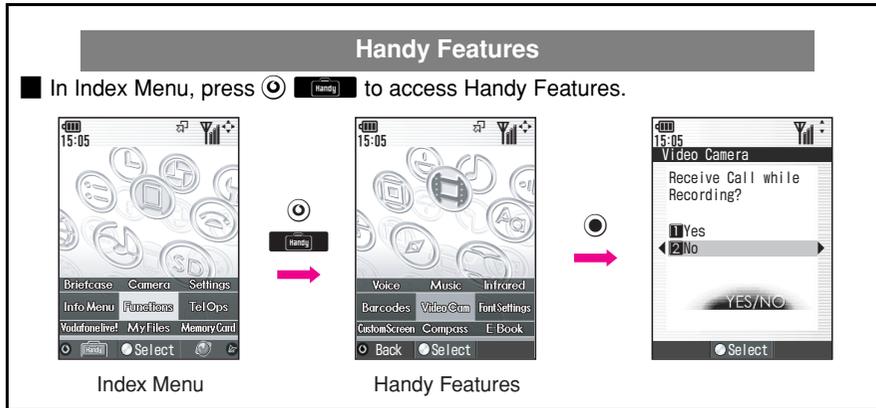
- 1 Press



- Index Menu opens.
- To customize Index Menu appearance, see P.7-6.
- 2 Use to select an item
 To open Handy Features menu, press .
 To open V-Appli Library, press .
 - 3 Press
 Menu for each item opens.

Index Menu Items

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Briefcase | Use Schedule, Calculator, Alarm, etc. |
| Camera | Camera menu opens. Shoot images, scan barcodes, etc. |
| Setting | Customize display, sounds, etc. |
| Info Menu | Information menu opens |
| Functions | Functions Menu opens (see P.1-30). Check and change settings of various functions. |
| Call | Create or search Phone Book entries. Check Redial and Call History. |
| Vodafone live! Overview | Use Mail, Web, V-Application, Station, etc. |
| My Files | Open files saved in handset |
| Memory Card | Memory Card menu opens. Use Memory Card-related functions. |

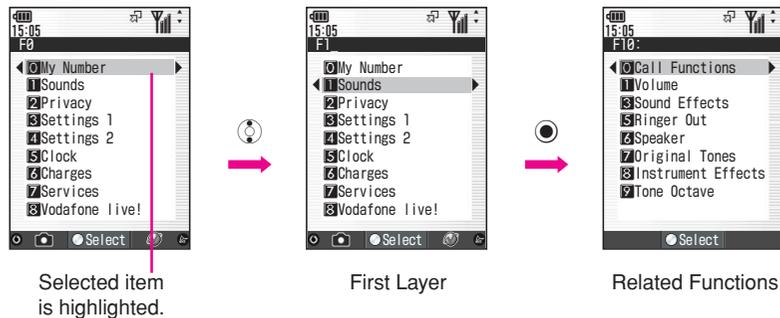


Functions Menu

In Index Menu, select **Functions** and press . Use Functions Menu to access handset functions and settings. A number is assigned to each handset function (see P.17-2).

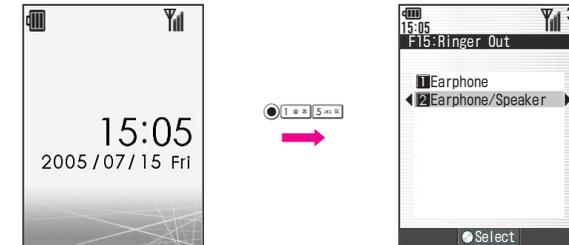
Selecting First Layer Items

Select an item with and press .



Selecting Functions by Numbers

In Standby, press to open Index Menu, then enter numbers. Corresponding function or menu opens.



Return to Standby

- Press to return to Standby (see P.1-26) from function windows, menus, etc.
 - When confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press . Standby returns.
 - Activate MC Sensor in Viewer Setting (see P.15-23) to return to Standby quickly in Viewer position by shaking handset.

Hot Switching (Mail)

- **During an operation, press for 1+ seconds → Use mail-related functions (open message, reply, etc.)**
 - Press to return.
 - In a message window (not in Inbox List), press for 1+ seconds again to open Inbox. Press to return to message window.
 - Hot Switching is not available during calls, in Standby, or when V-Application is active. An error message appears if mail function is not available.

Hot Switching (Multi Menu)

- **During an operation, press for 1+ seconds → Multi Menu opens → Select a function → Press**
 - Press to return. (Press to end Calculator.)
 - Multi Menu cannot be opened with the shortcut in a function opened from Multi Menu.
 - In a function opened from Multi Menu, press for 1+ seconds to open Inbox (read only). Press to return to the previous function.
 - Hot Switching is not available during calls, in Standby, or when V-Application is active. An error message appears if Multi Menu is not available.

Soft Keys

Soft Key functions appear at the bottom of Display.



- When **Select** appears, press **Select** to open selected menu items, execute functions, etc.
- When **Convert** appears, press **Convert** to convert kana to kanji, etc.
- When **Auto** appears, press **Auto** to execute the function.

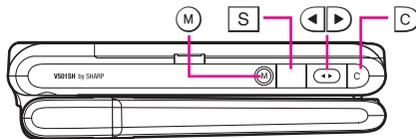
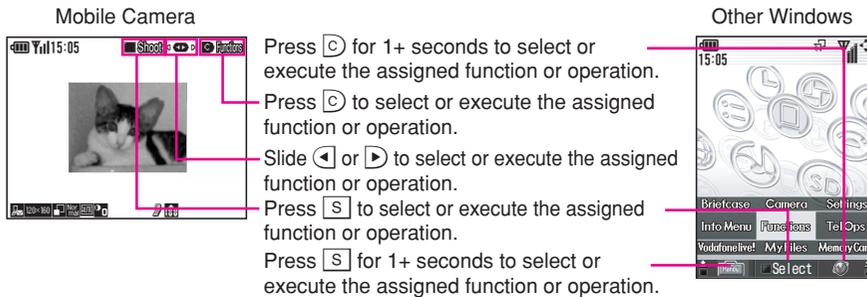
Press **Select** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press **Select** to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

When **Text** appears while creating Original Ring Tone etc., press **Text** to execute the assigned operation.

Soft Key Assignments (Viewer)

Soft Key functions appear at the top of Display when mobile camera is active in Viewer position.



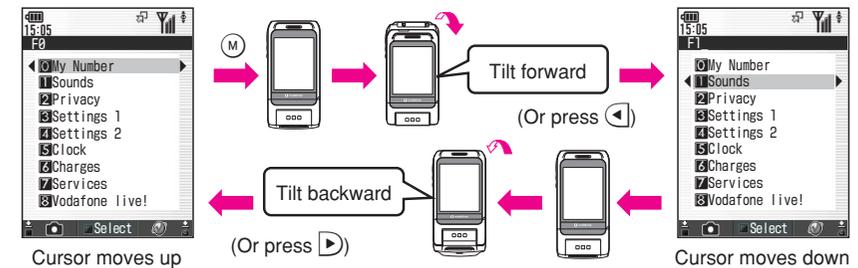
Using MC Cursor

Tilt handset to move cursor. Activate MC Cursor in M-key Settings beforehand (see P.15-22).

- MC Cursor is not available with clamshell closed.
- Tilt handset forward/backward, left/right or diagonally to navigate menus.
- Read the precautions on P.1-14 before using MC Cursor.

Select Item

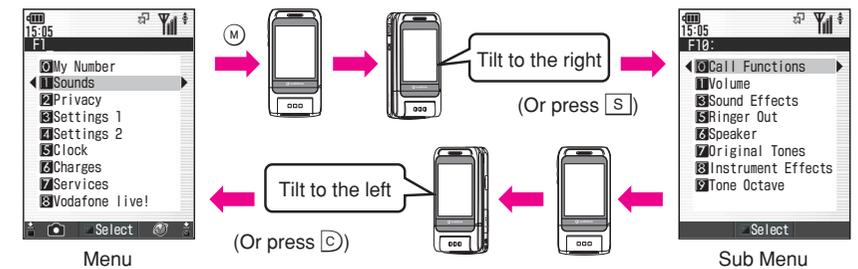
Press **M** (**MC Cursor** or **MC Cursor** appears) and tilt handset forward or backward to move cursor.
Press **M** again to cancel MC Cursor.



MC Cursor is not available when neither **MC Cursor** nor **MC Cursor** appears after pressing **M**.

Proceed or Return

Press **M** (**MC Cursor** appears) and tilt handset to the right to proceed with the selected menu item. Tilt to the left to return. Press **M** again to cancel MC Cursor.



MC Cursor is not available when **MC Cursor** does not appear after pressing **M**.

Note

- MC Cursor is canceled when:
 - Display position is changed
 - Calls, mail, etc. arrive
 - Display shuts down for Panel Saving
- While MC Cursor is in use, screen orientation does not change automatically (see P.7-15 "Viewer Display").

Tip

Activate -key Settings (see P.15-22) to activate MC Cursor while is pressed. MC Cursor is canceled when is released.

Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions quickly. Accessible functions vary by the number of digits entered. (Functions shown to the right appear for single digits.) To activate functions, press the key next to the function (press for Speed Dial). Quick Operations are not available in Viewer position.



| Function | Digits | | | | | | |
|--|--------|---|---|---|-------|--------|---------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 - 6 | 7 - 12 | 13 - 24 |
| Speed Dial (see P.5-14) | ○ | ○ | × | × | × | × | × |
| Spending Memo (see P.15-43) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × | × |
| Add to Phone Book (see P.5-4) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| Entry Search ¹ (see P.5-13) | ○ | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| Calculator (see P.15-42) | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | × |
| Send 2-Touch Mail (see P.3-15) | ○ | × | × | × | × | × | × |
| Set Alarm ² (see P.15-7) | × | × | × | ○ | × | × | × |
| Schedule ³ (see P.15-19) | × | × | × | ○ | × | × | × |

¹ Only Katakana Search is available.

² Enter four digits (24-hour format) to set Alarm. **Full** appears when there are five entries. Alarm set in Quick Operations (see P.15-7) is effective for one time only (Repeat Settings is **Off**).

³ Enter four digits for month and day. Check entries for the next 12 months.

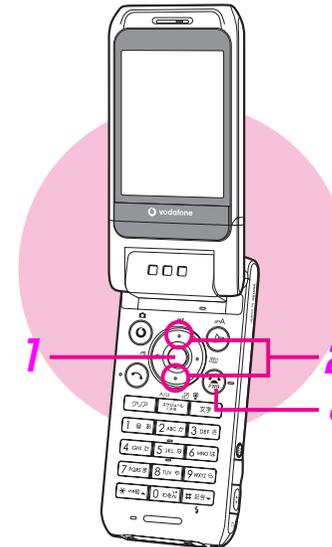
Keypad Shortcuts

In Standby, press Keypad or for 1+ seconds to activate/open corresponding functions/files saved in User Shortcuts (see P.15-27).

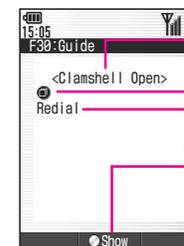
Guide

Open quick guides to functions inaccessible from Functions Menu.

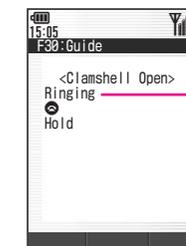
Index Menu ► **Functions** ► **Settings 1**



- 1 Select Guide and press**
Pen Light guide appears.
- 2 Press or**
Guide for another function appears.
- 3 Press to exit**

Display Content

- Handset Position
- Operations (Keys)
- Function
- Press to use the function (Available for some functions)



- Situation (Example: Incoming Call)

Handset Codes

Both Security Code and Center Access Code are needed for handset use.

1

Getting Started

Security Code

9999 or the 4-digit number selected at initial subscription.

Security Code is required to use/change some handset functions.

- ✖ appears when Security Code is entered.
- If incorrect, **Invalid Code** appears. Enter correct Security Code.
- Change Security Code as needed (see **P.14-2**).

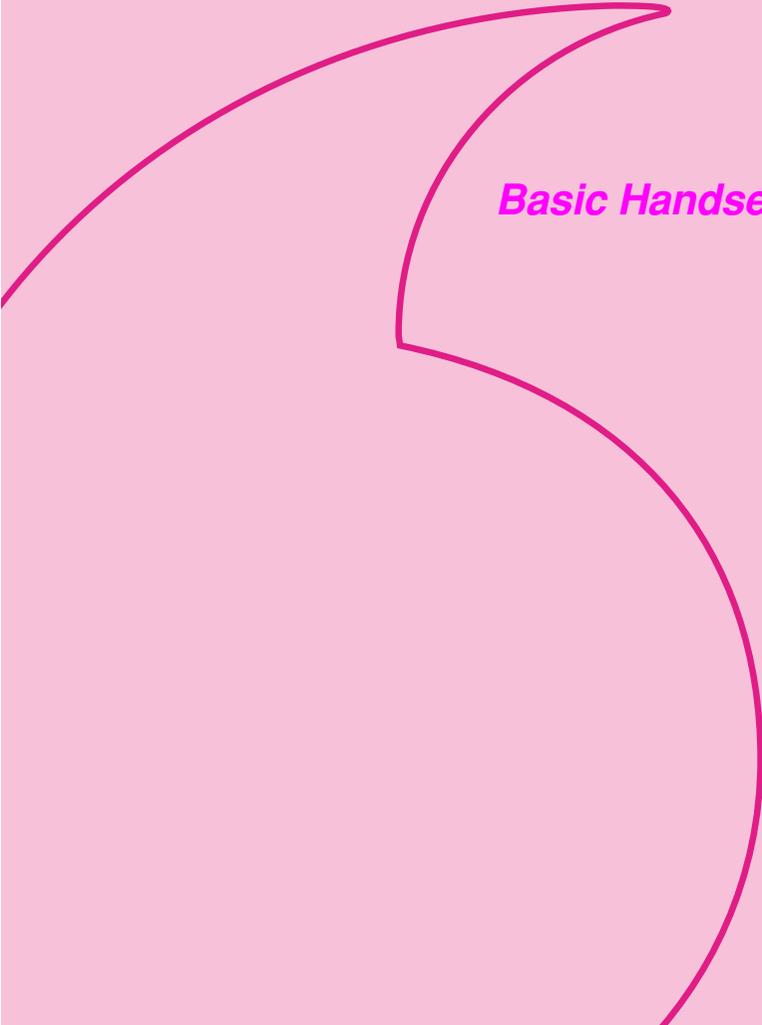
Center Access Code

The 4-digit number in the contract, required to access Optional Services via landlines, and to subscribe to fee-based information.

Do not attempt to change Center Access Code. Contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.17-21**) for details.

Note

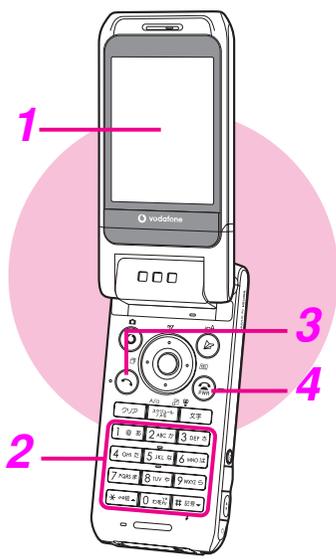
- Write down Center Access Code. If lost, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.17-21**).
- Do not reveal Security Code and Center Access Code. Vodafone is not liable for misuse or damages.



Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call

2 Basic Handset Operations



- 1 Confirm handset is on**
- Check signal.
 - Handset will not transmit when OUT, 3, 4 or 5 appears (see P.17-8).

- 2 Enter a phone number**



- Include the area code, even for local numbers.
- Sending/Blocking Caller ID**
- Press the following keys when placing a call.
 - Send..... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 * #
 - Block..... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 * #

- 3 Confirm the number and press**
- Correcting Numbers**

- Use to move cursor and press to delete the digit above the cursor.
- Press for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.
- If you misdial, press to hang up and try again.

- Busy Numbers**
- Press to end the call and try again later.

- 4 Press** **to end call**
- Alternatively, close handset (clamshell closed). Cancel Close to End Call to keep the line open with handset closed (see P.2-3).

Viewer Position Place calls with Display in Viewer position

■ Save the number to Phone Book first (see P.5-4).

Press → Select **Tel Ops** → Press → Select **2 Entry Search** → Press → Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-13) → Press → Select **Dial** → Press

- In Viewer position, hold handset with Viewer in and Earpiece up.
- Side Key Assignments during Calls:

| | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| | Open Call in Progress menu |
| (Long Press) | End call |
| | Increase volume |
| | Decrease volume |



2 Basic Handset Operations

Close to End Call

■ Select whether or not to end calls by closing handset (clamshell closed).

Press → Select **Functions** → Press → Select **1 Sounds** → Press → Select **2 Call Functions** → Press → Select **1 Incoming Call** → Press → Select **2 Close to End Call** → Press → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press

| | |
|-----------|--------------------------------|
| On | Off |
| Calls end | The other party hears no sound |

• Close to End Call is active by default.

Note

- Do not cover handset microphone while talking on the phone.
- Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna (see P.1-7).
- Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.
- For better voice quality, talk with handset open (clamshell open).

Microphone (Viewer position)

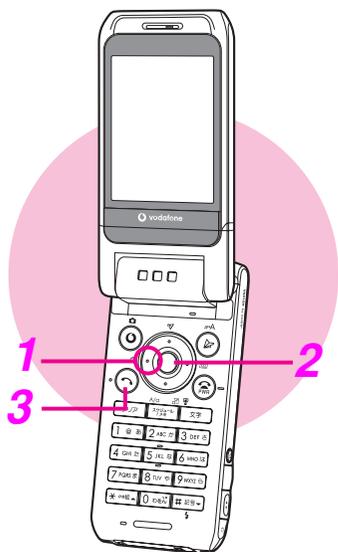
Microphone (handset open)

Tip

- Use Instant Display to see Call Time and Call Charge (see P.2-20, 2-21).
- Confirm Total Talk Time (see P.2-20) and Total Charges (see P.2-21).
- To use Speaker Phone or Speaker during calls, see P.8-22.
- For information on international calls, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.17-21).

Redial

Place calls from Redial. Up to 20 recently dialed numbers are saved in Redial.



1 Press



Dialed numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press

Number is dialed.

Tip

- When the same number is dialed more than once, only the last record appears.
- Names in Secret Mode entries appear only in Secret Mode.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 20 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-16.

International Call & Send With Code

Preset the number to add before dialing a phone number saved in Phone Book. Use International Call to place international calls and Send With Code to add one prefix such as 186 (Send Caller ID) or 184 (Block Caller ID).

Setup Preset

Preset the number to add before a phone number

Default International Call: 0046010, Send With Code: None

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Setup Preset

Select **1** International Call or **2** Send With Code ▶ Press ▶ Enter a prefix ▶ Press

■ To change the prefix, select **1** International Call or **2** Send With Code ▶ Press ▶ Press (Long Press) ▶ Enter a new prefix ▶ Press

• Enter up to seven digits for International Call and up to six digits for Send With Code.

International Call & Send With Code

Dial from Phone Book using the number set in Setup Preset above

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Entry Search ▶ Open an entry ▶ Menu ()

Select **International Call** or **Send With Code** ▶ Press

Emergency Calls

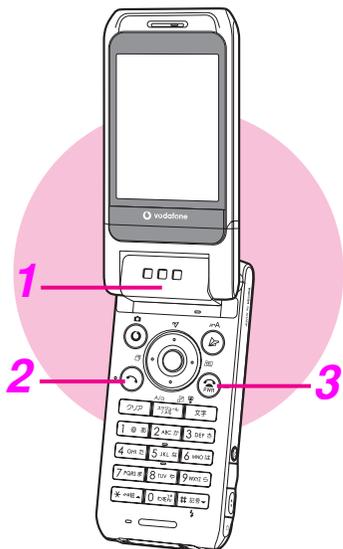
Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

| Active Restriction | Emergency Calls |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Off-Line Mode (see P.3-6) | Not possible |
| Keypad Lock (see P.14-2) | Possible |
| Restrict Dial (see P.14-3) | Possible |
| Auto Key Lock (P.14-3) | Possible |
| Key Guard (P.1-27) | Not possible |

Incoming Call

2

Basic Handset Operations



1 When a call arrives, open handset



Number appears when Caller ID is sent. Caller's name appears if saved in Phone Book.

When Message Recorder is Active

- Outgoing message plays and recording starts (see P.15-4).

2 Press

- Alternatively, press any of the following keys (Anykey Answer):

■ Handling Incoming Calls: see P.2-9 - 2-11

3 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close handset (clamshell closed). Cancel Close to End Call to keep the line open with handset closed (see P.2-3).

Viewer Position

Answer calls with Display in Viewer position

When a call arrives, press (Long Press) ➔ To end the call, press (Long Press)

- Side Key Assignments for Incoming Calls:

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| | Open Incoming Call Menu | (Long Press) | Place caller on hold (see P.2-9) |
| (Long Press) | Answer call | | Decrease Ring Tone volume |
| | Activate Quick Silent (see P.2-7) | | Increase Ring Tone volume |

- For operations during calls, see P.2-3.

2

Basic Handset Operations

Caller ID

- Phone numbers appear only when Caller ID is sent.
- Picture Call/Mail (see P.5-7) and Personal Ring Tone (see P.5-10) are disabled and Caller's name does not appear for Phone Book entries on Memory Card.

Ring Tone Volume

- Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume.
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see P.8-2) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level.

Quick Silent

- Press to instantly mute Ring Tone for that call only.
- When Side Key Settings for Incoming Calls (see P.15-3) is set to **2 Quick Silent**, press the assigned key for 1+ seconds with clamshell closed during incoming calls to mute ringer.

To Activate/Cancel Anykey Answer

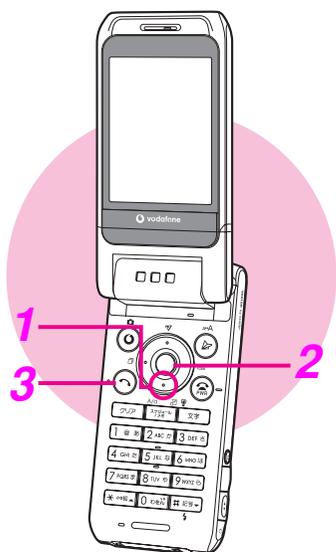
- Press ➔ **Select Functions** ➔ Press ➔ **Select 1 Sounds** ➔ Press ➔ **Select 0 Call Functions** ➔ Press ➔ **Select 1 Incoming Call** ➔ Press ➔ **Select 3 Anykey Answer** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose 1 On or 2 Off** ➔ Press
 - Anykey Answer is active by default.

Tip

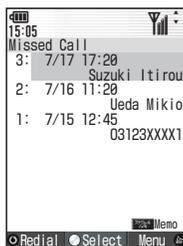
- Up to 20 incoming call details are saved (see P.2-16).
- Activate Delayed Ringer (see P.2-12) to delay handset ringer for three seconds for incoming calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book or Owner Profile.
- To customize Ring Tone and Mobile/Small Light pattern, see P.8-2 "Call Functions."

Call History

Up to 20 received calls are saved in Call History (see **P.2-16**). When Caller ID is sent, numbers appear. Place calls directly to those numbers.



1 Press



Received numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press
Number is dialed.

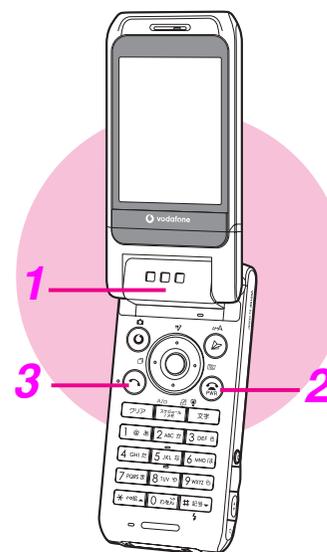
Tip

- Names in Secret Mode entries appear only in Secret Mode.
- Records remain even after handset power is turned off.
- When there are 20 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-16**.

Handling Incoming Calls

Placing Callers on Hold

Callers placed on hold hear a message explaining that you cannot answer their call right away and asking them to hold or call back later.



1 When a call arrives, open handset

2 Press
Hold tone sounds for five seconds.
• No tone sounds when Ring Tone Level is set to **Silent**.

3 Press to answer the call
• Alternatively, press keys for Anykey Answer (see **P.2-6**).

Viewer Position Place callers on hold with Display in Viewer position

When a call arrives, press (Long Press) ➔ To answer the call, press (Long Press)

Hold or Reject with Clamshell Closed

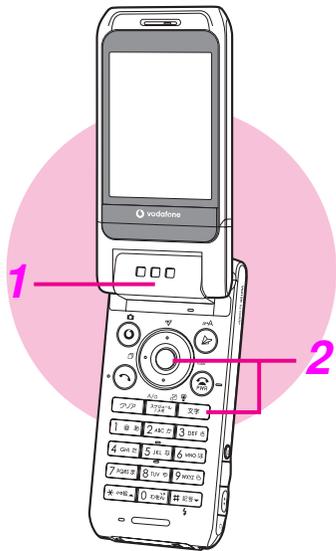
■ When Side Key Settings for Incoming Calls (see **P.15-3**) is set to **Hold** or **Reject Call**, press the assigned key for 1+ seconds during incoming calls to activate the function.

Note

- Press or close handset (clamshell closed) to end calls on hold. However, closing handset does not end the call if Close to End Call (see **P.2-3**) is canceled.
- Calls on hold end if callers hang up.

Quick Recorder

Activate Message Recorder (see **P.15-4**) for one time only to record caller messages on handset.



1 When a call arrives, open handset

2 Press

Outgoing message plays and recording starts.

Press to play recorded messages (see **P.15-5**).

Note Message recorder is disabled when recording capacity is full (see **P.15-4**).

Voice Mail

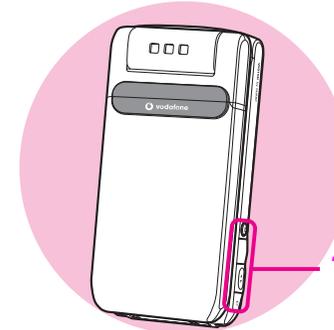
Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail (see **P.16-4**).

Clamshell Closed

When a call arrives, press a Side Key for 1+ seconds to activate the assigned function.

- **Message Recorder** is assigned to by default. To use other Side Keys during incoming calls, assign functions to them first (see **P.15-3**).
- Available Functions:

| | | |
|---------------------------|--|-------------------|
| Hold | Place callers on hold | See P.2-9 |
| Quick Silent | Mute ringer for incoming calls | See P.2-7 |
| Reject Call | Reject and end the call | See P.2-9 |
| Message Recorder | Record caller messages on handset | See P.15-4 |
| Forward Voice Mail | Forward incoming calls to Voice Mail. (Available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas, and when used in those areas.) | See P.16-4 |



1 When a call arrives, press , , , or for 1+ seconds
Handset responds accordingly.

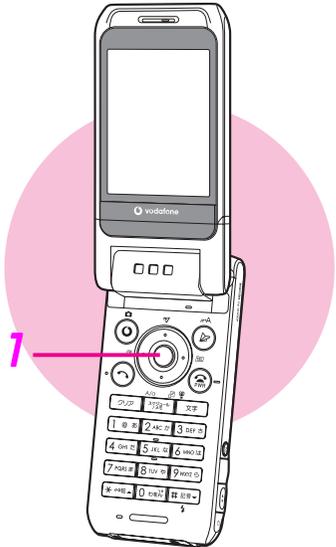
Note When Message Recorder is set but cannot record (see **P.15-4**), Quick Silent is activated instead.

Delayed Ringer

Activate Delayed Ringer to help screen one-ring sales calls. Handset ringer is delayed for three seconds for incoming calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book or Owner Profile. Delayed Ringer is **Off** by default.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu

► Functions ► Sounds ► Call
Functions ► Incoming Call ►
Delayed Ringer

1 Choose **On** and press **Enter**

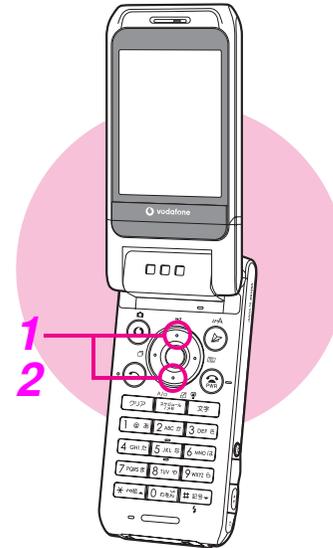
Engaged Call Operations

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece volume (5 levels). Earpiece volume is **Level 5** by default.

2

Basic Handset Operations



- 1** During a call, press **Up** or **Down**
- 2** Press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) to adjust volume level

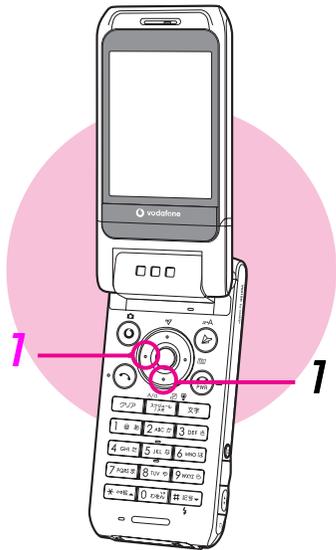
Each press changes volume by one level.

- Wait five seconds or press **Enter** to save the level.
- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.

Redial & Call History

2

Basic Handset Operations



Opening Redial Records

- 1 Press (↩)
 - Dialed numbers appear with date and time.
 - When there is no Redial record, Call History appears.
 - Press to dial the number.
 - Press to return to Standby.

Opening Call History Records

- 1 Press
 - Dialed numbers appear with date and time.
 - Press to dial the number.
 - Press to return to Standby.

Delete Delete Redial/Call History records

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops

Select **4 Redial** or **5 Call History** → Press → Press **Menu** →
 Select **Delete** or **Delete All** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Call History Indicators

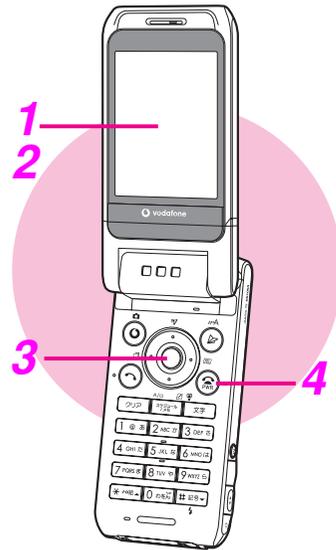
| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Call in Progress | Answered call |
| Missed Call | Unanswered call (including calls screened by Delayed Ringer) |
| Hold | Disconnected after hold |
| Message Recorder | Recorded on Message Recorder |
| Forward Voice Mail | Forwarded to Voice Mail Center |
| Reject | Rejected call |
| Payphone | Call from payphone |
| No Caller ID | Call without Caller ID |

Information Menu

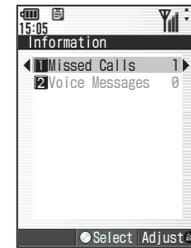
Information Menu opens for missed incoming communications.

2

Basic Handset Operations



- 1 **A call arrives, then ends**
Date and time of the call and Missed Call notice or Message Recorder notice appears.
- 2 **After approximately five seconds, Information Menu opens**



- 3 **Use to select an item and press**
 - Press or to see more.
 - Press to dial the number.
- 4 **Press to exit**

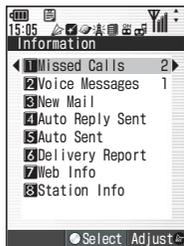
Unopened Information

- When there is unopened information, appears in Standby. Follow these steps to open Information Menu.
In Standby, press → Select Info Menu → Press
- When handset is closed (clamshell closed), appears in Sub Display. Press **[S]** for 1+ seconds to open specific indicators.

Tip

- After Step 2, press to close Information Menu without checking details. appears in Standby.
- See **P.2-16** to reopen Missed Call details.

Information Menu Contents



| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Missed Calls | The number of missed calls appears |
| Voice Messages | The number of recorded messages appears (see P.15-4) |
| New Mail | New mail (see P.2-4) received |
| Auto Reply Sent | Auto Reply message (see P.6-2) was sent (appears even if the delivery failed) ¹ |
| Auto Send | Messages saved as Auto Send were sent |
| Delivery Report | New Delivery Report (see P.2-4) received |
| Web Info | New Web information (see P.7-11) received |
| Station Info | New Station information (see P.13-7) received |
| Mail Box Full | Server Mail is 80% full ³ |
| Memory Full | Handset memory is full ² |

¹Select **Auto Reply Sent** and press **Enter** to check the result.

²Delete messages, files, etc. to free memory.

³Retrieve or delete Server Mail.

Information Menu Settings

Reset

All Information Menu tallies return to 0

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Info Menu Settings* ▶ *Reset*

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **Enter**



Mail Box Full and **Memory Full** remain even after resetting Information Menu.

Incoming Light

Set Mobile/Small Light to flash for unconfirmed information

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Info Menu Settings* ▶ *Incoming Light*

Mobile Light

Select an item ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **1 Mobile Light** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶
Select a color ▶ Press **Enter**

Small Light

Select an item ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **2 Small Light** ▶ Press **Enter**

- Small Light color is fixed.

Off

Select an item ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **3 Off** ▶ Press **Enter**

- Set Incoming Light for each type of information.
- When Delayed Ringer is active, Mobile/Small Light does not flash for missed calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book or Owner Profile.



- Off-Line Mode light (see **P.3-6**) takes priority over Information Menu light.
- Using Mobile/Small Light shortens Battery Time.

Time Out Setting

Use Time Out Setting to automatically return to Standby 10 seconds after Information Menu opens for new items

Default: Time out Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Info Menu Settings* ▶ *Time Out Setting*

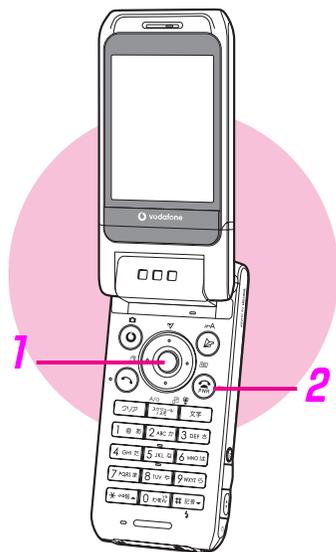
Select **1 Time out On** or **2 Time out Off** ▶ Press **Enter**

Call Time

Check estimated Call Time of the most recent call or Total Talk Time.
Call Time appears for calls made and those received.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges*

- 1 Select **3** **Call Time** and press **⏻**
 ■ For Total Talk Time, select **2** **Total Talk Time**
 ▶ Press **⏻**
- 2 Press **⏻** to exit

Reset Reset Total Talk Time

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges* ▶ *Total Talk Time*

Press **⏻** ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **⏻**

Instant Display Set Call Time to appear automatically after each call

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges* ▶ *Instant Display*

Choose **1** **On** or **2** **Off** ▶ Press **⏻**

- Call Charge also appears for calls you made.

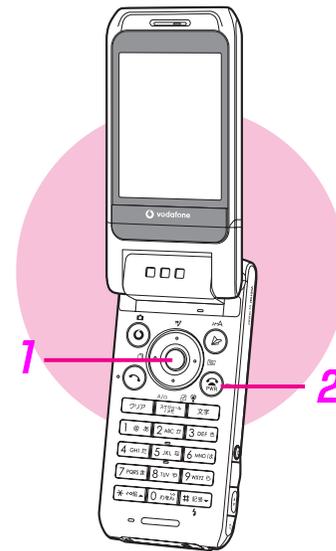
Tip • Total Talk Time and Call Time remain even if handset power is turned off.
 • Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

Call Charge

Check estimated Call Charge of the most recent call or Total Charges.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges*

- 1 Select **1** **Call Charge** and press **⏻**
 ■ For Total Charges, select **0** **Total Charges** ▶
 Press **⏻**
- 2 Press **⏻** to exit

Reset Reset Total Charges

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges* ▶ *Total Charges*

Press **⏻** ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **⏻**

Instant Display Set Call Charge to appear automatically after each call

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Charges* ▶ *Instant Display*

Choose **1** **On** or **2** **Off** ▶ Press **⏻**

- Call Charge will not appear after leaving a 3 Way Call (Break Away).
- Call Time appears at the same time.

Tip • Total Charges and Call Charge remain even if handset power is turned off.
 • When the most recent call is a received call, -----**yen** appears.
 • Sum of charges appears for 3 Way Calling (Optional Service).
 • Call Charge will not appear when calls are interrupted due to weak signal.

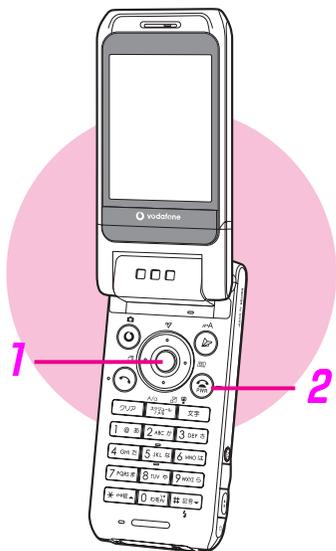
My Number & Owner Profile

Confirm handset phone number.

- Save name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, personal data and photo.
- Handset phone number cannot be changed or deleted on the handset.

2

Basic Handset Operations



Index Menu ▶ *Functions*

1 Select **My Number** and press **Enter**

■ To open Owner Profile, press **Details** ▶

Enter Security Code

- Owner Profile contents are similar to those of Phone Book (see **P.5-12**).
- To create QR Code for Owner Profile, see **P.15-37**.

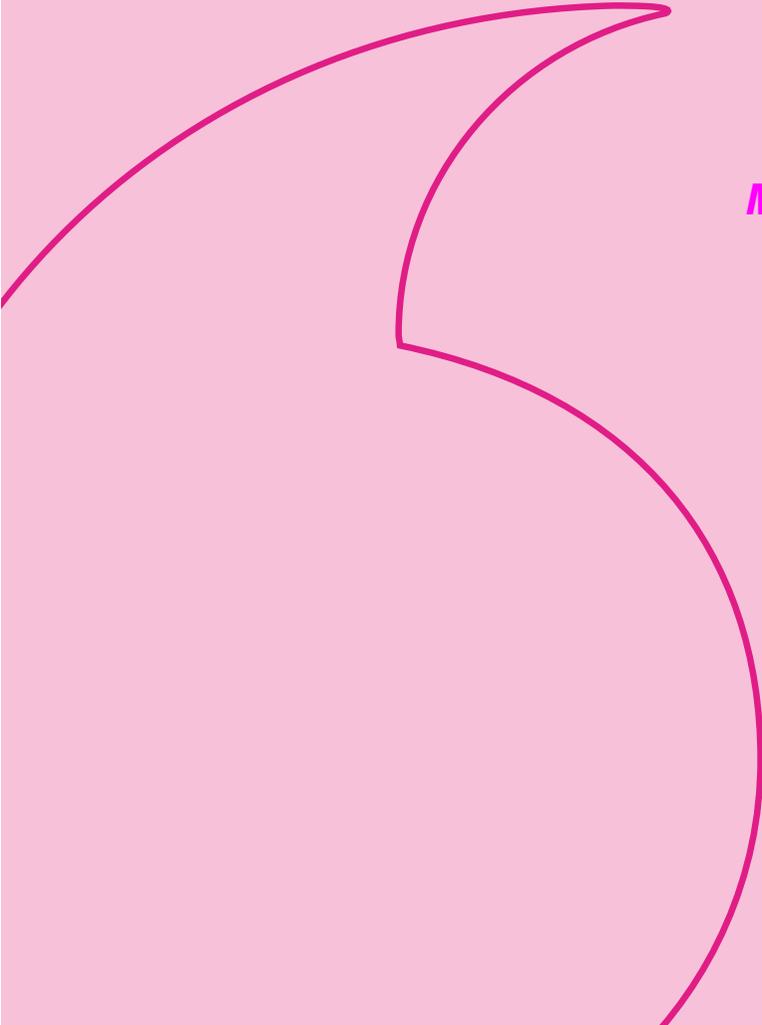
2 Press **Exit** to exit

Edit, Delete & Copy Add, edit, delete or copy Owner Profile items

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *My Number* ▶ *Details* (Ⓛ)

Enter Security Code ▶ **Press** **Enter** ▶ **Select** *Edit* ▶ **Press** **Enter** ▶ **For more, see Steps 4 - 6 in "Editing Phone Book" on P.5-15**

- To delete Owner Profile (all items except handset number), enter Security Code and press **Enter** ▶ **Press** **Enter** ▶ **Select** *Delete* ▶ **Press** **Enter** ▶ **Choose** **Yes** ▶ **Press** **Enter**
- To copy an item in Owner Profile, enter security code and press **Enter** ▶ Use **Left** to select an item ▶ **Press** **Enter** ▶ **Select** *Copy* ▶ **Press** **Enter** ▶ For more, see Step 5 and onward in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on **P.4-17**
 - Image for Photo cannot be copied.



Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

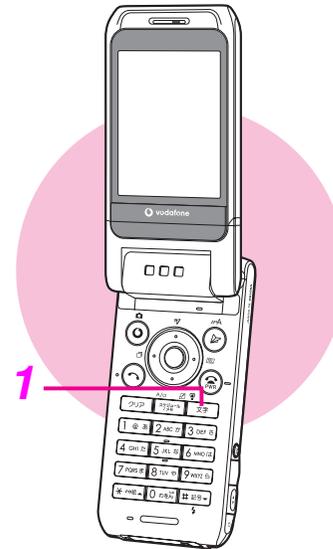
Manner-Related Features

- **Manner Mode: see P.3-3**
Press Manner Key to automatically mute all Ring Tones and activate Vibration mode for incoming calls, mail and information.
- **Vibration Mode: see P.8-4**
Activate Vibration mode to use handset vibration to alert you to incoming calls, mail, etc. in public places.
- **Volume Settings: see P.8-2, P.12-2**
Decrease or mute Ring Tone volume for incoming calls/mail/information as well as tones for Web or V-Applications when carrying handset in public places.
- **Whisper Mode: see P.3-5**
Use Whisper Mode to increase microphone sensitivity, allowing you to lower your voice and speak softly when you must use handset in public places.
- **Off-Line Mode: see P.3-6**
Use Off-Line Mode to suspend all handset transmissions. In Off-Line Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and Vodafone live! transmissions are blocked.
- **Message Recorder: see P.15-4**
Use Message Recorder to handle incoming calls when it is inappropriate or unsafe to answer.

Manner Mode

Activating & Canceling

Activate or cancel Manner Mode in Standby, Web information, mail windows (List View, message window, etc.) or while using V-Applications.



Activating Manner Mode

- 1 Press **文字** for 1+ seconds
🔔 and **Manner Mode Set** appear. The following indicators appear as set in Manner Settings (see P.3-4).

| | | | |
|---|------------------|---|-------------|
| 🔔 | Message Recorder | 🔊 | Vibration |
| 🔇 | Silent | 🔔 | Rising Tone |

Canceling Manner Mode

- 1 In Standby, press **文字** for 1+ seconds
🔔 disappears and Manner Mode is canceled.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Power On/Off and error tone as well as Keypad Sound are muted. Beeps in Call Waiting and 3 Way Calling are heard.
- Shake Sound and barcode recognition tone volume depend on Manner Settings.
- Shutter Click and Self Timer tone sound even in Manner Mode.
- Sound played on Music Player or Voice Recorder are muted (use headphones).
 - Even in Manner Mode, Ring Tone can be heard through headphones. Volume is fixed to Level 1.
- Settings for Manner Mode are applied to: Message Recorder, Ring Tone Level, Vibration, LED Indicator, Whisper Mode, Sound Volume, Alarm Volume, Alarm Vibration, V-Appli Volume and V-Appli Vibration.
- When Message Recorder is recording messages, the other party's voice is heard through Earpiece.

Manner Mode Settings

Customize Manner Mode settings.

Default settings:

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------|
| Message Recorder | On | Ring Tone Level | Silent (All) | Vibration | On (All) |
| LED Indicator | Small Light | Whisper Mode | On | Sound Volume | Silent |
| Alarm Volume | Silent | Alarm Vibration | On | V-Appli Volume | Silent |
| V-Appli Vibration | On | | | | |

Message Recorder Activate or deactivate Message Recorder

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► Message Recorder

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press ●

Ring Tone Level Set Ring Tone volume

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► Ring Tone Level

Select from **1 Incoming Call** to **6 Confirm Delivery** ► Press ● ►
Select **1 Silent**, **2 Rising Tone** or **3 Level 1** ► Press ●

- For **Silent**, Speaker is muted and sounds can be heard through headphones. Volume is fixed to Level 1.

Vibration Set vibration to alert you to incoming calls/mail

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► Vibration

Select from **1 Incoming Call** to **6 Confirm Delivery** ► Press ● ►
Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press ●

Alarm Volume Adjust Alarm volume

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► Alarm Volume

Adjust level ► Press ●

Alarm Vibration Handset vibrates when Alarm Time arrives

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► Alarm Vibration

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press ●

LED Indicator Flash Mobile/Small Light for incoming communications

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► LED Indicator

Select from **1 Normal** to **3 Off** ► Press ●

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Normal | Mobile/Small Light flashes as set in Call Functions (see P.8-2) |
| Small Light | Small Light flashes |
| Off | No lights |

Whisper Mode Activate or deactivate Whisper Mode

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► Whisper Mode

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press ●

- Use Whisper Mode to increase microphone sensitivity, allowing you to lower your voice and speak softly when you must use handset in public places (📞 flashes).



Whisper Mode can be set On/Off during a call by pressing for 1+ seconds. After the call, Whisper Mode will be canceled.

Sound Volume Adjust sound volume

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings

Select **6 Sound Volume** ► Press ● ► Adjust level ► Press ●

V-Appli Volume Adjust V-Appli volume

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings

Select **9 V-Appli Volume** ► Press ● ► Select **1 Silent** or **2 Level 1** ► Press ●

V-Appli Vibration Handset vibrates while using V-Applications

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Manner Settings ► V-Appli Vibration

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press ●

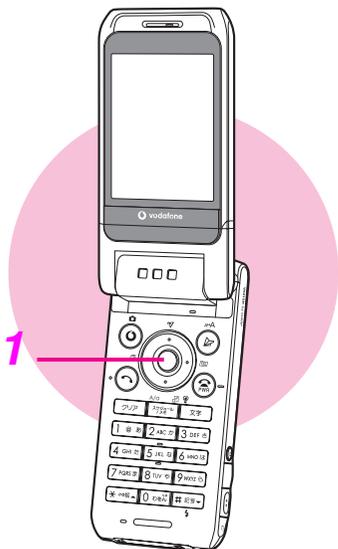
Off-Line Mode

Use Off-Line Mode to suspend all handset transmissions.

- In Off-Line Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and Vodafone live! transmissions are blocked.
- Off-Line Mode is **Off** by default.

3

Manner Mode



Activating Off-Line Mode

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Off-Line Mode

- 1 Choose **1 On** and press **⏻**
⏻ appears.

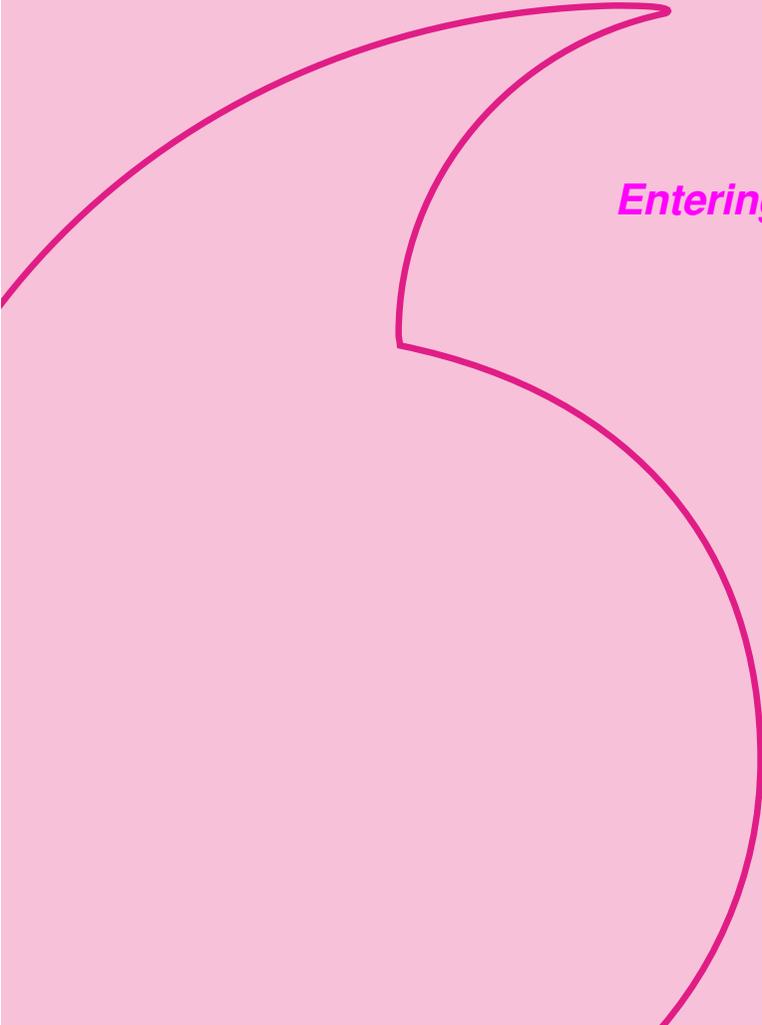
Canceling Off-Line Mode

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Off-Line Mode

- 1 Choose **2 Off** and press **⏻**
⏻ disappears and Off-Line Mode is canceled.

Tip

- When Off-Line Mode is set while a Network V-Application (see **P.10-4**) is paused, **V-Appli Paused Cannot Connect to Network in Off-line Mode Off-line Mode On?** appears. Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏻** to enter Off-Line Mode. (Network connection is disabled until Off-Line Mode is canceled.)
- While handset is closed (clamshell closed) or Display shuts down for Panel Saving in Off-Line Mode, Small Light flashes red, green and orange.



Entering Characters

Character Selection

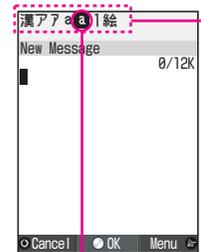
Use Kana and Pager (see P.4-10) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictographs. With the exception "Pager Code" on P.4-10, most text entry operations are described using Kana Mode.

Entry Modes

Press to toggle between character entry modes as follows:

a → 1 → 絵 → 漢 → ア → ア → a → a

Alternatively, use to toggle between entry modes after pressing once.



Current Entry Mode

Available Modes

| Mode | Description | Key | Character Set |
|------|--|-----|--|
| 漢 | Kanji (hiragana) | A | Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case) |
| ア | Double-byte katakana | a | Single-byte alphanumerics (lower/upper case) |
| ア | Single-byte katakana | 1 | Single-byte number |
| A | Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case) | 絵 | Pictograph Code |
| a | Double-byte alphanumerics (lower/upper case) | 区 | Character Code |

Upper & Lower Case

In double- or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press to toggle between upper and lower case. For Pager Mode (see P.4-10), in double- or single-byte entry mode, press to toggle between upper and lower case.



Pictograph & Character Codes

Press to toggle as follows:

Pictograph Code 1 → Pictograph Code 2 → Pictograph Code 3 → Pictograph Code 4 → Pictograph Code 5 → Pictograph Code 6 → Character Code → Pictograph Code 1

• Pictograph Code page number appears at the bottom.

Tip

- Handset Character Codes correspond to 6,355 kanji.
- Some characters are not available for mail addresses, etc.

Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In katakana entry, press three times for ウ.

When entering characters, press to toggle between character options in reverse. (Not available for entering single-byte number, Pictographs and Character Codes.)

Example: Enter い, then press to return to あ.

| Key | Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte] | Katakana [Double & Single-byte] | Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte] | Numbers [Single-byte] | Pictograph Code 1 - 6 & Character Codes |
|-----|--|------------------------------------|--|---------------------------|---|
| | あいうえお あいうえお | アイウエオ アイウエオ | @, /, _ 1 (space) | 1 | 1 |
| | かきくけこ かきくけこ | カキクケコ | ABC a b c 2 | 2 | 2 |
| | さしすせそ さしすせそ | サシスセソ | DEF d e f 3 | 3 | 3 |
| | たちつとっ たちつとっ | タチツテトツ | GHI g h i 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | なにぬねの なにぬねの | ナニヌネノ | JKL j k l 5 | 5 | 5 |
| | はひふへほ はひふへほ | ハヒフヘホ | MNOm n o 6 | 6 | 6 |
| | まみむめも まみむめも | マミムメモ | PQRS p q r s 7 | 7 | 7 |
| | やゆよやゆよ やゆよやゆよ | ヤユヨヤユヨ | TUV t u v 8 | 8 | 8 |
| | らりるれろ らりるれろ | ラリルレロ | WXYZ w x y z 9 | 9 | 9 |
| | わをんー。 ↓ (Line Break) | ワワンー。 ↓ (Line Break) | .. 0 ↓ (Line Break) | 0 | 0 |
| | * * * Log/Double-byte Symbol/Pictograph List ¹ | * * * _2 | Single-byte Mail/ Web Extensions ³ | * -, (Pause) ⁴ | ----- |
| | Log, Double-byte Symbol ⁵ /Pictograph List | | | # | ----- |
| | Conversion (Up) | | Cursor Up | | |
| | Conversion (Down) | | Cursor Down ↓ (Line Break) | | |
| | Cursor Left | | | | |
| | Cursor Right | | | | |
| | Change Entry Mode | | | | |
| | Toggle Case (for some characters) | | Toggle Case + Toggle Mode (upper/lower and lower/upper case) | ----- | ----- |
| | Delete One Character/ Cancel Conversion | Delete One Character | | | Delete Code/One Character |
| | Delete All | | | | |
| | Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁶ | | | | |
| | OK | | | | |
| | Phonetic Conversion | ----- | | | Toggle Pictograph Code 1 - 6 and Character Code + Toggle Pictograph List 1 - 6 and Log List ⁷ |
| | Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics Conversion | ----- | | | Open list for Pictograph Code 1 - 6 ⁷ |

¹ Disabled until hiragana is converted.

² - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

³ Extensions are listed for easy entry.

⁴ - and , (Pause) are for phone number entry.

⁵ Single-byte for single-byte katakana/alphanumeric entry.

⁶ Press once for each character to recover immediately after deleting. [Not available after deleting text with (Long Press).]

⁷ List is not available for Character Codes.

Entering Characters

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter 鈴木 to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode. Switch to double-byte or single-byte katakana mode to enter katakana. Alternatively, enter hiragana and then select katakana from the word suggestion list.

4

Entering Characters

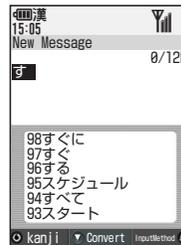
1 Press **3 DEF ㊦** three times

Word suggestions change as hiragana are entered.

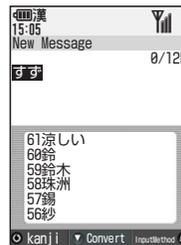


2 Press **㊦**

• When the next character is on the same key, press **㊦** first.

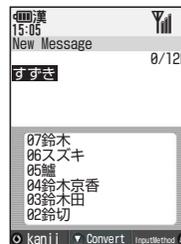


3 Press **3 DEF ㊦** three times and press *** ㊦**



4 Press **2 ABC ㊧** twice

• To enter hiragana without converting to kanji, skip to Step 6.



5 Press **㊦ Convert** and use **㊦** to select a word

- To see other suggestions, press **㊦ Next** or **㊦ Back**.
- To exit the list, press **㊦**.
- To change segment, see "Segmenting Phrases" below.



6 Press **㊦**



4

Entering Characters

Learning Function

- The most recently used word appears first in the list.

Predictive & Previous Usage

- Use **Predictive** and **Previous Usage** to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Predictive | Word suggestions change as up to 5 hiragana are entered |
| Previous Usage | Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries |

- Both functions are active by default (see P.4-14).

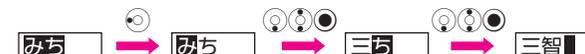
User Dictionary

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list (see P.4-15).

Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not in the list, press **㊦** after Step 5 to exit. Then use **㊦** to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment みち into み and ち.



Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press

Example: To enter **西山大輔**



Small Kana (つ, ッ, etc.)

Enter small hiragana あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゅ and よ as well as small katakana.

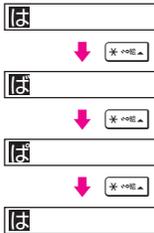
1 Enter a character and press



Adding * or °

1 Enter a character and press

- In kanji (hiragana)/double-byte katakana entry, press the key once to add * to か (Ka) row, さ (Sa) row and た (Ta) row characters, and press twice to remove. For は (Ha) row characters, press once to add *, twice to add ° and three times to remove.



Tip

In Single-byte Katakana Entry

- Press once to add * and twice for °. Symbols are single-byte.
- Press to remove * or °.

Entering Alphanumerics

Enter alphanumerics in double-byte alphanumerics (upper & lower case) or single-byte alphanumerics (upper & lower case) mode. Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.



- In double-byte or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press to toggle between upper and lower case.
- When the next character is on the same key (example: entering **A** then **B**), press first to move cursor.

Symbols, Pictographs & Emoticons

Symbols & Pictographs

1 Press or to open Log List (Log List is available in some entry modes)

Recently used Symbols/Pictographs appear.

- appears by default or when Log List is deleted (see below).

2 Use to select one and press

- Repeat Step 2 to enter more.

To see more lists, press or . The list toggles as follows:

Log List → Symbol List (1 - 3) → Pictograph List (6 - 1)

- Press to toggle the list in reverse order.

- Press to scroll down.

3 Press a key (-) to exit list and enter the assigned character

- Alternatively, press Back or to exit list.



Deleting Log List

- In a text entry window, press Menu → Select Input/Conversion → Press → Select Clear Symbols → Press → Select OK → Press

- Press twice to return to the text entry window.

- Log List cannot be deleted in Pictograph Code mode.

In Pictograph Code Mode

- To enter a Pictograph directly, enter 2 digits (see P.17-8 - 17-10).

- To edit a code mid-entry, press to clear first digit then enter correct digits.

- To select from Pictograph List, follow these steps.

Press List → Select a Pictograph → Press

- To toggle through Page 1 - 6 and Log List, press .

Tip

- Single-byte Symbols do not appear in Log List.
- Symbols are double or single-byte according to the entry mode. (Pictographs are all double-byte.)
- Alternatively, enter **きごう** and press Convert. Some Symbols can be selected.

4

Entering Characters

4

Entering Characters

Emoticons

- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Emoticons** and press
- 3 Select an emoticon and press
 - Enter two digits (01 - 50) to jump to the emoticon assigned to the number.

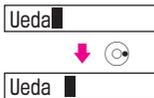
Note Emoticons cannot be entered in Pictograph Code (1 - 6) mode.

Tip

- For other emoticons, enter **かお** and press **Convert**.
- Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん** and press **Convert**. Corresponding emoticons can be selected.

Space

- 1 In a text entry window, press
- Alternatively in alphanumeric entries, press seven times to enter a space.



Line Break

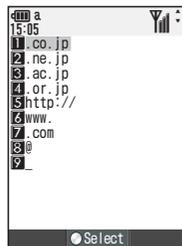
Insert line breaks in text, Text Memo, BBS, etc.

- 1 Press **at the end of text**
 - To insert line breaks in text, press until appears. For kanji (hiragana) entry mode, then press . Line break is inserted at the cursor position.
 - Keystroke count varies by character entry mode (see P.4-3).



Mail & Web Extensions

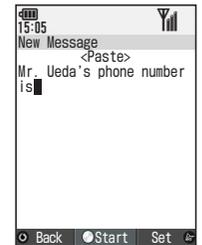
- 1 In alphanumeric entry, press
- 2 Select an extension and press
 - Mail addresses and URLs are single-byte.



Copying from Phone Book

Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows.
Select from names, phone numbers, mail addresses or Personal Data.

- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
- 2 Press
- 3 Open a Phone Book entry
 - To search Phone Book, see P.5-13.
 - Skip the step of pressing .
- 4 Use to select an item and press
- 5 Use to move cursor to target location
- 6 Press
 - Selected item is inserted.



Inserting TEL: or mailto:

- To insert **TEL:** or **mailto:** before a phone number or mail address, follow these steps after Step 5.
 - Press **Set** → Select **1 TEL:** or **2 mailto:** → Press

Inserting Owner Profile

- In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Select **Saved Information** → Press → Select **1 Profile** → Press → Enter Security Code
 - For more, see Steps 4 - 6 above.

Character Code

Use multi-digit Character Codes to enter characters.

- 1 In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (see P.17-9 - 17-12)

Pager Code

- 1 In a text entry window, press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Input/Conversion** and press
- 3 Select **Input Method** and press
- 4 Select **Pager** and press
 - Pager Code entry window opens.
 - To switch to Kana Mode, select **Kana** → Press
- 5 Enter two digits (see P.4-11)
 - Pager Mode is active until switched to Kana Mode.

Character Entry Modes

- For text entry in Pager Mode, press to toggle between entry modes as follows:
 - Single-byte lower case (P)** → **Pictograph Code 1 - 6 (絵)** & **Character Code (区)** → **Double-byte lower case (P)**
 - Press to toggle between Pictograph Code 1 - 6 and Character Code mode.
- Press to toggle between upper and lower case.

- Tip**
- Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion is disabled in Pager Mode.
 - To enter * or °, see Pager Code List on P.4-11.

Pager Code List

- Blanks indicate no entry.
- Upper and lower case are available for characters with gray background. Press to switch.

Double-byte upper case

| | | Second digit (Press secondly) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|----|---|---|---|-------|---|----|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | | | | |
| First digit (Press first) | 1 | あ | い | う | え | お | A | B | C | D | E | | | | | |
| | 2 | か | き | く | け | こ | F | G | H | I | J | | | | | |
| | 3 | さ | し | す | せ | そ | K | L | M | N | O | | | | | |
| | 4 | た | ち | つ | て | と | P | Q | R | S | T | | | | | |
| | 5 | な | に | ぬ | ね | の | U | V | W | X | Y | | | | | |
| | 6 | は | ひ | ふ | へ | ほ | Z | ? | ! | - | / | | | | | |
| | 7 | ま | み | む | め | も | ¥ | & | | | *1 | | | | | |
| | 8 | や | (| ゆ) | よ | ＊ | # | Space | | *2 | | | | | | |
| | 9 | ら | り | る | れ | ろ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | | | | |
| | 0 | わ | を | ん | ＊ | ° | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | | | | |

Double-byte lower case

| | | Second digit (Press secondly) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | | | | |
| First digit (Press first) | 1 | あ | い | う | え | お | a | b | c | d | e | | | | | |
| | 2 | | | | | | f | g | h | i | j | | | | | |
| | 3 | | | | | | k | l | m | n | o | | | | | |
| | 4 | | | っ | | | p | q | r | s | t | | | | | |
| | 5 | | | | | | u | v | w | x | y | | | | | |
| | 6 | | | | | | z | | | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | *1 |
| | 8 | や | | ゆ | | よ | | | | | | | | | | *2 |
| | 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Single-byte upper case

| | | Second digit (Press secondly) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|----|---|---|---|-------|---|----|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | | | | |
| First digit (Press first) | 1 | ア | イ | ウ | エ | オ | A | B | C | D | E | | | | | |
| | 2 | カ | キ | ク | ケ | コ | F | G | H | I | J | | | | | |
| | 3 | サ | シ | ス | セ | ソ | K | L | M | N | O | | | | | |
| | 4 | タ | チ | ツ | テ | ト | P | Q | R | S | T | | | | | |
| | 5 | ナ | ニ | ヌ | ネ | ノ | U | V | W | X | Y | | | | | |
| | 6 | ハ | ヒ | フ | ヘ | ホ | Z | ? | ! | - | / | | | | | |
| | 7 | マ | ミ | ム | メ | モ | ¥ | & | | | *1 | | | | | |
| | 8 | ヤ | (| ユ) | ヨ | ＊ | # | Space | | *2 | | | | | | |
| | 9 | ラ | リ | ル | レ | ロ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | | | | | |
| | 0 | ワ | ヲ | ン | ＊ | ° | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | | | | |

Single-byte lower case

| | | Second digit (Press secondly) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | | | | | |
| First digit (Press first) | 1 | ア | イ | ウ | エ | オ | a | b | c | d | e | | | | | |
| | 2 | | | | | | f | g | h | i | j | | | | | |
| | 3 | | | | | | k | l | m | n | o | | | | | |
| | 4 | | | ッ | | | p | q | r | s | t | | | | | |
| | 5 | | | | | | u | v | w | x | y | | | | | |
| | 6 | | | | | | z | | | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | *1 |
| | 8 | ヤ | | ユ | | ヨ | | | | | | | | | | *2 |
| | 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

*1 Press to insert line breaks (in mail message text, Text Memo, etc.).

*2 Press to toggle between upper and lower case.

- and are double-byte.

Conversion Methods (Japanese Only)

Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

- 1 Enter reading in hiragana
- 2 Press **kanji**
- 3 Select a kanji and press **OK**



One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: To enter 鈴木



- One-Hiragana Conversion and User Dictionary (see P.4-15) share memory. Selected words may not be saved if User Dictionary is full.
- Up to 20 entries are saved per hiragana (Title Word) between One-Hiragana Conversion and User Dictionary. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry. However, User Dictionary remains unchanged.

Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

- 1 Enter hiragana and press **Input Method**
 - To enter **AM**, press **2 ABC** **6 WHO IS** then **Input Method**.
- 2 Use **OK** to select a word and press **OK**
 - Hiragana to Roman Letter Conversion (hiragana with * or ° is converted to the same characters/Symbols):

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|-------|------------------------------|-------|---|-------|
| あ | @ | い | . | う | / | え | _ | お | Space |
| か | A | き | B | < | C | け | Space | こ | Space |
| さ | D | し | E | す | F | せ | Space | そ | Space |
| た | G | ち | H | つ | I | て | Space | と | Space |
| な | J | に | K | ぬ | L | ね | Space | の | Space |
| は | M | ひ | N | ふ | O | へ | Space | ほ | Space |
| ま | P | み | Q | む | R | め | S | も | Space |
| や | T | ゆ | U | よ | V | — | — | — | — |
| ら | W | り | X | る | Y | れ | Z | ろ | Space |
| わ | , | を | . | ん | Space | — (Long Sound), ° Line Break | | | Space |

- Hiragana to Number Conversion (hiragana with * or ° is converted to the same numbers):
 - あ (A) row...1 ■ か (Ka) row...2 ■ さ (Sa) row...3 ■ た (Ta) row...4
 - な (Na) row...5 ■ は (Ha) row...6 ■ ま (Ma) row...7 ■ や (Ya) row...8
 - ら (Ra) row...9 ■ わをん— (Long Sound), ° Line Break...0

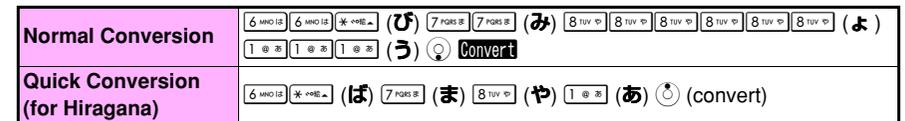
Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words.

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Use Quick Conversion in kanji (hiragana) mode only.

Example: To enter 微妙



- 1 Enter hiragana and press **OK**
 - Cursor turns green.
 - While cursor is green, use **OK** to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.
 - To cancel Quick Conversion, press **ESC** → Press **OK** for normal conversion

- 2 Use **OK** to select a word and press **OK**

Tip The most recently used word (mostly nouns) appears first.

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Words starting with a hiragana in the same row (あ, い, う, え, お for あ) appear. Word suggestions vary by time of day.

Example: When あ is entered

| 5:00 - 10:59 | 11:00 - 16:59 | 17:00 - 22:59 | 23:00 - 4:59 |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 朝一番 朝帰り 行ってきます いってらっしゃい ⋮ | あちい～ 後でね いただきま～す♪ 移動中 ⋮ | 遊ぼう 明日 急いで行くよ 今どこ? ⋮ | アウチ!! ありがとう いえーい!!! 行こうね ⋮ |

- Words in the list are preset by time blocks.
- If Clock is not set, only words for 11:00 - 16:59 are available.

One Hiragana Word Call

Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for. The most recently selected word appears first.

Example: You entered あたあざわ and selected お父さん last time.



Conversion Settings

Disable Predictive/ Previous Usage Disable *Predictive* or *Previous Usage* (see P.4-5)

Default On

In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Select **Input/Conversion** → Press **2** → Select **Predictive** or **Previous Usage** → Press **2** → Choose **Off** → Press **2**

Reset Learning Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Select **Input/Conversion** → Press **3** → Select **Reset Learning** → Press **3** → Select **OK** → Press **3**

- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

Dictionaries (Japanese Only)

User Dictionary

Save up to 100 frequently used words/phrases and assign Title Words in hiragana to entries. In text entry windows, enter Title Word and convert. Entries appear among word suggestions. Save up to five entries per Title Word.

New Entry Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Index Menu ▶ Functions → Settings 2 → User Dictionary → New Entry

Enter a word/phrase → Press **2** → **Enter Title Word** → Press **2**

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per Title Word.

Edit Edit or delete entries

Index Menu ▶ Functions → Settings 2 → User Dictionary → Edit

Edit
Select a word or phrase → Press **2** → **Edit** → Press **2** → **Edit Title Word** → Press **2** → Select **1 Overwrite** or **2 New Entry** → Press **2**

Deleting One Entry
Select a word or phrase → Press **2** → **Menu** → Select **2 Delete** → Press **2** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **2**

Deleting All
Press **2** → **Menu** → Select **3 Delete All** → Press **2** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **2**

V501SH Download Dictionary

Download specialized V501SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp's Space Town Mobile Internet site. Activate up to two dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions. For details, access Sharp's *Space Town* Mobile Internet site (see **P.8-2**).

Acquire Dictionary Activate downloaded dictionaries

Index Menu ▶ Functions → Settings 2 → User Dictionary → Acquire Dictionary

Select a number → Press **2** → **Select a dictionary** → Press **2**

- To replace current dictionary, select a number → Press **2** → Press **2** → **Menu** → Select **Change** → Press **2** → Select a dictionary → Press **2**

From Data Folder

■ Press **○** → Select *My Files* → Press **○** → Select **1** *Data Folder* → Press **○** → Select a folder → Press **○** → Select a dictionary file → Press **⌂** **Menu** → Select *Save Dictionary* → Press **○** → Select a number → Press **○**

■ When a file is already saved, *Overwrite?* appears → Choose **1** *Yes* or **2** *No* → Press **○**

Cancel Cancel dictionary

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* → *Settings 2* → *User Dictionary* → *Acquire Dictionary*

Select a number → Press **○** → Press **⌂** **Menu** → Select *Cancel* → Press **○**

Editing Characters

Deleting

1 Use **⊕** to select a character and press **⌂**

The highlighted character is deleted.

- Recover up to 64 characters deleted with **⌂**. Press **⌂** once for each character to recover immediately after deleting. Pressing any other key disables the recover function.

Note Press **⌂** for 1+ seconds to delete an entire entry. Characters deleted in this manner cannot be recovered.

Replacing

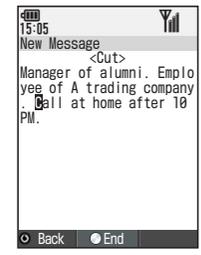
1 Press **⌂** to delete a character

2 Enter another character

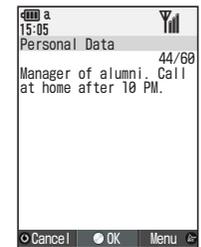
Copy/Cut & Paste

When **Menu** appears, copy or cut and paste text (up to 15,000 single-byte characters) into the same window or another.

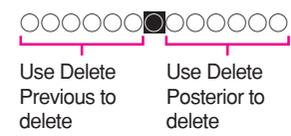
- 1** In a text entry window, press **⌂** **Menu**
- 2** Select **1** *Copy* or **2** *Cut* and press **○**
- 3** Move cursor to the first character of text and press **○**
Start point is set (*End* appears).
■ To change the start point, press **⌂**.
- 4** Move cursor to the end of text and press **○**
- 5** Open text paste target window and press **⌂** **Menu**
- 6** Select **3** *Paste* and press **○**
- 7** Move cursor to target location and press **○**
Text is inserted.



Cut



Deleting Text Before or After Cursor



- 1** Press **⌂** **Menu**
- 2** Select **6** *Delete Posterior* or **7** *Delete Previous* and press **○**
- 3** Press **○**

Text Memo

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.

- Save up to 20 Text Memo phrases to handset and 300 to Memory Card.
- When memory is full, delete text to make room for new ones (see P.4-20).

Entering Text

- Save up to 1,000 single-byte characters in Memo format and 128 single-byte characters in Note format.
- Ten editable Text Art are saved by default. Edit and replace default entries.

Memo Format

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase

- 1 Select  Text Memo and press .**
Titles or the first part of saved text appear.
 - To open text, select one ▶ Press .
 - To switch to Memory Card, press  **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press .
- 2 Press  **Menu****
- 3 Select **Create New** and press .**
- 4 Select  **New Memo** and press .**
- 5 Enter text and press .**
 - To save to Memory Card, press  .
 - To switch back to handset, press  .
- 6 Choose  **Yes** and press .**
Text is saved.
 - To save more text, repeat Steps 2 - 6.

Saving from Message or Phone Book

- In a text entry window, press  **Menu** ▶ Select  **Save Text Memo** ▶ Press 
 - ▶ Move cursor to the first character of text ▶ Press  ▶ Move cursor to the end of text ▶ Press  ▶ Choose  **Yes** ▶ Press 

Note Format

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

- 1 Press  **Menu****
- 2 Select **Create New** and press .**
- 3 Select  **New Note** and press .**
- 4 Select **Body Text** and press .**
- 5 Enter text and press .**
- 6 Select **Category** and press .**
- 7 Select a category and press .**
 - To check date and time of entry and last edit, select **Details** ▶ Press .
 - Press  to return.
- 8 Press  **Set****
 - To save to Memory Card, press  .
 - To switch back to handset, press  .
- 9 Choose  **Yes** and press .**
 - To save more text, repeat Steps 1 - 9.

Tip Note format Text Memo can be sent via infrared (see P.13-2).

Text Memo Functions

Edit/Delete

Edit or delete Text Memo

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

Edit Memo

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Edit* → Press  → Edit → Press  → Select **1** *New Entry* or **2** *Overwrite* → Press 

Edit Note

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Edit* → Press  → Select *Body Text* or *Category* → Press  → Edit text → Press  → Press  **Set** → Select **1** *New Entry* or **2** *Overwrite* → Press 

Delete Single Text Memos

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Delete* → Press  → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press 

To Data Folder

Save Note format Text Memo to Data Folder (Etc.). Text is saved as vFile (see P.12-38).

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *To Data Folder* → Press  → Enter title → Press  → Select a folder → Press 

- Memo format text is saved in text format.
- Create sub folders if necessary.

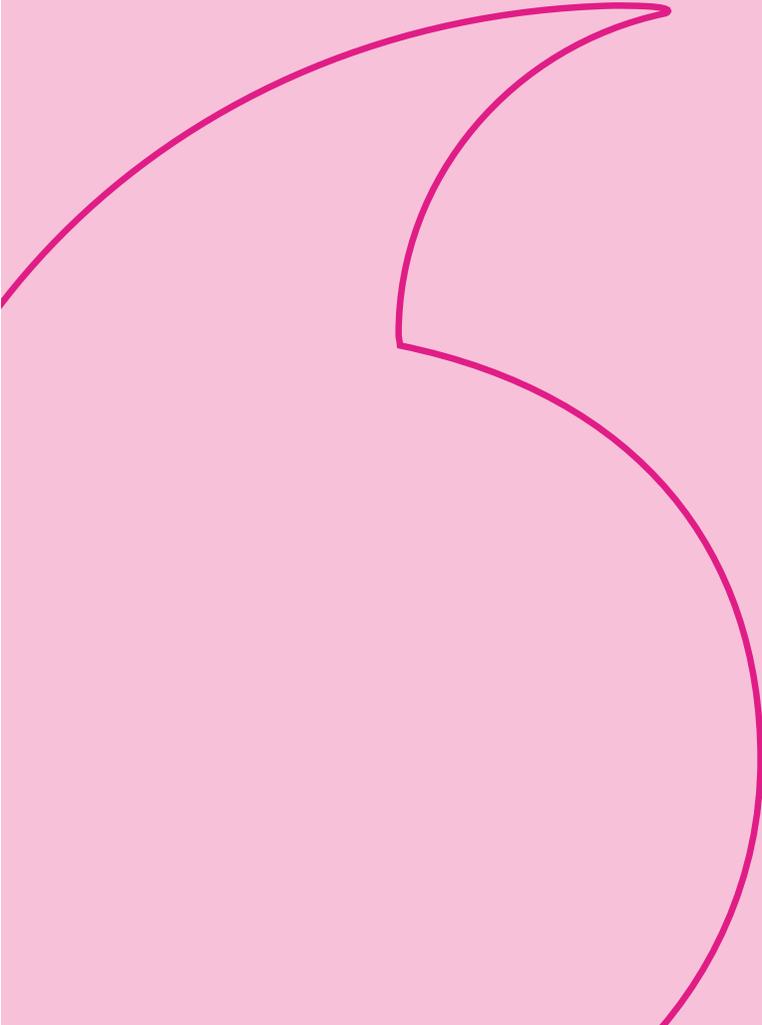
Change to Vnote

Change Memo format text to Note format

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Text Memo

Select text → Press  **Menu** → Select *Change to Vnote* → Press 

- Text Memo contents may change when converting formats.
- Note cannot be converted to Memo.

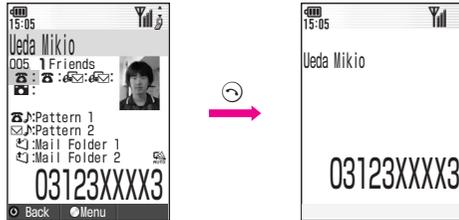


Phone Book

Overview

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book. Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.

■ Dialing from Phone Book (see P.5-11)



■ Sending Sky/Super Mail from Phone Book (see P.3-3)



■ When a Call Arrives



Note

Keep a separate copy of important information. When battery is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect information recovery. Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration.

Tip

- Use Phone Book Lock to protect entries from accidental alteration and to restrict access to Phone Book information (see P.14-3).
- Exchange Phone Book entries with other handsets, etc. via infrared (see P.13-2).

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

- Save up to 500 entries (000 - 499) in Phone Book (handset).
- Save up to 10,000 entries (0000 - 9999) in Phone Book (Memory Card).

| Item | Description | |
|------------------------|--|---|
| Name | Enter up to 18 single-byte characters. Use kanji, hiragana, katakana (double or single-byte), alphanumerics (double or single-byte) and Pictographs. | |
| Reading | Katakana, alphanumerics or Symbols appear as names are entered (up to 18 single-byte characters including * and *) | |
| Phone Number | Enter up to three phone numbers (24 digits each) | |
| Mail Address | Enter up to three mail addresses (60 single-byte characters each) | |
| Group | Sort entries into 10 Groups (0 - 9). Change Group names or set Ring Tone by Group. | |
| Personal Data | Add personal details. Use up to 60 single-byte characters. | |
| Secret Mode | Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret Mode entries | |
| Photo | Select an image to appear when you open a Phone Book entry. Activate Picture Call/Mail to see the image set here for incoming calls/mail. | |
| Option Settings | Personal Ring Tone | Set Ring Tone by caller |
| | Incoming Notice | Set Ring Tone by sender |
| | Picture Call/Mail | Set images to appear by caller or sender |
| | Mail Folder | Messages are sorted into folders |
| | Auto Reply | Send a reply automatically to messages from specified senders |

Incoming Calls while Editing

- Contents are temporarily saved for later editing. Contents reappear after the call ends.

New Phone Book Entries

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Add to Phone Book

1 Enter a name

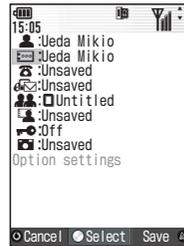
2 Press

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear after .

- Reading does not appear for Pictographs, pasted characters and names entered with Quick Conversion.
- Katakana, roman letters, numbers and Symbols appear in single-byte.

To correct reading, select : ▶ Press ▶ Edit reading ▶ Press

To cancel, press **Cancel** ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press



Phone Book Details

3 Select : and press

4 Enter a phone number

• Include the area code for landline phone numbers.

To correct phone number, press to move cursor ▶ Press to delete a digit at the cursor position ▶ Enter a phone number (Press for 1+ seconds to clear all.)

Press twice to enter - between digits. (- counts as a digit.)

To enter Push Tones, press three times to enter Pause (,) ▶ Enter alphanumerics
 ■ Each Pause (,) indicates a one-second pause. The subsequent alphanumerics are also sent as Push Tones (see P.15-2).

5 Press

6 Select an icon and press

To save additional phone numbers, select : **Unsaved** ▶ Press ▶ Repeat Steps 4 - 6

7 Select : and press

8 Enter a mail address

9 Press

10 Select an icon and press

To save additional mail addresses, select : **Unsaved** ▶ Press ▶ Repeat Steps 8 - 10

To set a Group, select : ▶ Press ▶ Select a Group ▶ Press

To enter Personal Data, select : ▶ Press ▶ Enter information ▶ Press

Photo: see P.5-6

Saving Secret Mode Entries: see P.5-7

11 Press **Save**

Memory Number entry window opens. Assign a Memory Number to each Phone Book entry.

12 Saving to Handset

1 Enter Memory No. (000 - 499)

Entry is saved to Phone Book.

Use LCD Remote/Mic to call the number saved in Memory Number 000 (see P.15-47).

Use Speed Dial to call numbers saved in Memory Numbers 000 - 099 (see P.5-14).

Saving to Memory Card

1 Press

• appears only when Memory Card is inserted.

To switch back to handset, press again.

2 Enter Memory No. (0000 - 9999)

Assign Memory No. Automatically (Handset)

■ Press to assign the smallest available number.

■ To specify a range of numbers, enter hundreds or tens digit and press .

• **To specify hundreds, enter first digit** ▶ Press .

Example: Enter . The range is 300 - 399.

• **To specify tens, enter two digits** ▶ Press .

Example: Enter . The range is 210 - 219.

Assign Memory No. Automatically (Memory Card)

■ Press to assign the smallest available number.

■ To specify a range of numbers, enter thousands, hundreds or tens digit and press .

• **To specify thousands, enter first digit** ▶ Press .

Example: Enter . The range is 3000 - 3999.

• **To specify hundreds, enter two digits** ▶ Press .

Example: Enter . The range is 2100 - 2199.

• **To specify tens, enter three digits** ▶ Press .

Example: Enter . The range is 1230 - 1239.

Tip

Exchange Phone Book entries between handset and Memory Card (see P.11-9).

Warning Messages

| On Display | Cause | Operation |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| Overwrite? | The Memory Number is already in use | Choose 1 Yes and press ⏏ to overwrite the entry. Choose 2 No and press ⏏ to enter another Memory Number. To assign Memory Number automatically, see P.5-5 . |
| Memory Full Cannot Save | All Memory Numbers are in use | Overwrite or delete entries (see P.5-15) |
| Secret Data saved | The number is already used for a Secret Mode Phone Book entry | Activate Secret Mode (see P.14-6) to overwrite |

5

Photo

Save an image to Phone Book entries. The image appears for calls/mail from that entry.

Setting Photo

When Photo is set, Picture Call/Mail (see **P.5-7**) in Option Settings is activated automatically and the image appears for incoming calls/mail.

To hide image, cancel Picture Call/Mail.

1 In Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**), select **📷**: and press **⏏**

2 *Selecting from Data Folder*

1 Select **1 Data Folder** and press **⏏**

2 Select an image and press **⏏**

3 Press **⏏**

Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**) returns. Complete other fields.

- Some images in Data Folder may be too large for Phone Book Photo.

Capturing New Image

1 Select **2 Sha-mail Shoot** and press **⏏**

2 Frame image on Display

3 Press **⏏**

Captured image appears.

4 Press **⏏**

Image is saved to Data Folder and Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**) returns. Complete other fields.

Picture Call/Mail

When Photo is set, Picture Call/Mail is activated automatically and the image appears for incoming calls/mail. To hide image, follow these steps to cancel Picture Call/Mail.

1 In Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**), select *Option settings* and press **⏏**

2 Select **3 Picture Call/Mail** and press **⏏**

3 Choose **2 Off** and press **⏏**

■ To activate Picture Call/Mail, choose **1 On** → Press **⏏**

4 Press **⏏** **Set**

Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**) returns. Complete other fields.



Picture Call/Mail is canceled when source image in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved.

Saving Secret Mode Entries

1 In Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**), select **🔒**: and press **⏏**

2 Choose **1 On** and press **⏏**

Phone Book Details (see **P.5-4**) returns. Complete other fields.

- Activate Secret Mode (see **P.14-6**) to open Secret Mode entries.

Change Secret to Standard

■ Activate Secret Mode (see **P.14-6**) and follow these steps.

Open a Phone Book entry (see **P.5-11**) → Press **⏏** → Select *Edit* → Press **⏏** → Select **🔒**: → Press **⏏** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **⏏** → Save entry (see Steps 6 - 8 on **P.5-15**)



Do not save confidential information in Phone Book. Security Code and thus Secret Mode entries may be compromised.



When not in Secret Mode, Phone Book Names/Photo images do not appear for incoming calls/mail from numbers/addresses in Secret Mode entries. Personal Ring Tone and Incoming Notice are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret Mode entries do not appear in Redial or Call History. Names saved in Redial/Call History before an entry is converted to a Secret Mode entry appear even if handset is not in Secret Mode.

5

Phone Book

Saving from Redial or Call History

Index Menu ► Tel Ops

- 1 Select **4 Redial** or **5 Call History** and press ●
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Add to Phone Book** and press ●
- 4 **New Entry**

- 1 Select **1 New Entry** and press ●
- 2 Enter name and press ●

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (see P.5-4) returns. Complete other fields.

New Item

- 1 Select **2 New Item** and press ●
 - 2 Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-13)
 - Skip the step of pressing **TEL**.
 - When three phone numbers are already saved, the phone number is not added.
 - 3 Press ●
 - 4 Select an icon and press ●
- Phone Book Details (see P.5-4) appears. Complete other fields.

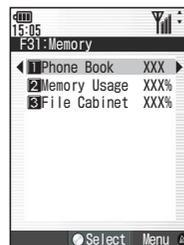
Note Call History records without Caller ID cannot be saved to Phone Book.

Tip Numbers and mail addresses in received messages (see P.4-8) or Notepad Memory (see P.2-15) can be saved to Phone Book.

Phone Book Memory Status

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 1

- 1 Select **1 Memory** and press ●
- Number of entries appears.
- To see details, select **1 Phone Book** ► Press ●
 - Press **Exit** to exit.



Option Settings

Set Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice, Picture Call/Mail (see P.5-7), Mail Folder and Auto Reply (see P.6-2). Select Set All or One Number/Address.

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Set All | Apply the same setting to every number/address in a single Phone Book entry. Set All cancels One Number/Address settings. |
| One Number/Address | Apply setting to each number/address independently. One Number/Address cancels Set All settings. |

Overview

- 1 In Phone Book Details (see P.5-4), select **Option settings** and press ●
- Option Settings menu appears.

- 2 Select an item and press ●

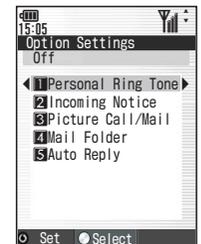
- 3 **Apply Same Setting to All**

- 1 Select **1 Set All** and press ●

Settings by Number/Address

- 1 Select **2 One Number/Address** and press ●
- 2 Select a number or address and press ●
- 3 Choose **1 On** and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** ► Press ● ► Press **Set**



Option Settings Menu

Canceling

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press ●

Option Settings menu returns.

■ Press **Set** to exit.

- 4 **Set Options** (see P.5-10 - 5-11)

Phone Book Details (see P.5-4) returns. Complete other fields.

Note For phone numbers, the following settings apply only to Vodafone handset numbers: Incoming Notice, Mail Folder and Auto Reply.

Setting Options

Follow these steps after opening Option Settings menu (see P.5-9).

Personal Ring Tone & Incoming Notice Select Ring Tone, vibration, etc. for incoming calls/mail from numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book

Ring Tone

Select **1** *Personal Ring Tone* or **2** *Incoming Notice* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Select **1** *Ring Tone* → Press ● → Select a tone or melody (see Steps 1 - 3 on P.8-3) → Press ⊙ **Set** → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

Vibration

Select **1** *Personal Ring Tone* or **2** *Incoming Notice* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Select **2** *Vibration* → Press ● → Select **1** *On*, **2** *Off* or **3** *SMAF Link* → Press ● → Press ⊙ **Set** → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

Vibration Pattern

Select **1** *Personal Ring Tone* or **2** *Incoming Notice* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Select **3** *Vibration Pattern* → Press ● → Select a pattern → Press ● → Press ⊙ **Set** → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

Mobile/Small Light

Select **1** *Personal Ring Tone* or **2** *Incoming Notice* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Select **4** *LED Indicator* → Press ● → Perform Steps 1 - 3 in "Mobile/Small Light" on P.8-5 to set pattern → Press ⊙ **Set** → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

Ring Time (for Incoming Notice)

Select **2** *Incoming Notice* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Select **5** *Ring Time* → Press ● → Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) → Press ● → Press ⊙ **Set** → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

- Note**
- When source file in Data Folder is deleted, renamed or moved, Ring Tone is set to **Pattern 1** for Personal Ring Tone and **Mail** for Incoming Notice.
 - To apply Personal Ring Tone or Incoming Notice setting to Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first.

Mail Folder Specify Mail Folder for each Phone Book entry to sort messages automatically

Select **4** *Mail Folder* → Press ● → Select **1** *Inbox Auto Sort* or **2** *Sent Auto Sort* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Select a folder → Press ● → Press ⊙ **Set** → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

Auto Reply

Specify numbers/addresses to send a reply automatically to messages from them

■ To activate the setting, set Auto Reply in Mail Settings to **On** (see ⊙ P.6-2).

Select **5** *Auto Reply* → Press ● → Perform Step 3 on P.5-9 to set target number/address → Press ⊙ **Set** → For One Number/Address, press ⊙ **Set** again

Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

Follow these steps to search Phone Book by Memory Number (default search method).

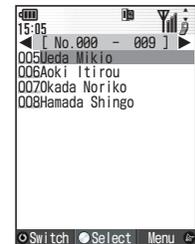
- To dial numbers saved in Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first (see P.14-6).
- To search by other methods, see P.5-12.

1 Press ⊙ (**TEL**)

- To search Phone Book entries on Memory Card, press ⊙ **Switch** → Select a number range → Press ●
 - Phone Book entries on Memory Card are grouped by 500 entries.

2 Press ⊙ **Search** or enter Memory No.

- Press ⊙ **Search** to open Phone Book Entry List in the order of Memory Number.
- Enter Memory Number to open Phone Book Entry List starting from the entered number.
- Use ⊙ to select an entry.



3 Press ●

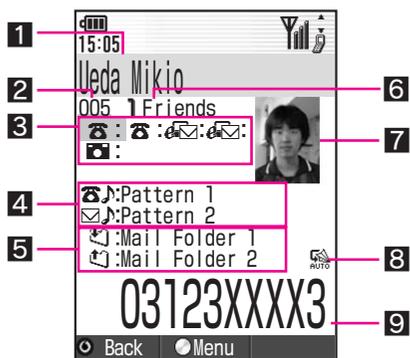
- Phone Book entry opens.
- When multiple numbers or addresses are saved, use ⊙ to select other icons.

4 Press ⊙

- Number is dialed.

Note Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.14-3) to open Phone Book.

Window Description



- 1 Name
- 2 Memory No.
- 3 Icon for Saved Items
 - Phone Number (☎ : Call, 🏠 : Home, 📱 : Mobile, 🏢 : Company)
 - Mail Address (📧 : Internet, 📧 : Mobile)
 - Personal Data (👤 :)
 - Photo (📷 :)
- 4 Tone Set for Personal Ring Tone or Incoming Notice
 - 📞 : Personal Ring Tone, 📧 : Incoming Notice
- 5 Mail Folders Set for Auto Sort
 - 📧 : Inbox Mail Folder
 - 📧 : Sent Mail Folder
- 6 Group Name
- 7 Image Set for Photo
- 8 Auto Reply
- 9 Phone Number or Mail Address

- Tip**
- Use to toggle saved items. Phone number or mail address appears in 9.
 - Personal Data or Photo image appears in a new window.
 - Press **Back** to return to Phone Book Entry List.

Phone Book Search

Search Methods

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Memory No. Search | Lists Memory Numbers including the one you enter |
| Katakana Search | Shows entries with Reading starting with specified katakana or katakana in the same row |
| Group Search | Opens entries in a specified Group |
| Search by Reading | Shows entries with Reading starting with entered character |

Search method is **Memory No. Search** by default.

Switching Search Methods

- 1 Press (**TEL**)
The method used last appears.
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select a method and press
Selected method appears.
 - To search and open an entry, see below.

Searching/Opening Phone Book Entries

Follow these steps in Standby. Skip the step of pressing (**TEL**) when continuing from Step 3 above.

Memory No. Search

Search by Memory Number

■ Set search method to **Memory No. Search** (see P.5-12).

- Press (**TEL**) → Enter Memory No. (000 - 499) → Select a name → Press
- Press to dial.

Katakana Search

Search by katakana row which includes the first character of Reading

■ Set search method to **Katakana Search** (see P.5-12).

- Press (**TEL**) → Specify a row → Select a name → Press
- Press to dial.

• Katakana-Key Assignments:

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|--|-------------------|--|-------------------|--|-------------------|--|
| ア (A) row | | カ (Ka) row | | サ (Sa) row | | タ (Ta) row | |
| ナ (Na) row | | ハ (Ha) row | | マ (Ma) row | | ヤ (Ya) row | |
| ラ (Ra) row | | ワ (Wa) row | | Others | | | |

■ When Reading starts with a roman letter, number or Symbol, or is not entered, select **Others**.

Group Search

Search by Group

■ Set search method to **Group Search** (see P.5-12).

- Press (**TEL**) → Select a Group → Press → Select a name → Press
- Press to dial.

Search by Reading

Search by Reading saved in :

■ Set search method to **Search by Reading** (see P.5-12).

- Press (**TEL**) → Enter reading (up to 18 single-byte characters) → Press → Select a name → Press
- Press to dial.

Speed Dial

Use Speed Dial to call first phone number saved in Memory Numbers 000 - 099.
To dial numbers saved in Secret Mode entries, activate Secret Mode first (see P.14-6).
If not, **Secret Data saved** appears and Standby returns.

1 Dialing Memory No. 000 - 009

- 1 Enter the last digit (0 - 9)

Dialing Memory No. 010 - 099

- 1 Enter the last two digits (10 - 99)

2 Press

Name and phone number appear and the number is dialed.

- When no entry/phone number is saved, **No Number** appears and Standby returns.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, the first one is dialed.

Note Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.14-3) to use Speed Dial.

Show Photo

Show the assigned images in Phone Book Entry List.



Entry List
(Memory No. Search)



Entry List with Images
(Memory No. Search)

1 Press (**TEL**), then **Search**

2 Press **Menu**

3 Select **Show Pics** and press

Images appear in Phone Book Entry List.

- To hide images, while list with images appears, press **Menu** → Select **Show List** → Press

Editing Phone Book

Correction/Change

1 Press (**TEL**), then open an entry

2 Press

3 Select **Edit** and press

4 Select an item and press

Edit contents.

- Procedure is the same as when saving to Phone Book (see P.5-4).
- Edit Reading manually after editing names.

5 Press when finished

Phone Book Details returns.

- To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 - 5.

■ To cancel, press **Cancel** → Choose **Yes** → Press

6 Press **Save**

7 Press

8 Choose **Yes** and press

The entry is overwritten.

- To save to another Memory No., choose **No** → Press → Enter another Memory No. (or press)

Deleting Entries

1 Press (**TEL**), then open an entry

2 Press

3 Select **Delete** and press

4 Choose **Yes** and press

Next entry appears. If no other entries remain, Standby returns.

Note

The source files remain in Data Folder, even if you delete entries containing Original Ring Tones, Chaku-Uta, Voice files and images set for Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice or Picture Call/Mail.

Group Settings

Rename Groups and customize Ring Tone settings by Group. Personal Ring Tone and Incoming Notice settings (see **P.5-10**) take priority over Group Settings.

Changing Group Name

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Group Settings* ▶ *Change Group Name*

1 Select a Group and press ●

2 Enter a name

- Enter up to 10 single-byte characters.

3 Press ●

- Repeat Steps 1 - 3 for other Groups.

4 Press ☰ to exit

Group Ring Tone

Group Ring Tone is **Off** for all Groups by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Group Settings* ▶ *Group Ring Tone*

1 Select a Group and press ●

2 Select **1** *Incoming Call* or **2** *Incoming Mail* and press ●

3 Select **1** *Call Functions* and press ●

4 Choose **1** *On* and press ●

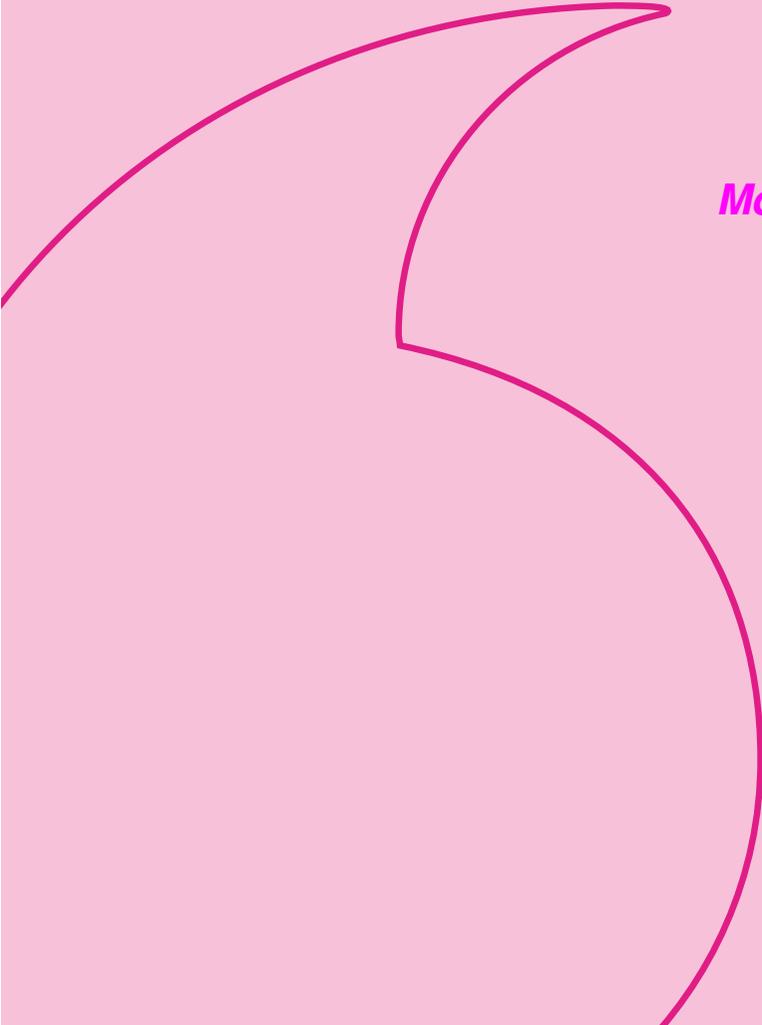
- To cancel, choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

5 Select from **2** *Ring Tone* to **4** *Ring Time* and press ●

- **3** *Ring Time* is available for incoming mail only.
- For Ring Tone settings, see **P.8-3**.
- For vibration and Mobile/Small Light patterns, see **P.8-4 - 8-5**.
- For Ring Time setting, see **P.8-5**.

6 Press ☰ to exit

Tip When Group Ring Tone is **Off**, Ring Tone setting for incoming calls applies.



Mobile Camera

Getting Started

V501SH features a 1.3 megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images and record video.

- Still Images: see **P.6-8**
- Video: see **P.6-18**
- Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see **P.6-5**
- Shooting Options (see **P.6-23**)

Some key operations are indicated for Viewer position and clamshell open.

Example: Press **S** or **●**

File Formats & Save Locations

| Mode | Format | Save Location (Handset or Memory Card) |
|----------------|---------------|---|
| Sha-mail | JPEG (.jpg) | Data Folder (Images) See P.12-3 |
| Camera | JPEG (.jpg) | Camera folder See P.12-3 |
| Movie Sha-mail | MPEG-4 (.3gp) | Data Folder (Movies) See P.12-3 |
| Motion Camera | MPEG-4 (.3gp) | Motion Camera folder See P.12-3 |
| Video Camera | MPEG-4 (.ASF) | Video Camera folder See P.12-3 |

Tip Specify storage media before capturing images or recording video (see **P.6-26** "Save to"). For Sha-mail, Camera and Movie Sha-mail modes, specify storage media before or after capturing images or recording video.

6

Mobile Camera

Mobile Camera Basics

- Check that lens cover (see **P.1-7**) is clean before image capture. Use a soft cloth to wipe fingerprints and oil off.
- If handset moves while shooting, images may blur. Hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self Timer (see **P.6-13**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument. However, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Shutter Clicks

- Shutter Click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner Mode.
 - To change Shutter Click sound for still images, see **P.6-23**.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture, mobile camera ends after five minutes of inactivity and Standby returns.

Call Arrives before Saving Image or while Recording Video

- Captured image/recorded video is temporarily saved. To save a folder, end the call and press **●**.
- When mail arrives, a message appears at the top of Display.

Camera/Video Camera Mode Image Orientation

- Camera mode images and Video Camera mode video appear rotated 90 degrees when captured with clamshell open (held vertically) and viewed on PCs. To compensate for this, hold handset horizontally in Viewer position for image capture.

Exporting Images

- View images and video on PCs, TVs or other display devices via Video Cable (see **P.15-45**).

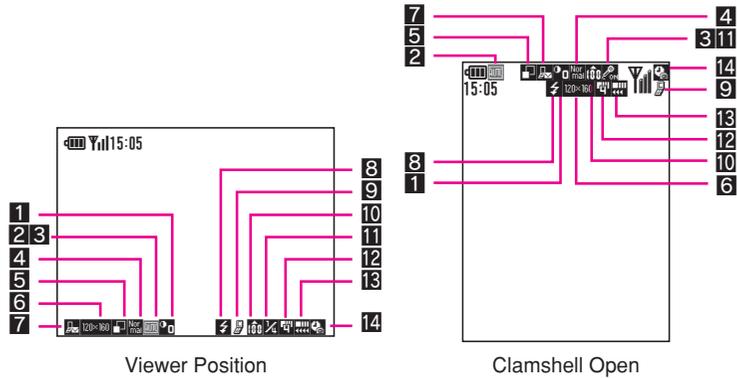
Tip Even in Viewer position, some windows appear with a longer vertical and shorter horizontal.

6

Mobile Camera

Camera Display Indicators

Below are descriptions of icons that may appear on Display while mobile camera is active. For details, see the referenced pages.



1 Brightness (see P.6-24)



Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

2 Shoot by Scene (see P.6-25)

: Full Auto, : Night View, : Action, : Text

3 Microphone (see P.6-25)

: Mic On (Mic On Standard for Motion Camera), : Mic On Fine (Motion Camera), : Mic Off

4 Image Quality (see P.6-25)

: Standard, : Fine, : High Quality (Camera)

5 Toggle Preview (see P.6-23)

: 100%, : 200% (Sha-mail)
: 100%, : Enlarged (Movie Sha-mail/Motion Camera)

6 Image Size (see P.6-25)

7 Select Mode (see P.6-26)

: Sha-mail, : Camera, : Movie Sha-mail/Motion Camera/Video Camera

8 Mobile Light (see P.6-24)

: Portrait, : Full Auto, : Macro

9 Save to (see P.6-26)

: Handset, : Memory Card

10 Capacity (Sha-mail/Camera: see P.6-9, Movie Sha-mail: see P.6-19)

Number of images savable

- : More than 100
- : Red background: 5 or less

11 Picture Count*

- : Captured/Total

: Index Image (composite image for Overlap) is on Display.

12 Burst Mode*

: 4-Burst Mode, : 9-Burst Mode, : 25-Burst Mode

: Auto Bracket, : Overlap

13 Burst Speed*

(red): Rapid, (yellow): Slightly Fast, : Normal, : Moderate, : Slow, : Manual

(red): High, : Normal (Auto Bracket/Overlap)

14 Self Timer (see P.6-13)

*Indicators in 11 to 13 appear for Burst Modes (Sha-mail/Camera).

Macro Mode Prompt

■ Portrait/Macro Selector Graphic appears when mobile camera is activated. To hide graphic, follow these steps.

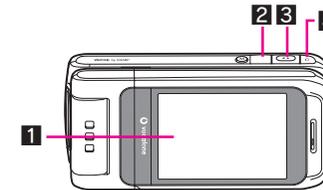
Press ➔ Select **Camera** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Macro Mode Prompt** ➔

Press ➔ Choose **Off** ➔ Press

■ Macro Mode Prompt setting affects all mobile camera modes, including Scan Code and Text Scanner.

Viewfinder & Key Assignments

Viewer Position



1 Viewfinder

Horizontal view appears.

2 Shutter/Camera Startup

In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate the mode used last (default: Sha-mail). Open selected menu items or execute functions.

3 Zoom

(zoom in), (zoom out)

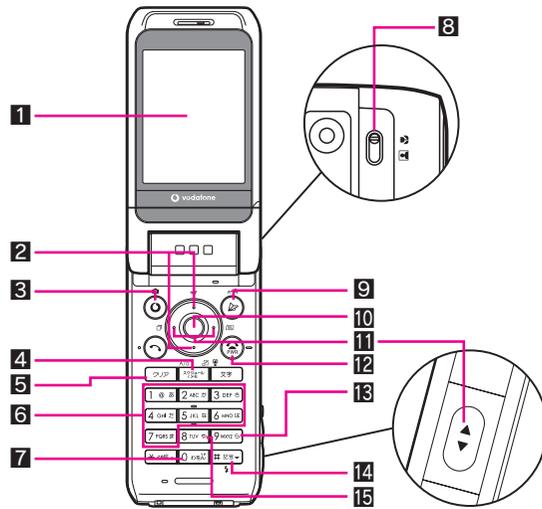
- Select menu items.

4 Menu/Cancel/End

- Before saving, press to start over (or press for 1+ seconds to open menu).

Clamshell Open & Self Portrait Position

View a summary of key assignments on the handset (see P.6-27 "Key Ops Guide")



1 Viewfinder

Vertical view appears.

2 Brightness (see P.6-24)

☀ (brighter), ☁ (darker)

3 Camera Startup

In Standby, press **☉** for 1+ seconds to activate the mode used last (default: Sha-mail).

4 Toggle Preview (see P.6-23) & Show/Hide Indicators (see P.6-23)

Press to toggle as follows:

- Sha-mail (except when Image Size is **240x320**)
200% (with indicators) → 200% (no indicators) → 100% (with indicators)
- Movie Sha-mail/Motion Camera
Enlarged (with indicators) → Enlarged (no indicators) → 100% (with indicators)
- Sha-mail (Image Size: **240x320**)/Camera/Video Camera
Press to show or hide indicators.

5 Cancel

6 Select Mode (see P.6-26)

While mobile camera is active, press keys to activate the corresponding modes.

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1 ☉ | Sha-mail (see P.6-8) | 5 JKL | Video Camera (see P.6-18) |
| 2 MAC | Camera (see P.6-8) | 6 MPQ | Scan Code (see P.15-32) |
| 3 MOV | Movie Sha-mail (see P.6-18) | 7 PRS | Text Scanner (see P.15-39) |
| 4 GHZ | Motion Camera (see P.6-18) | | |

7 Image Size (see P.6-25)

Press before image capture to toggle size as follows:

- Sha-mail: **120x128** → **240x320** → **120x160**
- Camera: **768x1024** → **960x1280** → **480x640**
- Movie Sha-mail: **80x60** ⇄ **128x96**
- Motion Camera: **176x144** ⇄ **128x96**

8 Portrait/Macro Selector

- Slide to Macro to capture images as close as 10 cm. Allow at least 40 cm for Portrait.

9 Menu

10 Shutter

11 Zoom

◀ or ◂ (zoom out), ▶ or ◃ (zoom in)

12 End

13 High Speed Zoom (zoom in)

Press **9 word**. In Sha-mail mode, press **☉** for the maximum zoom.

14 Mobile Light (see P.6-24)

Press to toggle modes as follows: Portrait (**📷**) → Full Auto (**📷**) → Macro (**📷**) → Off

- Full Auto is not available for recording video.

15 High Speed Zoom (zoom out)

Still Images

Still Image Modes

Sha-mail

Attach to Mail/save as Wallpaper
Use Burst Shot & Picture Effects
Resize Images to Display

Use

Capture images for Mail,
Display, etc.

Camera

Maximum Image Size:
W 1280 x H 960 dots
Transfer images to PC, etc.
via Memory Card

Use

Edit or print* images
on external devices
*V501SH is DPOF-compatible

Tip

- Camera mode images meet Design rule for Camera File system (DCF) set by Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA) to ensure image compatibility with digital cameras, printers, and other devices. Complete compatibility is not guaranteed.
- Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) allows print settings (number of prints, etc.) to be saved to media (see P.6-39 "Selecting Images & Prints" for more information).

Editing Images on Other Devices

- Copy original image files to the hard disk before editing an image.
- Editing and re-saving images on PCs or other devices cancels DCF (see above) compatibility and may make the image unopenable on handset.

Mode Comparison

| | Sha-mail | Camera |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Image Size | W 240 x H 320 dots (QVGA) W 120 x H 160 dots (QQVGA) W 120 x H 128 dots | W 1280 x H 960 dots (SXGA) ¹ W 1024 x H 768 dots (XGA) ¹ W 640 x H 480 dots (VGA) ¹ |
| Save Location | Data Folder (Images) | Camera folder |
| Image Quality | Standard/Fine | Standard/Fine/High Quality |
| Digital Zoom | W 240 x H 320 dots: 1x - 4x W 120 x H 160 dots: 1x - 8x W 120 x H 128 dots: 1x - 8x | W 1280 x H 960 dots: None W 1024 x H 768 dots: 1x - 1.25x W 640 x H 480 dots: 1x - 2x |
| Attach to Super Mail | OK | OK ² |
| Format | JPEG (.jpg) | |
| Memory Capacity | 1,570 files ³ | 260 files ³ |

¹For Camera mode images, thumbnails (W 120 x H 160 dots) are saved with the original images.

²Attach thumbnails, reduced images (W 240 x H 320 dots) or images saved to Data Folder.

³Values are approximate for handset Data Folder, with default image size and quality.

Tip

- Saved video, animations, melodies or V-Applications reduce still image memory.
- To check memory status, see P.6-30.

File Names

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Sha-mail | Image files are saved by date and time by default. Example: 05-07-15_12-34.jpg indicates the image was captured at 12:34, July 15, 2005.* |
| Camera | Default file name starts from VFSH0001.JPG then VFSH0002.JPG , and so on. |

*If the same name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name. Sha-mail image files can be renamed (see P.12-44).

Note

Camera mode images may not appear on handset if file names are changed on PCs, etc. (Camera mode files cannot be renamed on handset.)

6

Mobile Camera

6

Mobile Camera

Capturing Still Images

Viewer Position

1 In Viewer position (see P.1-12), press **[S]** for 1+ seconds

The mode used last activates (default: Sha-mail).

2 Press **[C]** **Functions**, select **Select Mode** and press **[S]**

3 Select **1 Sha-mail** or **2 Camera** and press **[S]**

4 Frame image on Display

Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see P.6-5

Shooting Options: see P.6-23



5 Press **[S]**

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

To start over, press **[C]** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **[S]**

To edit image (Sha-mail), press **[C]** (Long Press) →

Select **Picture Effect** → Press **[S]** → For more, see

P.12-22 - 12-29

To save to Memory Card, press **[C]** (Long Press) → Select

Save to → Press **[S]** → Select **2 Memory Card** →

Press **[S]** (Images are saved to Memory Card until switched back to handset.)

To send image via Super Mail, press **[S]** (Long Press) → Perform from Step 2 on

P.3-3



Set handset to save captured image automatically (see P.6-26 "Auto Save").

6 Press **[S]** to save image

Viewfinder returns for another shot.

7 Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds to exit

Clamshell Open & Self Portrait Position

Index Menu ▶ Camera

1 Select **1 Sha-mail** or **2 Camera** and press **[C]**

To view a brief description of each mode, select a mode and press **[C]** **Guide**

2 Frame image on Display

Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see P.6-6

Shooting Options: see P.6-23



3 Press **[C]**

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

To start over, press **[C]** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **[C]**

To edit image (Sha-mail), press **[C]** **Functions** → Select

Picture Effect → Press **[C]** → For more, see P.12-22 - 12-29

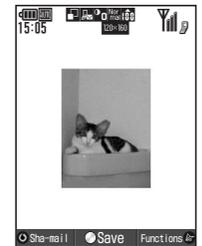
To save to Memory Card, press **[C]** **Functions** → Select **Save to**

→ Press **[C]** → Select **2 Memory Card** → Press **[C]**

(Images are saved to Memory Card until switched back to handset.)

To send image via Super Mail, press **[C]** **Sha-mail** → Perform

from Step 2 on P.3-3



Set handset to save captured images automatically (see P.6-26 "Auto Save").

4 Press **[C]** to save image

Viewfinder returns for another shot.

5 Press **[C]** to exit



Self Portrait

Your image appears on Display as a mirror image. After shutter is released, preview image appears reversed.



When Captured Image is Unsaved

Exit? appears.

- Choose **1 Yes** and press **[C]** to end. Standby returns.

- Choose **2 No** and press **[C]** to return to the captured image.

Before Saving

- To use the following functions, cancel Auto Save (see **P.6-26**) before image capture.
- Follow these steps after capturing an image in Step 5 on **P.6-10** or Step 3 on **P.6-11**.

Add to Phone Book

Save images to Phone Book

Press **[C]** (Long Press) or **[F]** Functions → Select **[5]** Add to Phone Book → Press **[S]** or **[O]** → Perform Step 4 on P.5-8

Save As Thumb

Save only thumbnails (W 120 x H 60 dots) to Data Folder (Images)

Press **[C]** (Long Press) or **[F]** Functions → Select **[1]** Save As Thumb → Press **[S]** or **[O]**

Rotate Thumb

Rotate and save thumbnails (W 120 x H 160 dots) to Data Folder (Images)

Press **[C]** (Long Press) or **[F]** Functions → Select **[2]** Rotate Thumb → Press **[S]** or **[O]**

- To rotate further, press **[C]** for 1+ seconds or **[R]** Rotate.
- Press **[S]** or **[O]** to save rotated thumbnails.

Still Image Functions

Before Image Capture

Press **[C]** or **[F]** Functions to use the following functions:

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Image Quality | Select Standard , Fine or High Quality (see P.6-25) |
| Image Size | Select image size (see P.6-25) |
| Mobile Light | Select mode, color and lighting time (see P.6-24) |
| Shoot by Scene | Select a mode according to lighting or subject (see P.6-25) |
| Toggle Preview | Switch Viewfinder size (see P.6-23) |
| Special Features | Self Timer Set Self Timer (see P.6-13) |
| | Set Burst Mode Select mode and speed (see P.6-16) |
| | Frame Add frames (see P.6-14) |
| Option Settings | Shutter Click Change Shutter Click sound (see P.6-23) |
| | Save to Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-26) |
| | Auto Save Save the captured image automatically (see P.6-26) |
| | Auto Reset All settings return to defaults when mobile camera shuts down (see P.6-27) |
| Delete | Delete files on handset or Memory Card (see P.6-30) |
| Key Ops Guide | View a summary of key assignments (see P.6-27) |
| Brightness | Adjust amount of light (see P.6-24) |
| Select Mode | Switch to other mobile camera modes (see P.6-26) |

*Available for Sha-mail mode.

Before Saving

Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds or **[F]** Functions to use the following functions:

Sha-mail

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| [1] Toggle Preview | Switch Viewfinder size (see P.6-23) |
| [2] Picture Effect | Edit images (see P.12-22 - 12-29) |
| [3] Save to | Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-26) |
| [4] Attachment | Attach images to Super Mail (see P.6-36) |
| [5] Add to Phone Book | Save images to Phone Book (see P.6-12) |
| [6] Delete | Delete files on handset or Memory Card (see P.6-30) |

Camera

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| [1] Save As Thumb | Save only thumbnails (see P.6-12) |
| [2] Rotate Thumb | Rotate thumbnails by 90 degrees (see P.6-12) |
| [3] Attachment | Attach thumbnails or reduced images to Super Mail (see P.6-38) |
| [4] Save to | Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-26) |
| [5] Delete | Delete files on handset or Memory Card (see P.6-30) |
| [6] Toggle Preview | Switch Viewfinder size (see P.6-23) |

Self Timer

Release shutter automatically to capture images or record video.

| | | | |
|---------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> Camera | <input type="radio"/> Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |

- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 4 on **P.6-10** or Step 2 on **P.6-11**) or recording video (after Step 4 on **P.6-20**).
- Self Timer is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press **[C]** or **[F]** Functions
 - For video recordings, press **[C]** or **[F]** Functions, then skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select **Special Features** and press **[S]** or **[O]**
- 3 Select **Self Timer** and press **[S]** or **[O]**
 - To change countdown time, select **[2] Set Time** → Press **[S]** or **[O]** → Select time → Press **[S]** or **[O]**
- 4 Select **[1] Self Timer On** and press **[S]** or **[O]**
 - Viewfinder returns (Ⓜ appears).
 - To cancel, select **[2] Self Timer Off** → Press **[S]** or **[O]**

5 Frame image on Display and press **S** or **●**

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After the set time (default: **10 Seconds**), shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.
- To release shutter manually during countdown, press **S** or **●**. Image is captured or video recording starts and Self Timer is canceled.
- To cancel Self Timer during countdown, press **C**, **⊙** **Cancel** or **⏏**.
 - Viewfinder returns. (Self Timer setting remains.)

6 Saving Still Images

1 Press **S** or **●**

Self Timer is canceled and Viewfinder returns.

Saving Video

1 To stop, press **S** or **●**

■ When saving to Memory Card, a confirmation appears → Press **S** or **●** (Omit the next step.)

2 To save, select **1 Complete** or **1 Save** and press **S** or **●**

Self Timer is canceled and Viewfinder returns.

7 Press **C** for 1+ seconds or **⊙** to exit

Note

- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown (Sha-mail, Camera and Movie Sha-mail modes). Self Timer setting remains.
 - In Motion Camera and Video Camera modes, Alarm operates after mobile camera shuts down.
- During countdown, the following settings are not available:
 - Brightness, Mobile Light and Select Mode.

Adding Frames

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="checkbox"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Video Camera | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files obtained via Web or Super Mail.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 4 on **P.6-10** or Step 2 on **P.6-11**).

1 Press **C** or **⏏** **Functions**

2 Select **6 Special Features** and press **S** or **●**

3 Select **3 Frame** and press **S** or **●**

4 Preset Frames

1 Select **1 Preset Frames** and press **S** or **●**

2 Select a frame and press **S** or **●**

Selected image (frame) appears on Display.

■ To toggle between frames, press **◀** or **▶**, or press **⊙** **Back** or **⏏** **Next**.

3 Press **S** or **●**

Original Frames

1 Select **2 Original Frames** and press **S** or **●**

• Some images may not be used as a frame.

2 Select a frame and press **S** or **●**

Selected image (frame) appears on Display.

■ To change image (frame), press **C** or **⊙** **Back** → Select a file → Press **S** or **●**

3 Press **S** or **●**

• When Image Size is **240x320**, frames smaller than W 120 x H 160 dots are enlarged.

Custom Screens

1 Select **3 Custom Screens** and press **S** or **●**

2 Select a Custom Screen and press **S** or **●**

Canceling

1 Choose **4 Off** and press **S** or **●**

5 Capture an image

■ In Viewer position, see Step 5 and onward on **P.6-10**.

■ With clamshell open or in Self Portrait position, see Step 3 and onward on **P.6-11**.

Tip

In Burst Mode, frame is added to each image.

Burst Mode

| | | | |
|---------------|--|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> Camera | <input type="radio"/> Movie Sha-mail | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Video Camera | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |

Use Burst Mode to capture images sequentially.

- Press **[S]** or **[●]** for the first shot. Handset captures the rest automatically.

| Mode | Description | Sha-mail | Camera |
|----------------------|--|-----------|--------|
| 4-Burst Mode | Capture four separate images | Available | 1 |
| 9-Burst Mode | Capture nine separate images | Available | N/A |
| 25-Burst Mode | Capture 25 separate images | 2 | N/A |
| Auto Bracket | Capture nine separate images. Brightness and Mobile Light color vary slightly for each shot. | Available | N/A |
| Overlap | Capture five images to create a composite image | Available | N/A |

¹Available when Image Size is **480x640**.

²Not available when Image Size is **240x320**.

- In 4-Burst or 9-Burst Mode, select shutter interval from five levels, or select **Manual** to release shutter manually.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 4 on **P.6-10** or Step 2 on **P.6-11**).

1 Press **[C]** or **[F]** **Functions**

2 Select **[4] Special Features** and press **[S]** or **[●]**

3 Select **[2] Set Burst Mode** and press **[S]** or **[●]**

4 **In Sha-mail Mode**

1 Select from **[1] 4-Burst Mode On** to **[5] Overlap On** and press **[S]** or **[●]**

For 25-Burst Mode, viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see **P.6-5**). Skip ahead to Step 6.

■ To cancel, choose **Off** → Press **[S]** or **[●]**

In Camera Mode

1 Select **[1] 4-Burst Mode On** and press **[S]** or **[●]**

■ To cancel, choose **[2] Off** → Press **[S]** or **[●]**

5 Select speed and press **[S]** or **[●]**

Viewfinder returns with the corresponding indicator (see **P.6-5**).

- Burst Speed is **Normal** by default.

6 Frame image on Display and press **[S]** or **[●]**

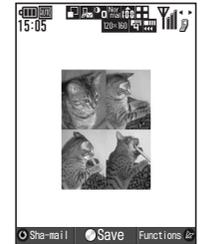
The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.

- For manual shutter control (4-Burst and 9-Burst Modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.
 - To cancel, press **[C]** or **[Stop]**.
 - Press **[S]** or **[●]** to save captured images.
- To cancel during manual shutter control, press **[C]** (Long Press) or **[Cancel]** → Choose **[Yes]** → Press **[S]** or **[●]** (Captured images are deleted.)

7 Index Image or a composite image appears

In Camera mode, the first captured image appears.

- Use **[Left]**, **[Right]** or **[Circular]** to toggle between frames and Index Image.
- To save images individually, select a frame or Index Image with **[Left]**, **[Right]** or **[Circular]** → Press **[C]** (Long Press) or **[F]** **Functions** → Select **[1] Save Image** → Press **[S]** or **[●]**
- To send images via Super Mail, select a frame or Index Image with **[Left]**, **[Right]** or **[Circular]** → Press **[C]** (Long Press) or **[F]** **Functions** → Select **[2] Attach Image** → Press **[S]** or **[●]** (Attachment options may appear depending on the image size.)



4-Burst Mode

8 To save, press **[S]** or **[●]**

Viewfinder returns with selected Burst Mode active.

- In Sha-mail mode, captured frames are saved to Data Folder (連写) with Index Image.
- In Camera mode, captured frames are saved to Camera folder individually.

9 Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds or **[Exit]** to exit

Note In low light or while Mobile Light is on, Burst Speed may slow down.

Before Saving

Press **[C]** for 1+ seconds or **[F]** **Functions** to use the following functions:

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| [1] Save Image | Save a selected image |
| [2] Attach Image | Attach images to Super Mail |
| [3] Save to | Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-26) |
| [4] Delete | Delete files on handset or Memory Card (see P.6-30) |
| [5] Toggle Preview | Switch Viewfinder size (see P.6-23) |

Video

Video Mode

Movie Sha-mail

Max Image Size:
W 128 x H 96 dots
Record up to 5 or 10 seconds
MPEG-4 Compatible
Attach to Super Mail

Use

Shoot video and attach files or casual video recording

Motion Camera

Record up to 30 minutes
Attach single video frames to Super Mail or edit video

Use

Use handset as a video camera

Video Camera

Max Image Size:
W 320 x H 240 dots
Edit video clips

Use

Record high quality video

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.

Tip For best results, record within 1.5 meters, in well-lit conditions.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.

Mode Comparison

| | Movie Sha-mail | Motion Camera | Video Camera |
|----------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Image Size | W 128 x H 96 dots (SQCIF) W 80 x H 60 dots | W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF) W 128 x H 96 dots (SQCIF) | W 320 x H 240 dots (QVGA) |
| Save Location | Data Folder (Movies) ¹ | Motion Camera folder | Video Camera folder |
| Recording Time (per shot) | 5 seconds (W 128 x H 96 dots) 10 seconds (W 80 x H 60 dots) | Approx. 3 minutes & 45 seconds (handset) Up to 30 minutes (Memory Card) | Approx. 28 seconds (handset) Capacity-based (Memory Card) |
| Image Quality | - | Standard/Fine | - |
| Digital Zoom | 1x - 8x | | 1x - 4x |
| Attach to Super Mail | OK | Clipped portion only | N/A |
| Format | MPEG-4 (.3gp) | | MPEG-4 (.ASF) |
| Memory Capacity | 315 files ² | Approx. 25 minutes ³ | Approx. 165 seconds ³ |

¹Select handset or Memory Card when saving.

²When recorded to Data Folder with no files or recordings.

³When recorded to handset Data Folder with no files or recordings, with default Image Quality (Motion Camera mode), Image Size and Mic Settings.

Tip

- Saved still images, animations, melodies or V-Applications reduce video memory.
- To check memory status, see **P.6-30**.

File Names

| | |
|--|---|
| Movie Sha-mail/ Motion Camera | Video files are saved by date and time by default. Example: 05-07-15_12-34.3gp indicates the image was captured at 12:34, July 15, 2005.* |
| Video Camera | Default file name starts from MOL001.ASF then MOL002.ASF , and so on |

*If the same name already exists, **XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

- Movie Sha-mail and Motion Camera files can be renamed (see **P.12-44**).

Recording Video

Make sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory before recording video. When battery is low (🔋), Motion Camera and Video Camera modes are not available. If battery becomes low (🔋) or memory becomes full while recording video, a warning appears and recording stops.

1 In Viewer position (see P.1-12), press [S] for 1+ seconds

The mode used last activates (default: Sha-mail).

When handset is open, press [S] → Select **Camera** → Press [S] → Skip ahead to Step 3

2 Press [C] **Functions**, select **Select Mode** and press [S]

3 Select [3] **Movie Sha-mail**, [4] **Motion Camera** or [5] **Video Camera** and press [S] or [S]

For [4] **Motion Camera** or [5] **Video Camera**, **Receive Call while Recording?** appears.

Choose [1] **Yes** or [2] **No** → Press [S] or [S]

To prevent disruptions, choose [2] **No** to activate Off-Line Mode.

4 Frame image on Display

Viewfinder & Key Assignments: see P.6-5

Shooting Options: see P.6-23



Movie Sha-mail Mode

Tip

Remaining Recording Time for Motion Camera & Video Camera

- 000 indicates less than 1 minute left.
- In Motion Camera mode, maximum recording time is 30 minutes regardless of time on Display (when saving to Memory Card). Recording ends and **30 minutes passed End** appears.
- Actual recording time may differ from that shown on Display depending on the subject.



Recording Time
Remaining Time (minutes)

Motion Camera Mode

5 Press [S] or [S]

Recording begins after a tone.

- To record sounds (Mic Settings is **On**), keep handset within approximately 50 cm from sound source.

Tip

When Memory is Already Full

Insufficient Memory Cannot Record appears and Viewfinder returns. Perform Steps 1 - 5 in "When Memory is Full" on P.6-30 to delete files and try again.

Memory Full while Recording (Motion Camera or Video Camera)

Recording stops automatically and **Handset Insufficient Memory** appears.

Select [1] **Complete** and press [S] or [S] to save captured video.

6 Movie Sha-mail Mode

1 To stop, press [S] or [S]

Recording stops with a tone.

- Recording automatically ends when limit is reached.

To play back, select [2] **Check Image** → Press [S] or [S]

To start over, select [3] **Cancel** → Press [S] or [S] →

Choose [1] **Yes** → Press [S] or [S]

To add telops, select [6] **Telop Edit** → Press [S] or [S]

→ Perform from Step 4 on P.6-34



2 Select [1] **Save** and press [S] or [S]

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

Tip

When Memory is Full

- Perform Steps 1 - 5 in "When Memory is Full" on P.6-30 to delete files and try again.

- When Memory Card is inserted, select [4] **Save to** after recording and press [S] or [S] to switch storage media.

Motion Camera/Video Camera Mode

1 To stop, press [S] or [S]

Recording stops with a tone.

When saving to Memory Card, a confirmation appears → Press [S] or [S] (Omit the next step.)

To start over (when saving to handset), select [2] **Cancel** → Press [S] or [S] → Choose [1] **Yes** → Press [S] or [S]

2 Select [1] **Complete** and press [S] or [S]

Video is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

7 Press [C] for 1+ seconds or press [S] to exit

If [2] **No** was selected in Step 3 on P.6-20, Off-Line Mode is canceled after Step 7.

Video Recording Operations

Before Image Capture

Press **C** or **Functions** to use the following functions:

| | |
|---|--|
| Image Quality¹ | Select Standard or Fine (see P.6-25) |
| Image Size² | Select video image size (see P.6-25) |
| Mobile Light | Select mode, color and lighting time (see P.6-24) |
| Self Timer | Set Self Timer (see P.6-13) |
| Toggle Preview² | Switch Viewfinder size (see P.6-23) |
| Show/Hide Indicators³ | Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (see P.6-23) |
| Mic Settings | Activate to record sounds (see P.6-25) |
| Option Settings | Save to Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-26) |
| | Auto Reset All settings return to defaults when mobile camera shuts down (see P.6-27) |
| Delete | Delete files on handset or Memory Card (see P.6-30) |
| Key Ops Guide | View a summary of key assignments (see P.6-27) |
| Brightness | Adjust amount of light (see P.6-24) |
| Select Mode | Switch to other mobile camera modes (see P.6-26) |

¹ Available for Motion Camera mode.

² Available for Movie Sha-mail and Motion Camera modes.

³ Available for Video Camera mode.

Before Saving

For Movie Sha-mail mode, the following menu items appear after recording:

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1 Save | Save video (see P.6-21) |
| 2 Check Image | Play video (see P.6-21) |
| 3 Cancel | Start over (see P.6-21) |
| 4 Save to | Select handset or Memory Card (see P.6-26) |
| 5 Attachment | Attach video to Super Mail (see P.6-38) |
| 6 Telop Edit | Set telops to appear while playing video (see P.6-33) |

Shooting Options

- Available options vary by mode.
- Follow these steps before capturing image (after Step 4 on **P.6-10** or Step 2 on **P.6-11**) or recording video (after Step 4 on **P.6-20**). When the setting is complete, Viewfinder returns. Perform from Step 5 on **P.6-10**, Step 3 on **P.6-11** or Step 5 on **P.6-21** to proceed.

Toggle Preview

Switch Viewfinder size or hide indicators

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | | <input type="radio"/> |

Default 100% (with indicators)

Press **C** or **Functions** → Select **Toggle Preview** → Press **S** or **●**

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

Show/Hide Indicators

Hide indicators to frame image on full Display

| | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input checked="" type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | <input type="radio"/> |

Default Show Indicators

Press **C** or **Functions** → Select **Show Indicators** or **Hide Indicators** → Press **S** or **●**

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

Shutter Click

Change Shutter Click sound

| | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input checked="" type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | | <input type="radio"/> |

Default Pattern 1

Press **C** or **Functions** → Select **Option Settings** → Press **S** or **●** → Select **1 Shutter Click** → Press **S** or **●** → Select a pattern → Press **S** or **●**

- Shutter Click setting applies to both Sha-mail and Camera modes.

- To check sound, select a pattern and press **S** for 1+ seconds or **●** **Play**.
 - Press **S** for 1+ seconds or **●** **Stop** to stop manually.



- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter Click sound for Burst Mode is unique and fixed.

Mobile Light

Select mode, color and lighting time

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|---|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | * |
| Motion Camera | * | Video Camera | * | | |

*Full Auto is not available.
Default Off/1 Minute/Lychee

Mode

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Mobile Light** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select from **Portrait Mode to Off** → Press **S** or **OK**

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Portrait Mode | Mobile Light activates and brightens for still image capture |
| Full Auto (for Still Images) | Mobile Light activates when light is low and brightens for image capture |
| Macro Mode | Mobile Light activates and brightness is constant |

Lighting Time

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Mobile Light** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select **Strobe Light** → Press **S** or **OK** → Select **Lighting Time** →
Press **S** or **OK** → Select time → Press **S** or **OK**

- Select shorter Lighting Time to lengthen Battery Time.

Color

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Mobile Light** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select **Strobe Light** → Press **S** or **OK** → Select **Color** → Press **S**
or **OK** → Select a color → Press **S** or **OK**

Note

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.

Image Settings

- Available settings vary by mode.
- Follow these steps before capturing image (after Step 4 on P.6-10 or Step 2 on P.6-11) or recording video (after Step 4 on P.6-20). When the setting is complete, Viewfinder returns. Perform from Step 5 on P.6-10, Step 3 on P.6-11 or Step 5 on P.6-21 to proceed.

Brightness

Adjust light sensitivity for still images and video

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | |

Default 0 (standard)

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Brightness** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select from five levels → Press **S** or **OK**

- Setting returns to default when mobile camera shuts down.

Image Size

Select image size

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | X | | |

Default Sha-mail: 120x160, Camera: 480x640
Movie Sha-mail & Motion Camera: 128x96

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Image Size** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select a size → Press **S** or **OK**

Image Quality

Select image or video quality

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|---|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | X |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | X | | |

Default Standard (Fine for Sha-mail 240 x 320)

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Image Quality** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select quality → Press **S** or **OK**

- In Camera mode, **High Quality** is available.

To cancel image correction (Camera mode only), open Image Quality menu → Press **C**
(Long Press) or **Fn** **Filter** → Choose **Off** → Press **S** or **OK**

Tip

The image quality increases as follows: **Standard** → **Fine** → **High Quality**.
Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

Shoot by Scene

Select a mode according to lighting or subject

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|---|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | X |
| Motion Camera | X | Video Camera | X | | |

Default Full Auto

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Shoot by Scene** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Select a mode → Press **S** or **OK**

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 Full Auto | Automatic adjustment |
| 2 Night View | Use in low light conditions |
| 3 Action | Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects |
| 4 Text | Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects |

Mic Settings

Record sounds when recording video

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | X | Camera | X | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | |

Default Mic On

Press **C** or **Fn** **Functions** → Select **Mic Settings** → Press **S** or **OK** →
Choose **Mic On** or **Mic Off** → Press **S** or **OK**

- Image quality is slightly different between Mic On and Mic Off.

Note

Mic On (Fine) recording requires more space in memory and shortens recording time.

Additional Settings

- Available settings vary by mode.
- Follow these steps before capturing image (after Step 4 on **P.6-10** or Step 2 on **P.6-11**) or recording video (after Step 4 on **P.6-20**). When the setting is complete, Viewfinder returns. Perform from Step 5 on **P.6-10**, Step 3 on **P.6-11** or Step 5 on **P.6-21** to proceed.

Select Mode

Switch to other mobile camera modes

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | |

Press **C** or **Ⓛ** **Functions** → Select **Select Mode** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Select a mode → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**

- Mode used last activates whenever mobile camera is activated with Camera Startup key.

Save to

Select handset or Memory Card to save image/video files

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | |

Press **C** or **Ⓛ** **Functions** → Select **Option Settings** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Select **Save to** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Select **1** **Handset** or **2** **Memory Card** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**

Default Handset

Auto Save

Set handset to save captured images automatically

| | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | | |

Press **C** or **Ⓛ** **Functions** → Select **Option Settings** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Select **3** **Auto Save** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Choose **1** **On** or **2** **Off** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**

Default Off

Auto Reset

All settings return to defaults when mobile camera shuts down

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | |

Default Off (Settings are retained.)

Press **C** or **Ⓛ** **Functions** → Select **Option Settings** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Select **Auto Reset** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ** → Choose **1** **On** or **2** **Off** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**

- Auto Reset setting applies to all mobile camera modes.



Setting does not affect Auto Save setting.

Key Ops Guide

View a summary of key assignments for operations with handset open (clamshell open)

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> | Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Movie Sha-mail | <input type="radio"/> |
| Motion Camera | <input type="radio"/> | Video Camera | <input type="radio"/> | | |

Press **C** or **Ⓛ** **Functions** → Select **Key Ops Guide** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**

- Press **⏪** or **⏩** to scroll down.

To return to Viewfinder, press **C** or **Ⓞ** **Back** → Press **C** or **Ⓞ** **Back**

Opening Images & Playing Video

Opening Still Images

Open Sha-mail/Camera mode images or Camera mode Burst Shot images.

- To open Sha-mail mode Burst Shot images, see **P.12-8** "Handset Data Folder."
- View images on PCs, TVs or other display devices (see **P.15-45**).

Index Menu → **Camera** → **Camera Files**

1 Select **1** **Sha-mail Images** or **2** **Camera Images** and press **S** or **Ⓞ**

- For Camera Images, select a folder → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**
- To switch to Memory Card, press **C** (Long Press) or **Ⓛ** **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **S** or **Ⓞ**

2 Select a file and press **S** or **Ⓞ**

Image appears.

- To open other files, press **C** or **⏪**.



Sha-mail Images



To view available functions, open a file and press **C** for 1+ seconds or **Ⓛ** **Menu**. For more, see **P.12-20 - 12-33**.

Camera Mode Images

- Images are reduced to fit Display. To restore the original size, see "Thumbnail or Original Size View" below.
- Use to scroll up, down, left and right.
- Press or to rotate images 90 degrees clockwise.

Thumbnail or Original Size View

Open Camera mode images in thumbnail or original size.

- Thumbnails are small copies (W 120 x H 160) of images taken in Camera mode.
- Follow these steps after opening a Camera mode image in Step 2 on P.6-27.

1 Press for 1+ seconds or **Menu**

2 Select **Show Thumbnails** or **Original Size** and press or **S** or **P**

- To return to the reduced size (Standard view), press (Long Press) or **Menu** → Select **Standard** → Press or **S** or **P**

Saving as Wallpaper or Data Folder File

Save a Camera mode image as Wallpaper or to Data Folder (Images), from where it can be edited/attached to Super Mail.

Follow these steps after opening a Camera mode image in Step 2 on P.6-27.

1 Press for 1+ seconds or **Menu**

2 Select **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Data Folder** and press or **S** or **P**

- For **Save As Wallpaper**, press or **S** or **P**
- For **To Data Folder**, select a folder → Press or **S** or **P**

Tip

- Image quality may change when saved as Wallpapers or to Data Folder.
- From Standard view, the reduced image is saved.
- When saving from Thumbnail view, select **Wallpaper Thumbs** or **Data Folder Thumbs**. For Wallpaper, select a display type. For Data Folder, the image in W 120 x H 160 is saved.
- When saving from Original Size view, select **Save As Wallpaper** or **Data Folder Images**. Only the portion on Display (W 240 x H 320) is saved.

Playing Video

- To open files from Data Folder, see P.12-8.
- View images on PCs, TVs or other display devices (see P.15-45).

Index Menu ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Camera Files**

1 Select **3** **MovieSha-mail Data**, **4** **Motion Camera Data** or **5** **Video Camera Data** and press or **S** or **P**

- For Video Camera Data, select a folder → Press or **S** or **P**
- To switch to Memory Card, press (Long Press) or **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press or **S** or **P**

2 Select a file and press or **S** or **P**

Video plays and stops automatically at the end.

- For Video Camera files on Memory Card, playback resumes from where it was stopped.
- While playing Movie Sha-mail video, press or to open next or previous files.

- To rotate video images, press (Long Press) or **Menu** → Select **Rotate Image** → Press or **S** or **P** → Select amount to rotate or **Use Current** (no rotation) → Press or **S** or **P**
- To play from the beginning (Video Camera files only), press (Long Press) or **Menu** → Select **Play from Start** → Press or **S** or **P**
- To add telops (Movie Sha-mail files only), press (Long Press) or **Menu** → Select **Other Edit Functions** → Press or **S** or **P** → Perform from Step 3 on P.6-34
- To open other files, press or **Back**.



Movie Sha-mail Images

Note

Among Motion Camera files, V501SH plays only **MPEG-4** video files. Nancy video files are not supported.

Playback Operations

| | |
|---|---|
| Fast Forward ¹ | Press . During fast forward, press to pause. |
| Fast Reverse ¹ | Press . During fast reverse, press to pause. |
| Stop | Press to pause |
| Adjust Volume | Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume (with Mic On). Select from six levels (0 - 5). |
| Change Display Size ² | Press to toggle display size as follows: enlarged (with indicators) → enlarged (no indicators) → 100% (with indicators) (When enlarged, images may not fit Display.) |

¹Not available for Movie Sha-mail files.

²For Video Camera files, press to show or hide indicators.

Tip

Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner Mode.

Memory Status

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Memory*

1 Select **File Cabinet** and press **S** or **⏻**

Memory usage status appears as a percentage (%).

To check Memory Card status, select **File Cabinet** ▶ Press **⏻** (Long Press) or **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **S** or **⏻**

When Memory is Full

When saving images, memory shortage warning may appear. To save images, press **⏻** or **⏮** and follow these steps to delete files.

1 Press **⏻** for 1+ seconds or **Functions**

2 Select **Delete** and press **S** or **⏻**

3 Select a file type and press **S** or **⏻**

To switch to Memory Card, press **⏻** (Long Press) or **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press **S** or **⏻**

4 Select a file and press **S** or **⏻**

5 Choose **Yes** and press **S** or **⏻**

Editing Video

| | |
|--|---|
| Edit ¹ | Save portion of 5 or 10 seconds from selected frame as a new file |
| Still Image ¹ | Save selected frame as a new file |
| Select 2 points ² | Save portion between two points as a new file |
| Delete Front Delete Back ² | Save portion before or after selected frame as a new file |
| Delete All ² | Delete video being played |
| Telop Edit ³ | Add telops (text) to video |

¹ Available for Motion Camera files.

² Available for Motion Camera and Video Camera files.

³ Available for Movie Sha-mail files.

Note

- Some files may not be edited.
- Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for V501SH.

Tip

Clipped Motion Camera video portions are saved to Data Folder (Movies) as MPEG-4 files with a .3gp extension. Use them as Super Mail attachments or add telops.

Clipping Video

Set clip portion size, reduce image size (**Reduce**) or crop edges (**Clipping**).

- If the original video was captured with **Mic On (Fine)**, sound is disabled in clipped portions.
- Clip up to 10 seconds when Image Size (see Step 4 below) is **80x60** and up to 5 seconds when **128x96** is selected.

Index Menu ▶ *Camera* ▶ *Camera Files* ▶ *Motion Camera Data*

1 Select a file and press **⏻**

Video plays.

2 Press **⏻** to start clipping

Video pauses.

3 Press **⏮** **Edit**

4 Select **1 Edit** and press **⏻**

To change mode, select **2 Edit Setting** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1 Mode Setting** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1 Clipping** or **2 Reduce** ▶ Press **⏻**

To set size, select **2 Edit Setting** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **2 Image Size** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1 80x60** or **2 128x96** ▶ Press **⏻**

5 Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏻**

6 Use **⏮** to select a frame

To cancel, press **⏻** **Back**.

7 Press **⏻**

Starting from the selected frame, portion of 5 or 10 seconds is clipped depending on the image size. Press **⏻** to stop manually.

To play back clipped portion before saving, select **2 Check Image** ▶ Press **⏻**

To start over, select **3 Cancel** ▶ Press **⏻**

To switch storage media, select **4 Save to** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **Handset** or **Memory Card** ▶ Press **⏻**

To send via Super Mail, select **5 Attachment** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Perform from Step 2 on **P.3-3**

To add telops, select **6 Telop Edit** ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Perform from Step 4 on **P.6-34**

8 To save, select **1 Save** and press **⏻**

Edited image is saved to Data Folder (Movies).



Saving Images from Video

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Motion Camera Data

- 1 Select a file and press** Video plays.
- 2 Press** **to select a frame**
Video pauses.
 - Use to select other frames.
- 3 Press** **Edit**
- 4 Select** **Still Image** and press
- 5 Press**
Selected frame is saved to Data Folder (Images) and Viewfinder returns.

Clipping Portions between Two Points

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files

- 1 Select** **Motion Camera Data** or **Video Camera Data** and press
 For Video Camera Data, select a folder ▶ Press
- 2 Select a file and press**
Video plays.
- 3 Press** **to select a frame**
Video pauses.
 - Use to select other frames.
- 4 Press** **Edit**
- 5 Select** **Select 2 points** and press
- 6 Choose** **Yes** and press
 - Use to change start point.
- 7 Press**
Playback resumes.
- 8 Press** **at the end point**
 - Use to change end point.
- 9 Press** **Set**
Clipped portion is saved and Viewfinder returns.

Cropping Video Clips

Delete the portion before or after the selected frame to save the rest as a new file.

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files

- 1 Select** **Motion Camera Data** or **Video Camera Data** and press
 For Video Camera Data, select a folder ▶ Press
- 2 Select a file and press**
Video plays.
- 3 Press** **to select a frame**
Video pauses.
 - Use to select other frames.
- 4 Press** **Edit**
- 5 Select** **Delete Front** or **Delete Back** and press
 To delete the entire file, select **Delete All** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press (Omit the next steps.)

Note The first and last frames cannot be selected for this operation.

- 6 Choose** **Yes** and press
- 7 Use** **to select start point**
 - Select **Delete Front** or **Delete Back** to delete the portion before or after the selected frame.
 To cancel, press **Back**.
- 8 Press**
- 9 Choose** **Yes** and press
The remaining portion is saved as a new file.

Editing Telops

Set telops to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

- Telops are available for Movie Sha-mail files.
- Telops do not appear in Viewer position.

Incoming Calls while Editing

- Telop is temporary saved. End the call to return.

Entering Text

Save up to 10 telops of up to 48 single-byte alphanumeric within three lines per entry.

- After text entry, set timing and time period for telops.
- To enter telops before saving Movie Sha-mail video, start from Step 3.

Index Menu ▶ *Camera* ▶ *Camera Files* ▶ *Movie Sha-mail Data*

- 1 Select a file and press** **Menu**
 - 2 Select *Other Edit Functions* and press**
 - 3 Select *Telop Edit* and press**
 - 4 Select a number and press**
 - To edit saved telops, press **Menu** ▶ Select **2 Change** ▶ Press
 - To delete saved telops one by one, press **Menu** ▶ Select **3 Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (Omit the next steps.)
 - To delete all saved telops, press **Menu** ▶ Select **4 Delete All** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press (Omit the next steps.)
 - 5 Select **1 Telop Text** and press**
 - 6 Enter text and press**
 - 7 Select **2 Show Time** and press**

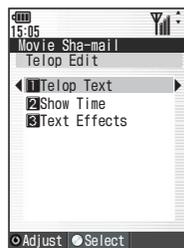
Video file opens.
 - 8 Use to select start point and press** **Start**
 - Press to play/stop video and use to select frames.
- Note** **Start** does not appear if telops are already set in the selected positions.
- 9 Select end point and press** **End**

Telop Edit menu returns.

 - To complete without adding effects, skip ahead to Step 11.
 - 10 Add effects**
 - Select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ See P.6-35
 - To cancel effects, select **3 Text Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select **7 Cancel Effect** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press
 - 11 Press **Adjust****

Telop is added.

 - To add more, repeat Steps 4 - 11.
 - Press **Set** to exit.
 - To cancel, press or ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press



Telop Edit Menu

Adding Effects

- More than one effect can be applied per telop entry.
- Among Select Text (in Font Color), Highlight and Blink, two effects can be used together.
- Setting Highlight disables Scroll setting, and vice versa.
- Follow these steps in Step 10 on P.6-34. After the settings are complete, perform Step 11.

Text Effects

Change font color and size or add effects

Changing Color of Entire Telop

Select **1 Font Color** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 All** ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Changing Color of Portion

Select **1 Font Color** ▶ Press ▶ Select **2 Select Text** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select the first character ▶ Press ▶ Use to specify text ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Changing Background Color

Select **2 Background Color** ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Highlighting

Select **4 Highlight** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select the first character ▶ Press ▶ Use to specify text ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Flashing Telop

Select **5 Blink** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select the first character ▶ Press ▶ Use to specify text ▶ Press

Changing Font Size

Select **6 Size** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Standard** or **2 Tiny** ▶ Press

Telop Scroll

Select a direction and visual effect for telop scroll

Scroll Direction

Select **3 Scroll** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Direction** ▶ Press ▶ Select **1 Left to Right** or **2 Right to Left** ▶ Press

Scroll Effects

Select **3 Scroll** ▶ Press ▶ Select **2 Effect** ▶ Press ▶ Select an option ▶ Press

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Frame In | Telop comes in from an end, then disappears in the center |
| Frame Out | Telop appears in the center and scrolls out |
| Rolling | Telop scrolls from end to end |

Sending Images & Video

Sha-mail Mode Images

Capture and send images as Super Mail attachments.

- To attach Burst Shot images, use to select a frame or Index Image.
- To attach images in Data Folder, see **P.12-9**.

1 Capture an image in Sha-mail mode.

- In Viewer position, perform Steps 1 - 5 on **P.6-10**.
- With clamshell open or in Self Portrait position, perform Steps 1 - 3 on **P.6-11**.

2 Before saving, press Sha-mail

Image is saved to Data Folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see **P.6-7** "Save & Send Image."



2-Touch Mail List

- Select a recipient and press . Super Mail Composition window opens (see **P.3-3**).
- 2-Touch Mail: see **P.3-14**

When Recipient is not in 2-Touch Mail List
Select **<Mail Address>** and press .



3 Complete other fields and send Super Mail (see Step 2 and onward on **P.3-3 - 3-5**)



Make sure that the recipient's handset is able to receive attachments.
For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.17-21**).

QVGA Size Images

Send W 240 x H 320 images or reduce to W 120 x H 160 dots first.

Some Vodafone handsets may not be able to handle QVGA size images.

1 Capture an image in Sha-mail mode

- In Viewer position, perform Steps 1 - 5 on **P.6-10**.
- With clamshell open or in Self Portrait position, perform Steps 1 - 3 on **P.6-11**.

2 Press Functions

3 Select Attachment and press

4 Select Attach Full Image or Attach 1/4 Size and press

- Image is saved to Data Folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with image attached.
- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see **P.6-7** "Save & Send Image."
 - 2-Touch Mail List: see **P.6-36**

5 Complete other fields and send Super mail (see Step 2 and onwards on **P.3-3 - 3-5**)

Split Images

Split W 240 x H 320 images into four and attach to Super Mail.

Split Mail transmission charges are equivalent to sending four Super Mail messages.

1 Capture an image in Sha-mail mode

- In Viewer position, perform Steps 1 - 5 on **P.6-10**.
- With clamshell open or in Self Portrait position, perform Steps 1 - 3 on **P.6-11**.

2 Press Functions

3 Select Attachment and press

4 Select Attach Split Mail and press

- Image is saved to Data Folder and Select Address window opens (image attached).
- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see **P.6-7** "Save & Send Image."
 - 2-Touch Mail List: see **P.6-36**

5 Select or enter a recipient (see Steps 3 - 4 on **P.3-4**)

Four messages with split images are saved to Outbox.



For each Split Mail message, subject is automatically entered as: **Upper Left, Upper Right, Lower Left** and **Lower Right**.

6 Sending Messages from Outbox

Choose Yes and press

- Outbox opens. See **P.4-21** to send Super Mail.

Saving Messages to Outbox

Choose No and press

Camera Mode Images

Send thumbnails or reduced images (W 240 x H 320 dots). Some Super Mail-compatible Vodafone handsets may not be able to handle W 240 x H 320 images.

1 Capture an image in Camera mode

- In Viewer position, perform Steps 1 - 5 on **P.6-10**.
- With clamshell open or in Self Portrait position, perform Steps 1 - 3 on **P.6-11**.

2 Press **Functions**

3 Select **Attachment** and press

4 Select **Attach Thumbnail** or **Attach 240 x 320** and press

Image is saved to Camera folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- To send images without saving to Camera folder, see  **P.6-7** "Save & Send Image."
- 2-Touch Mail List: see **P.6-36**

5 Complete other fields and send Super Mail (see Step 2 and onwards on **P.3-3 - 3-5**)

Tip Make sure that the recipient's handset is able to receive attachments. For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.17-21**).

Video Clips

Send Movie Sha-mail files via Super Mail.

- To attach video files saved in Data Folder, see **P.12-9**.
- Some Super Mail-compatible Vodafone handsets may not be able to handle attached video.

1 Record video in Movie Sha-mail mode

- Perform Steps 1 - 6- on **P.6-20 - 6-21**.

2 Before saving, press **Sha-mail**

Video is saved to Data Folder and Super Mail Composition window opens with the image attached.

- To send images without saving to Data Folder, see  **P.6-7** "Save & Send Image."
- 2-Touch Mail List: see **P.6-36**

3 Complete other fields and send Super Mail (see Step 2 and onward on **P.3-3**)

- Note**
- Send video clips to Super Mail-compatible Vodafone handsets.
 - Only MPEG-4 compatible Vodafone handsets support Movie Sha-mail files.

- Tip**
- To send Motion Camera files, clip portions (see **P.6-31**) and send to MPEG-4 compatible Vodafone handsets.
 - For information about Mail service and compatibility with other handset models, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.17-21**).

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select Camera mode images and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via Web or Super Mail.
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient during operation, a warning message appears. Delete files and try again.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

Selecting Images & Prints

To specify the same number of copies for all DCF images on Memory Card, see **P.6-40**.

Index Menu ► *Memory Card* ► *Specify DPOF Prints*

1 Select a folder and press

Thumbnails appear.

2 Use to select an image and press **Copies**

3 Enter a number of copies to print (01 - 99) and press

- To cancel, enter **00** and press .

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images

5 Press **Set**

6 Press **Set**

Note

- Print settings made on other devices cannot be changed on handset.
- Print settings on handset replace those made on other devices.
- Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
- Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
- If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Cancel All (see below) and start over with settings.

Print Settings

Number of Copies

Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM*

Select **1** *Number of Copies* ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Enter a number (00 - 99) ▶ Press **OK**

To cancel all print settings, select **2** *Cancel All* ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **1** *Ok* ▶ Press **OK**

Add Date

Add dates to prints

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM* ▶ *Add Date*

Choose **1** *On* (add date) or **2** *Off* (no date) ▶ Press **OK**

Index Print

Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails)

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM* ▶ *Index Print*

Choose **1** *On* (create Index Print) or **2** *Off* ▶ Press **OK**

Check Settings

View current print settings

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SpecifyDPOF Prints* ▶ *DCIM*

Select **5** *Check Settings* ▶ Press **OK**

Postcard & Calendar

Add text or calendar mask to Camera mode images to create original Postcards or Calendars.

- Created Postcard/Calendar images are saved to Camera folder as new files.
- Postcard images are compressed when created and the quality may change.

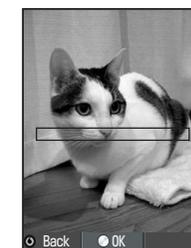
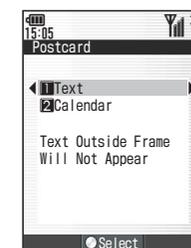
Postcard

Index Menu ▶ *Camera* ▶ *Camera Files* ▶ *Camera Images* ▶ *100IMAGE*

- Select an image and press **OK****
 - Alternatively, select an image and press **Menu**. Skip ahead to Step 3.
 - Press **OK** to rotate images 90 degrees clockwise.
- Press **Menu**
- Select *Postcard* and press **OK**
- Select **1** *Text* and press **OK**
- Enter text and press **OK**
 - Enter up to 200 single-byte alphanumeric (up to five lines are available).
 - Animated Pictographs stay still in Postcard images.
- Select a color combination and press **OK**
 - To not to outline text with the latter color, follow these steps first: Select **0** *Border* ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press **OK**
- Select a size and press **OK**

A rectangle appears indicating the location of text.
- Use **Left/Right** to move the rectangle to target location and press **OK**

Text appears for confirmation.
- Press **OK**
- Select **1** *Handset* or **2** *Memory Card* and press **OK**

**Tip**

Postcard images are saved with thumbnails (see P.6-9).

Calendar

Index Menu ▶ Camera ▶ Camera Files ▶ Camera Images ▶ 100IMAGE

- 1** Select an image and press  
- Alternatively, select an image and press  **Menu**. Skip ahead to Step 3.
 - Press  to rotate images 90 degrees clockwise.

- 2** Press  **Menu**

- 3** Select **Postcard** and press 

- 4** Select  **Calendar** and press 

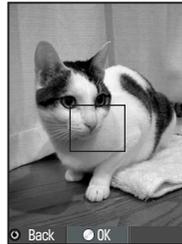
- 5** Select  **Month (Small)** or  **2-Month** and press 
- Current month appears.

- 6** Enter month and press 
- A rectangle appears indicating the location of calendar mask.

- 7** Use  to move the rectangle to target location and press 
- Calendar mask appears for confirmation.

- 8** Press 

- 9** Select  **Handset** or  **Memory Card** and press 

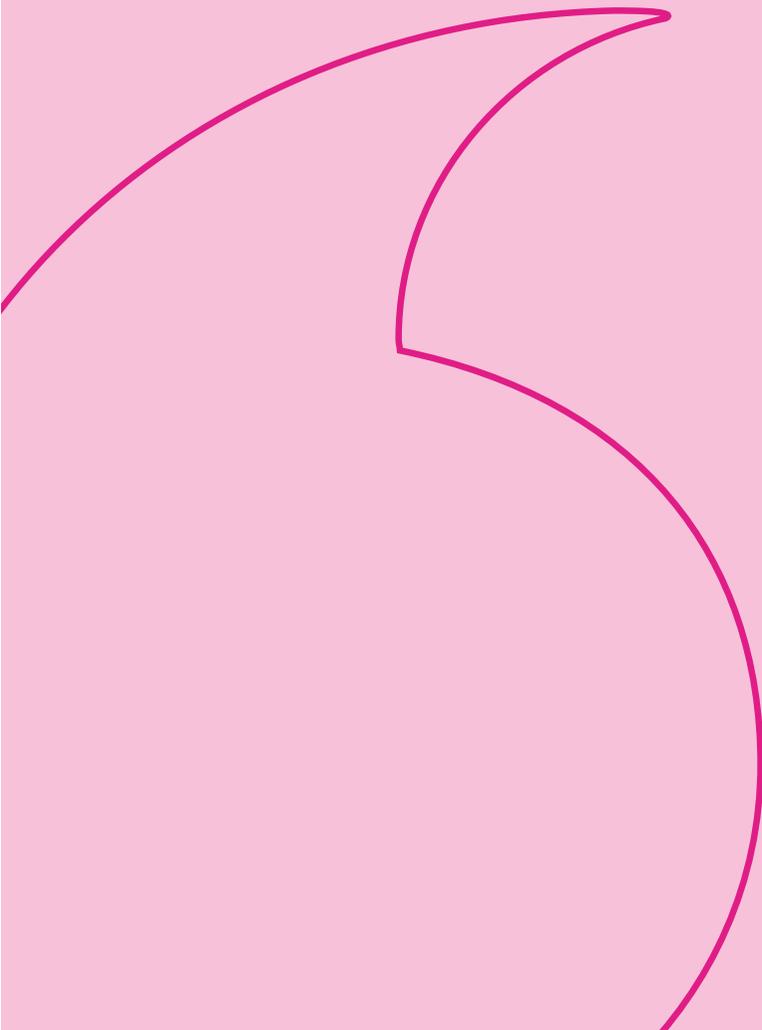


Tip

- Change color for days of the week in Set Color (see **P.7-4**).
- Calendar images are saved with thumbnails (see **P.6-9**).

6

Mobile Camera



Display

Wallpaper

Use Wallpaper to set an image or animation to appear in Standby. Choose from preset images, images captured with mobile camera, and images or animation obtained via Web or Super Mail.

- Select **Original** to set up to 4 images at one time. When multiple images are selected, Wallpaper changes every 2 hours (the interval is adjustable).
- Some images may not be used.
- Wallpaper is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 2** ▶ **Display Settings** ▶ **Wallpaper**

1 Preset Images

- 1 Select **1 Preset Images** and press ●
- 2 Select an image and press ●

Original Images

- 1 Select **2 Original** and press ●
 - To change the interval between images, press **Menu** ▶ Select **3 Interval Setting** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter time (01 - 24 hours) ▶ Press ●
- 2 Select **1** and press ●
 - To delete an existing entry, select a number ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **2 Delete** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press ● (Delete **2** to **4** first to delete **1**.)
- 3 Select an image from Data Folder (see P.12-8) and press ●

The following display options appear. Options do not appear for some images, depending on size. (In this case, skip ahead to Step **5**.)
- 4 Select an option and press ●

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Centered | Image appears at the center in its original size |
| Tile | Duplicates of the image are arranged like tiles over Display |
| Full Screen | Image is enlarged to cover the full display area |
| Enlarge Display | Image is enlarged until the width or height reaches the edges of Display |

- 5 Press ●

Existing image is replaced. (Images not saved to Data Folder are deleted.)

 - To save more images, repeat Steps **2** - **5**. (In Step **2**, select from **2** to **4**.)
- 6 Press ● **Set** to end

Canceling

- 1 Choose **4 Off** and press ●

Wallpaper & Custom Screen

- When Wallpaper is set while Custom Screen is active, Wallpaper takes priority over Custom Screen Wallpaper. (Custom Screen itself remains active.)
To revert to Custom Screen Wallpaper, follow these steps in Step 1 on P.7-2.
Select **3 Custom Screens** ▶ Press ● twice

- Tip**
- Even if Wallpaper is not set, it is automatically activated when an image from Vodafone live! or Data Folder is saved as Wallpaper.
 - When a V-Application is set for Standby, Wallpaper may not appear.
 - Using Wallpaper shortens Battery Time. Using animation or multiple images consumes more handset power.
 - Wallpaper does not appear when Calendar **Large Stamp** or **Schedule & Stamps** appears in Standby (see P.7-4).
 - Animation may stop after 15 seconds of inactivity. Calendar (**Month (Large)** - **6-Month**) does not appear during animation (see P.7-4).

Clock & Calendar

Choose a Clock type and layout or use Calendar for Standby.

Clock Display

Clock Display is **Large 1** by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **Clock Display**

- 1 Select from **1 Large 1** to **4 Small 2** and press ●
 - To hide Clock, choose **3 Off** ▶ Press ●

- Tip** When **3 Off** is set, Calendar (see P.7-4) is also hidden.

Calendar

Select from seven Calendars: Month (**Large Stamp**, **Schedule & Stamps**, **Large** and **Small**), 2-Month, 4-Month and 6-Month.

- Select **Large Stamp** to show stamps on Large Calendar. Select **Schedule & Stamps** to show Schedule as well as stamps.
- For **Month (Small)** and **2-Month**, select a display position.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **Clock Display**

- 1 Select **5** **Calendar** and press **⏏**
 ▶ To hide Calendar, choose **6** **Off** ▶ Press **⏏**

Tip When **6** **Off** is set, Clock (see P.7-3) is also hidden.

- 2 Select from **1** **Large Stamp** to **7** **6-Month** and press **⏏**
 ▶ For **4** **Month (Small)** and **5** **2-Month**, select a display position ▶ Press **⏏**
 ▶ To customize colors of the days of the week, select **8** **Set Color** ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Select a day ▶ Press **⏏** ▶ Select a color ▶ Press **⏏**

Calendar Contents



- Current Date**
 - Highlighted
- Scheduled Date**
 - Underlined, except when stamp appears (see P.15-13 for more about Schedule)
- Stamp (see P.15-14)**

Schedule & Stamps

- Press **⏏** once to open the previous month, and press **⏏** once to open the next month. Use **⏏** to toggle between months. (In 2-Month Calendar, display changes by one month at a time. In 4-Month and 6-Month Calendars, display changes by two months at a time.) Press **⏏** to return to the current month.
- Press **⏏** to hide Calendar temporarily. While Calendar is hidden, press **⏏** to open User Shortcut or **⏏** to open Call History. (Press **⏏** again to show Calendar.)

- Tip**
- Calendar appears on Wallpaper. However, Wallpaper does not appear when Calendar is **Large Stamp** or **Schedule & Stamps**.
 - Calendar does not appear while a Wallpaper animation is active.
 - When a V-Application is set for Standby, Calendar may not appear.

Display Images

Select images to use them for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows. Use images captured with mobile camera or received via Web or Super Mail. Display Images is **Off** for all items by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 2** ▶ **Display Settings** ▶ **Display Images**

- 1 Select an item and press **⏏**
- 2 Select **1** **Fixed Graphic 1**, **2** **Fixed Graphic 2** or **3** **Original** and press **⏏**
 - For **1** **Fixed Graphic 1** and **2** **Fixed Graphic 2**, skip ahead to Step 5.
 - ▶ To cancel Display Images, choose **5** **Off** and press **⏏**. (Omit the next steps.)
 - ▶ When Original image is already saved, press **⏏** **Change** to use other image.
- 3 Select an image from Data Folder (see P.12-8) and press **⏏**
 Image appears with a rectangle indicating display size (see below).

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Power On | W 240 x H 260 dots | Incoming Call | W 240 x H 80 dots |
| Power Off | W 240 x H 260 dots | Alarm | W 240 x H 100 dots |

- Unavailable images do not appear. E-Animation and MNG files cannot be used for **3** **Incoming Call** and **4** **Alarm**.

- 4 Use **⏏** to specify display area
 - Display area may not be specified depending on image size.
 - ▶ Press **⏏** to select another image ▶ Start over from Step 3
- 5 Press **⏏**
 - Existing Original image is replaced. (Images not saved to Data Folder are deleted.)

Display Images & Custom Screen

- When Display Images are set while Custom Screen is active, Display Images take priority over Custom Screen Display Images. (Custom Screen itself remains active.) To revert to Custom Screen Display Images, follow these steps in Step 1.
 Select **4** **Custom Screens** ▶ Press **⏏** twice

- Note**
- Picture Call/Mail setting takes priority over Display Images when receiving calls (with caller ID) from callers with Picture Call/Mail set while **3** **Incoming Call** is **3** **Original**.
 - Ring Tone with animation takes priority over Display Images.

Index Menu Display

Select 2D or 3D appearance for Index Menu and Handy Features menu.

- Choose a background from images captured with mobile camera or obtained via Web or Super Mail, and change or hide icons to customize menu appearance.
- **3D-1** is set by default.

Preset Patterns

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Index Menu Display*

- 1 Select **1**3D-1, **2**3D-2 or **3**2D and press ●

Original Patterns

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Index Menu Display*

- 1 Select **4**Original and press ●
- 2 Select **1**Index Menu or **2**Handy Menu and press ●
- 3 Select **1**Menu Backgrounds, **2**Menu Item Icons or **3**Menu Item Names and press ●

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Menu Backgrounds | Change or show/hide menu background |
| Menu Item Icons | Change or show/hide menu icons |
| Menu Item Names | Show/hide icon names |

4 Menu Backgrounds

- 1 Select **1**Preset Background or **2**Data Folder and press ●
 - For **1**Preset Background, proceed to Step 5.
 - To hide menu background, choose **3**Off ▶ Press ● ▶ Proceed to Step 5
- 2 Select an image from Data Folder (see P.12-8) and press ●
 - To change the image, press ⌂ Change ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ●
- 3 Press ●

Menu Item Icons

- 1 Select **1**Style 1 Icons or **2**Style 2 Icons and press ●
 - To hide menu icons, choose **3**Off ▶ Press ● ▶ Proceed to Step 5

Menu Item Names

- 1 Choose **1**On or **2**Off and press ●

- 5 Press ●
 - For more settings, repeat Steps 3 - 5.

- 6 Press ⌂ **Set**

Index Menu Display & Custom Screen

- When Index Menu Display is set while Custom Screen is active, Index Menu Display takes priority over Custom Screen Index Menu Display. (Custom Screen itself remains active.)
To revert to Custom Screen Index Menu Display, follow these steps in Step 1 on P.7-6.
Select **5**Custom Screens ▶ Press ● twice

Fonts

Change the size, weight and style of handset fonts.

- Change font size for menus and lists, text entry, mail messages and Web. They share the same font weight and style.
- Kanji fonts are not affected by this setting.
- **Standard** is set for size, weight and style by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Font Settings*

- 1 **Font Size**
 - 1 Select **1**Font Size and press ●
 - 2 Select from **1**Menus & Lists to **4**Web Menus & Text and press ●
 - 3 Select a size and press ●

Font Weight

- 1 Select **2**Font Weight and press ●
- 2 Select from **1**Thin to **4**Bold and press ●

Font Style

- 1 Select **3**Font Style and press ●
- 2 Select **1**Standard or **2**Pop and press ●

Activating Large Font Mode

- In Standby, press ⌂ for 1+ seconds.
- Font size is set as follows. (Weight and style remain the same.)

| | | | |
|--------------------|-------|-------------------|------|
| Menus & Lists | Large | Mail Message Text | Mega |
| Text Entry Windows | Large | Web Menus & Text | Mega |

- To cancel, press ⌂ for 1+ seconds in Standby.
 - Font Size settings, except those changed in Large Font Mode, return to previous state.
 - Large Font Mode is canceled if font size is changed for all the items.

Changing Font Size during Text Entry

- In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Select *Font Size* → Press → Select **1 Tiny**, **2 Standard** or **3 Large** → Press
 - The setting remains even after exiting text entry.

- Note**
- Fonts used in V-Applications, E-Animation files, SMAF files, etc. are fixed.
 - Font style of E-Books are fixed.

- Tip**
- V501SH employs LC Fonts for easing viewing of handset menus and messages. LC Font/LC FONT, as well as the LC logo are all registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Custom Screens

Basics

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, Ring Tones and more, all at the same time.

- Download Custom Screens via the Internet using a PC, or from **カスタムスクリーンギャラリー** (Custom Screen Gallery) V-Application via Web using the handset. Supplied Memory Card contains both free and fee-based Custom Screens.
- To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen Keys to handset (see P.7-9). Some Custom Screen Keys have an expiry date.
- Setting Procedure

Download a Custom Screen and save it to a Memory Card (see P.7-9)

- When using a PC, save downloaded Custom Screen to a Memory Card, then insert it into handset (see P.11-3).

For fee-based Custom Screen, purchase a Custom Screen Key via Web (see P.7-9)

Install Custom Screen on handset (see P.7-10)

- Note**
- Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date, etc.) on Custom Screen Key download page.

- Tip**
- Disney Retro Summer (preloaded Custom Screen) can be set without a Key.

Downloading Custom Screens (Requires Japanese)

Download Custom Screens via the Internet using a PC, or from **カスタムスクリーンギャラリー** (Custom Screen Gallery) V-Application via Web using the handset. Save downloaded Custom Screens to a Memory Card formatted for V501SH.

1 Download a Custom Screen

- Read through information on the site.

2 Save downloaded Custom Screen to Memory Card

- When using a PC, download a Custom Screen to the following directory. Do not change file name, extension, etc.
 - PRIVATE/SDJPHONE/SH_フォルダ / カスタムスクリーン

Purchasing Custom Screen Keys

Insert Memory Card containing Custom Screen into handset (see P.11-3), and follow the steps below to download a fee-based Custom Screen Key.

- Do not remove Memory Card during download.
- Custom Screen Keys are downloaded via Web. Make sure signal is strong.
- For information (price, expiry date, etc.), refer to the source site.

Index Menu ▶ Handy (☺)

1 Select *Custom Screen* and press

Available Custom Screens appear.

- Types of Custom Screens and their icons:

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Fee-based Custom Screens | : (Key Download Complete) |
| | : (Key Download Incomplete) |
| Free Custom Screens | |

- When the inserted Memory Card contains fee-based Custom Screens for which corresponding Custom Screen Key has been downloaded, appears next to ; if it does not, appears next to , and the Custom Screen cannot be installed. If appears next to , download Key to install Custom Screen.

- To open properties, select a Custom Screen → Press **Menu** → Select *Property* → Press

2 Select a Custom Screen for which to download the Key and press ●

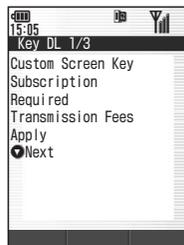
- Select one with .

3 Press Ⓞ **twice to open Key DL 3/3**

4 Press ● **Yes**

Handset connects to the Network and Custom Screen Key download page opens.

- Custom Screen Key download page contains the following information:
 - Custom Screen Key price
 - Payment method
 - Terms of service
 - Link to customer inquiry service
- To cancel, press Ⓞ **No**.



5 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following online instructions

6 After download, choose **Yes** **and press** ●

Standby returns with Custom Screen set.

Custom Screen Setup

Follow the steps below to activate free or purchased Custom Screen.

- Do not press Ⓞ during Custom Screen setup (wait until Standby returns after Step 3 below). Setup may be interrupted and Custom Screen may not apply to some elements.
- Insert Memory Card containing Custom Screen into handset (see P.11-3).
Disney Retro Summer (preloaded Custom Screen) can be set without Memory Card.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (Ⓞ)

1 Select Custom Screen and press ●

Available Custom Screens appear (see P.7-9).

- To cancel the current Custom Screen, select it → Press Ⓞ **Menu** → Select **Cancel Screen** → Press ● → Choose **Yes** → Press ●

- For a brief description/preview of a Custom Screen, select it → Press Ⓞ **Menu** → Select **Preview** → Press ●
 - Press Ⓞ **Back** to return.
 - To set the Custom Screen, press ● in Preview → Skip ahead to Step 3

2 Select a Custom Screen and press ●

- Select one with  or .

3 Choose **Yes** **and press** ●

Standby returns with Custom Screen set.

Expired Custom Screen

■ If the active Custom Screen expires, a confirmation appears in Standby or Information Menu, and Custom Screen is canceled automatically.

Tip Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

Delete Delete Custom Screen or Custom Screen Key

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (Ⓞ) → *Custom Screen*

Select a Custom Screen → Press Ⓞ **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press ● → Select **Content Only, Key Only or Content & Key Both** → Press ● → Choose **Yes** → Press ●

- Select **Content & Key Both** to delete the Custom Screen and corresponding Custom Screen Key.

Open Link Access Custom Screen source sites

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (Ⓞ) → *Custom Screen*

Select a Custom Screen → Press Ⓞ **Menu** → Select **Open Link** → Press ●

Display Patterns

| Item | Description | Default |
|---------------------------|---|----------------|
| Standby Indicators | Show or hide indicators in Standby while Wallpaper is set | On |
| Battery Level | Select from five icons | Icon 1 |
| Signal Strength | Select from five icons | Icon 1 |
| Menu Background | Select from nine background patterns for menus, lists, etc. | Background 1 |
| Frames | Select from five frame patterns for menus | Menu Frame 1 |
| Menu Design | Select from five number key patterns for menu items | Menu Design 1 |
| Cursor | Select from five cursor patterns for highlighted menu items | Cursor 1 |
| Guide Keys | Select from five Soft Key patterns | Pattern 1 |
| Title/Status Bars | Select from eight color schemes | Color Scheme 1 |
| Floating Windows | Select from eight patterns for error messages, etc. | Pattern 1 |
| Pull Up Menus | Select from eight patterns for Menu | Pattern 1 |

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Patterns*

- 1 Select an item and press ●
- 2 Select an option and press ●
 - For other settings, repeat Steps 1 - 2.

Display Patterns & Custom Screen

- When Display Patterns are set while Custom Screen is active, Display Patterns take priority over Custom Screen Display Patterns. (Custom Screen itself remains active.) To revert to Custom Screen Display Patterns, follow these steps in Step 2.

Select **Custom Screens** ▶ Press ●

- Settings for *Title/Status Bars*, *Floating Windows* and *Pull Up Menus* remain.

Light Settings

Activate or deactivate Backlight and Keypad Light. Adjust Active Time and Brightness.

- Specify Active Hours to activate lights for a set period of time each day. (Set Clock first. See P.1-28.)
- Backlight and Keypad Light are **On** (15 seconds) by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Light Settings*

1 Backlight

- 1 Select **1 Backlight** and press ●

Keypad Light

- 1 Select **2 Keypad Light** and press ●

2 Changing Active Time

- 1 Choose **1 On** and press ●
- 2 Enter Active Time (01 - 99 seconds) and press ●

Active Time is set.

Backlight Off

- 1 Choose **2 Off** and press ●

- Backlight remains on while using mobile camera even if **Off** is set.

Specifying Active Hours and Active Time

- 1 Select **3 Active Hours** and press ●
- 2 Enter Start Time and End Time, then press ●
- 3 Enter Active Time (01 - 99 seconds) and press ●

Backlight and Keypad Light are available between Start Time and End Time.

Tip

- Active Hours is ignored if Clock is not set.
- Keypad Light does not illuminate when Display is in Viewer position.
- Shorten Active Time to lengthen Battery Time.

Brightness Select Display Brightness from four levels

Default Level 4

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Light Settings* ▶ *Brightness*

Press ● (Brighter) or ● (Darker) ▶ Press ●

In-Car Backlight Set Backlight/Keypad Light to illuminate while using In-Car Charger

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Light Settings* ▶ *In-Car Backlight*

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ●

■ To cancel In-Car Backlight, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

Sub Display Settings

Sub Display On/Off Activate or deactivate Sub Display

Default On

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Sub Display* ▶ *Sub Display On/Off*

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

Backlight Settings Specify Active Hours and Active Time

■ Available when Sub Display is active.

Default Active Time: 15 seconds, Active Hours: 17:00 - 6:00

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Sub Display* ▶ *Backlight Settings*

Active Time

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Active Time (01 - 99 seconds) ▶ Press ●

■ To disable Backlight, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

- After handset is closed (clamshell closed), Sub Display Backlight illuminates for three seconds regardless of Active Time, except when set to **1 second** or **2 seconds**.

Active Hours

Select **3 Active Hours** ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Start Time and End Time ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Active Time (01 - 99 seconds) ▶ Press ●

- Backlight is available between Start Time and End Time.

Adjust Contrast Adjust Sub Display Contrast from nine levels

■ Available when Sub Display is active.
Default Contrast 5

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Sub Display ▶ Adjust Contrast

Press **1** (Darker) or **2** (Lighter) ▶ Press **3**

Recipient Display Show or hide caller's number or name on Sub Display

■ Available when Sub Display is active.
Default On

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ Sub Display ▶ Recipient Display

Choose **1** On or **2** Off ▶ Press **3**

Other Display Settings

Language Switch handset user interface between Japanese and English

Default 日本語 (Japanese)

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 1 ▶ 言語選択

Select **1** 日本語 or **2** English ▶ Press **3**

Power On Message Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ Display Settings ▶ Power On Message

Choose **1** On ▶ Press **3** ▶ Enter text ▶ Press **3**

- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.
- To cancel, choose **2** Off ▶ Press **3**

Viewer Display Manually or automatically rotate vertical view 180 degrees in Viewer position

■ Read the precautions on P.1-14 before using Viewer Display.
Default Orientation 1

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ Display Settings ▶ Viewer Display

Select **1** Orientation 1, **2** Orientation 2 or **3** Full Auto ▶ Press **3**

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Orientation 1 | Same as view for clamshell open |
| Orientation 2 | Rotate 180 degrees from view for clamshell open |
| Full Auto | View rotates 180 degrees automatically according to which way handset is held |

- View for clamshell open remains unchanged even after setting.

Note

- Full Auto may not work correctly when:
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near or inside elevators
 - Near magnetized objects (see P.1-14)
- **2** Orientation 2 and **3** Full Auto are disabled while mobile camera is active, while playing video, while Instant Display appears after calls, when receiving or placing calls and during calls.
- When set to **Full Auto**, Viewer Setting (see P.15-23) returns to default.

Dialing Display Set phone number to appear in 2D or 3D when dialing

Default 2D Dialing Display

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ Display Settings ▶ Dialing Display

Select **1** 3D Dialing Display or **2** 2D Dialing Display ▶ Press **3**

Standby Animation Set animation to appear in menu backgrounds for Index Menu items

Default On

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ Animation ▶ Standby Animation

Choose **1** On or **2** Off ▶ Press **3**

- Animation may not appear when Memory Card is in use.

Screen Animation

Animation appears on Display when left open for a specified period of inactivity

Default: Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Animation* ▶ *Screen Animation*

Preset Animation

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 Animation** ▶ Press ● ▶
Select **1 Hoop-de-do** or **2 Box Man Walking** ▶ Press ● twice

Original Animation

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1 Animation** ▶ Press ● ▶
Select **3 Original** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ● twice

Period of Inactivity

Choose **1 On** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **2 Start Time** ▶ Press ● ▶
Select a period ▶ Press ●

Canceling

Choose **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

- Only E-Animation files (.nva) are available.
- While animation appears, press any key to stop it.
- Animation may not appear depending on handset status (in Standby, mobile camera active, etc.).

Tip

Using Screen Animation shortens Battery Time.

**Vodafone live!
Animation**

Show or hide animations when sending/receiving mail or receiving Web/Station information. Set for each occasion separately.

Default: On (All)

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Animation* ▶ *Vodafone live!*

Select from **1 Send Mail** to **5 Station Info** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose
1 On or **2 Off** ▶ Press ●

- Custom Screen animation takes priority over preset Vodafone live! animation.



Sounds & Related Functions

Call Functions

Use Call Functions menu items to adjust Ring Tones, Vibration, Mobile or Small Light, and Ring Time settings. See below for the default settings.

| | Incoming Call | Incoming Mail | Incoming Web | New Station Info | Received Complete | Confirm Delivery |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Ring Tone | Pattern 1 | Mail | Web | Station | Pattern 5 | Report |
| Ring Tone Level | Level 5 | Level 5 | Level 5 | Level 5 | Level 1 | Level 5 |
| Vibration | Off | | | | | |
| Vibration Pattern | Vibration 1 | Vibration 2 | Vibration 3 | Vibration 4 | Vibration 5 | Vibration 2 |
| LED Indicator | Mobile Light | Small Light | | | | |
| Mobile Light Color Pattern | Muscat | N/A | | | | |
| Mobile/Small Light Blink Patterns | Pattern 1 | | | | | |
| Ring Time | N/A | 10 Seconds | 10 Seconds | 10 Seconds | 1 Second | 10 Seconds |

- **Received Complete** settings apply after you:
 - Retrieve complete messages or acquire Unretrieved List
 - Delete Server Mail
 - Manually update Station Main List or Location Info
- **Confirm Delivery** settings apply to Delivery Reports.
- Settings remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Manner Mode settings (see P.3-4) take priority over.

Tip V-Application set for Standby that also responds to incoming communications may take priority over Ring Tone and Vibration Pattern set in Call Functions.

Ring Tone Level

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ Ring Tone Level

- Use to adjust level**
 - **Level 5** is maximum. When **Rising Tone** is set, volume increases in the order of Level 1 - Level 5 every three seconds.
 - To check volume, press **Play**.
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
- Press**

When Ring Tone Level is **Rising Tone** for Incoming Call, appears in Standby, and appears for **Silent**.

Ring Tone

Select from preset patterns, preset melodies, Original Ring Tones, Chaku-Uta, Voice files, etc. Check preset melodies on handset.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ Ring Tone

- Preset Patterns/Melodies**
 - 1 Select **1 Preset Tones** or **2 Preset Melodies** and press

Melodies in Data Folder

- 1 Select **3 Melody Folder** and press
 - **涙そうそう** (Nada Soso) is preset on handset.

License: T-0560014

Chaku-Uta in Data Folder

- 1 Select **4 Audio Folder** and press

Voice Files in Voice Folder

- 1 Select **5 Voice Folder** and press



- Files on Memory Card are not supported.
- Chaku-Uta and Voice files cannot be used for Received Complete.
- Files cannot be selected if the file name exceeds 24 single-byte characters.
- Some files may not be used.

- Select a tone or melody**

- To play preset tones or melodies, press **Play**.
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
- To play files in Data Folder or Voice Folder, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Play** ▶ Press
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
 - When Manner Mode is active or Ring Tone Level is **Silent** or **Rising Tone**, sounds play at **Level 1**.



For some preset melodies, handset vibrates to the melody when Vibration (see P.8-4) is set to **SMAF Link**.

- Press**

Ring Tone & Custom Screen

- When Ring Tones are set while Custom Screen is active, Ring Tones take priority over Custom Screen Ring Tones. (Custom Screen itself remains active.)
To revert to Custom Screen Ring Tones, follow these steps in Step 1.
Select **3 Custom Screens** ▶ Press

Tip If source file in Data Folder or Voice Folder is deleted or renamed, Ring Tone returns to default.

Handset Vibration

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ Vibration

1 Choose **1 On** and press **1**

To cancel, choose **2 Off** ▶ Press **1**

To link to SMAF files, select **3 SMAF Link** ▶ Press **1**

Tip

- When vibration is **On** for Incoming Call, **1** appears in green in Standby. It appears in yellow for **SMAF Link**.
- Select **3 SMAF Link** to allow compatible SMAF files to control Vibration.

Note

- Disable vibration when charging.
- Manner Mode settings (see **P.3-4**) take priority over.

Vibration Pattern

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ Vibration Pattern

1 Select a pattern and press **1**

| Vibration Pattern | Operation (repeats) |
|--------------------|--|
| Vibration 1 | Vibrate (0.75 Sec) → Stop (0.75 Sec) |
| Vibration 2 | Vibrate (0.25 Sec) → Stop (0.25 Sec) → Vibrate (0.25 Sec) → Stop (1 Sec) |
| Vibration 3 | Vibrate (1 Sec) → Stop (2 Sec) |
| Vibration 4 | Vibrate (1 Sec) → Stop (1 Sec) → Vibrate (1 Sec) → Stop (2 Sec) |
| Vibration 5 | Vibrate (0.5 Sec) → Stop (0.5 Sec) → Vibrate (0.5 Sec) → Stop (1 Sec) |

Mobile/Small Light

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions ▶ Select an item ▶ LED Indicator

1 Mobile Light

1 Select **1 Mobile Light** and press **1**

2 Select a color and press **1**

Small Light

1 Select **2 Small Light** and press **1**

- Small Light color (green) cannot be changed.

Disable Both

1 Choose **3 Off** and press **1**

- Omit the next steps.

2 Select a blink pattern

To check patterns, press **1** **Light**.

Press **1** **Stop** to stop.

| Pattern | Operation (repeats) |
|------------------|--|
| Pattern 1 | On (0.75 Sec) → Off (0.75 Sec) |
| Pattern 2 | On (0.25 Sec) → Off (0.25 Sec) → On (0.25 Sec) → Off (1 Sec) |
| Pattern 3 | On (1 Sec) → Off (2 Sec) |
| Pattern 4 | On (1 Sec) → Off (1 Sec) → On (1 Sec) → Off (2 Sec) |
| Pattern 5 | On (0.5 Sec) → Off (0.5 Sec) → On (0.5 Sec) → Off (1 Sec) |
| SMAF Link | Flashes according to SMAF files (Mobile Light only) |

Tip

Select **3 SMAF Link** to allow compatible SMAF files to control Mobile Light.

3 Press **1**

Ring Time

Ring Time settings are not available for Incoming Call.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Sounds ▶ Call Functions

1 Select an item other than **1 Incoming Call** and press **1**

2 Select **2 Ring Time** and press **1**

3 Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) and press **1**

Sound Effects

Adjust sounds and volume for handset operations.

| | Keypad Sound | Error Tone | Power On | Power Off | Sound Volume | Set LED to Sound | MC Shortcut Tone |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|------------------|------------------|
| Setting | On | On | On | On | Level 5 | Small Light | On |
| Sound | Push Tones | Error Tone | Opening 1 | Ending 1 | | | N/A |
| Volume | Level Medium | Level Medium | Level 5 | Level 5 | | | Level Medium |
| Time | 0.05 Seconds | 0.5 Seconds | 3 Seconds | 3 Seconds | | | N/A |

- **Power On** is when turning on handset, and **Power Off** is when turning off.
- **Sound Volume** applies to sounds in Data Folder, mail attachments, Web, etc.
- **Set LED to Sound** is for flashing Mobile or Small Light with sounds (except Chaku-Uta).
- **MC Shortcut Tone** is a recognition tone for MC Shortcut (see P.15-29).
- Settings remain even after handset power is turned off.

Sounds

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Sound Effects*

- 1 Select **1** Keypad Sound, **2** Error Tone, **3** Power On, **4** Power Off or **7** MC Shortcut Tone and press **●**
- 2 Choose **1** On and press **●**
 - To cancel, choose **2** Off ▶ Press **●** (Omit the next steps.)
 - For MC Shortcut Tone, adjust volume with **⏮** ▶ Press **●** (Omit the next steps.)
- 3 Select **1** Sound and press **●**
- 4 **Preset Patterns/Melodies**
 - 1 Select **1** Preset Tones or **2** Preset Melodies and press **●**

Melodies in Data Folder

- 1 Select **3** Melody Folder and press **●**

Note

- Files on Memory Card are not supported.
- Files cannot be selected if the file name exceeds 24 single-byte characters.
- Some files may not be used.

Push Tones (Keypad Sound)

- 1 Select **4** Push Tones and press **●**
Pattern is set (omit the next steps).

5 Select a tone or melody

- To play preset tones or melodies, press **⏮** **Play**.
- Press **⏮** **Stop** to stop.
- To play files in Data Folder, press **⏮** **Menu** ▶ Select **Play** ▶ Press **●**
- Press **⏮** **Stop** to stop.

6 Press **●**

- To adjust Sound Effect volume, select **2** Volume ▶ Press **●** ▶ Use **⏮** to adjust level ▶ Press **●**
- To set Sound Effect duration, select **3** Time ▶ Press **●** ▶ Select time (Keypad Sound/Error Tone) or enter time (Power On/Power Off) ▶ Press **●**

Sound Effects & Custom Screen

- When Sound Effects are set while Custom Screen is active, Sound Effects take priority over Custom Screen Sound Effects. (Custom Screen itself remains active.) To revert to Custom Screen Sound Effects, follow these steps in Step 4 on P.8-6.
Select **4** Custom Screens ▶ Press **●**

Tip

If source file in Data Folder is deleted or renamed, sound pattern returns to default.

Basic Sound Settings

Sound Volume/ Set playback volume
Set LED to Sound Set to flash Mobile or Small Light with sound

Default See P.8-6.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Sound Effects*

Sound Volume

Select **5** Sound Volume ▶ Press **●** ▶ Use **⏮** to adjust level ▶ Press **●**

Light Settings

Select **6** Set LED to Sound ▶ Press **●** ▶ Select **1** Mobile Light, **2** Small Light or **3** Off ▶ Press **●** to complete

- For **1** Mobile Light, then select a color ▶ Press **●**

Tip

Blink pattern for **Set LED to Sound** is fixed to **SMAF Link** for Mobile Light and **Pattern 1** for Small Light.

Original Voice

Record sounds for up to 30 seconds and use as Ring Tones.
When interrupted by incoming transmissions, recording stops and recorded material is lost.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Original Tones** ▶ **Original Voice**

1 Enter title and press

- Enter up to 24 single-byte characters.
- Original Voice files are saved by title by default.

2 Press

Recording starts.

3 Press to stop

- Sound is saved to Voice Folder (フォルダ1).
- When maximum recording time is reached, recording stops automatically and sound is saved to Voice Folder (フォルダ1).

Playing Recorded Sounds

■ After Step 3, select a Voice file → Press ●
 ■ Press ⏪ Back to stop.

Voice Ring Tone

■ To use as Ring Tone, follow these steps after Step 3.
Select a Voice file → Press ⏪ Menu → **Select Incoming Tone** → Press ● →
Select an item → Press ●
 • Voice files cannot be used for *Received Complete*.

Original Ring Tone

Basics

Create melodies to use as Ring Tones, or to send via Super Mail.

- Use up to 95 sounds x 32 chords, 190 sounds x 16 chords, or 380 sounds x 8 chords.
- Original Ring Tones are saved to Data Folder (Melodies). See P.12-3.

Note • Original Ring Tones are saved in SJM format. To send Original Ring Tones to handsets other than Vodafone live! packet-enabled Sharp handsets, convert them to Melody files or SMAF files (see P.3-8).
 • Converted files may not play on recipient handsets.

Window Description

Melody Chord

- : Chord 1, : Chord 2
- : Chord 3... : Chord 32

Tone

Loudness

Pitch

- (Low) ♭ → ♮ → no symbol → ^ → * (High)
- #: Semitone
- @: Rest

Sound

- Indicated by pitch and note

Sound at Cursor

Entered Notes/Rests

Cursor

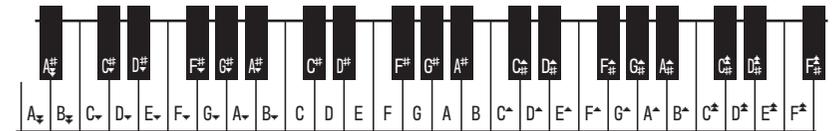
- Move to enter/edit sounds

Duration

- Varies by note or rest
- ³: Triplet, _: Slur

Pitch Range

Use the following scales (range: approximately 4 octaves including semitones).



Notes & Rests

| Note | Rest | Duration | Note | Rest | Duration |
|------|------|--------------------------|------|------|-------------------------|
| | | Whole note/rest | | | Dotted half note/rest |
| | | Sixteenth note/rest | | | Whole note triplet/rest |
| | | Eighth note/rest | | | Sixteenth triplet/rest |
| | | Dotted eighth note/rest | | | Eighth triplet/rest |
| | | Quarter note/rest | | | Quarter triplet/rest |
| | | Dotted quarter note/rest | | | Half note triplet/rest |
| | | Half note/rest | | | |

Tones

Handset contains 128 basic tones and 61 extra tones preset.

- Create tones and save as Instrument Effects (up to 8 types to 3 locations).
- Adjust octave of tones (see P.8-22).

Procedure

1 Enter title

- The entered title will appear when selecting Ring Tone.
- Enter up to 24 single-byte characters.

2 Select tempo

- ♩: Number of quarter notes played per minute

| | | | |
|-------------------|-------|------------------------|-------|
| 1 Fast | ♩=150 | 3 Slightly Slow | ♩=107 |
| 2 Standard | ♩=125 | 4 Slow | ♩=94 |

3 Select number of chords

- Type: **8 Phonetic Chord**, **16 Phonetic Chord** and **32 Phonetic Chord**

4 Enter sounds one by one for melody chord 1 (

- Arrange pitch, octave or duration of each sound, and use semitones and triplets (see P.8-11 - 8-12).
- Press **Play** to play all entered sounds. When you press , sounds are played up to cursor. Adjust playback volume in Sound Volume (see P.8-7). Sounds play at **Level 1** even in Manner Mode.
- To change tone or loudness while creating melodies, press **Menu**.

5 For harmony, enter sounds in other melody chords

(Melody chord 2: , melody chord 3: ...melody chord 32:)

- Press to move to other melody chords.
- Enter sounds in the same way as melody chord 1.

6 Select tone

- **Piano** is set for all melody chords by default.
- Select preset tones or Instrument Effects (see P.8-17) created beforehand.
- Selected tone applies to two melody chords (pairs: 1&17, 2&18, 3&19...16&32).

7 Adjust loudness

- **Strong** is set for all melody chords by default.
- Select **Strong**, **Standard** or **Faint** for each melody chord.

8 Save melody as Original Ring Tone

- To use as Ring Tone, select from Data Folder (see P.8-3).

Entering Sounds

This section describes how to enter a sound.

The same procedure applies to melody chord 1 to 32.

1 Pitch & Rest

Key Assignments:

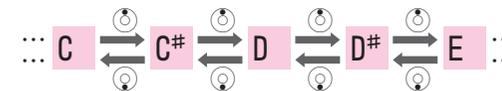
| Do | Re | Mi | Fa | Sol | La | Ti | Rest |
|----|----|----|----|-----|----|----|------|
| | | | | | | | |

<Changing Pitch>

- Press a key once to enter a quarter note. Press the same key repeatedly to adjust the octave.



- Use to change pitch by semitone.

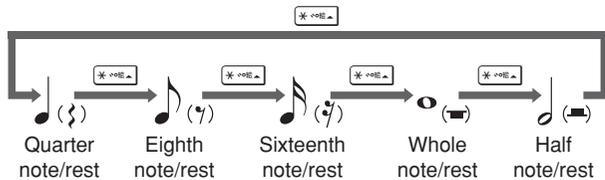


<Entering Rests>

- Press . A quarter rest (with) is entered.

2 Note/Rest Type

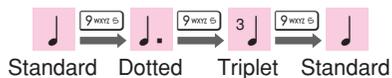
Press or repeatedly to change type.



<Using Dotted Notes or Triplets>

- Enter a note and press .

The dotted version is available for half/quarter/eighth notes and rests.



- Connect 3 triplets as follows:



Note

Melodies may not play properly, or may not attach to Super Mail if contained triplets are not a set of three. Use triplets of similar pitch to avoid failure.

<Using Slurs>

- Enter a note and press . _ appears on the right connecting the note to the next.



A sound is entered.

To enter more, press to move cursor and repeat the same procedure.

- Use to enter the same sound as the one on the left.

Note

- Sounds may not play properly if notes of the same scale/pitch play in some melody chords simultaneously.
- Distortion may occur when multiple melody chords play simultaneously.

Tip

In Manner Mode, Keypad sound is muted.

Creating an Original Ring Tone

Make sure there is enough free memory. When Data Folder is full, delete files and try again (see P.12-45).

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Original Tones* ▶ *New*

1 Enter title and press

- Enter up to 24 single-byte characters.
- Title is also the file name.

2 Select tempo (see P.8-10) and press

3 Select number of chords and press

4 Enter pitch or rest (see P.8-11)

5 Specify note or rest type (see P.8-12)

6 Press to set

Cursor moves right.

7 Repeat Steps 4 - 6 to enter more

- To adjust tone or loudness here, press **Menu** and skip ahead to Step 9 (tone) or 14 (loudness).

■ Press **Play** to play sounds in all melody chords.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

■ To play current melody chord up to cursor, press .

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

■ To move to other melody chords, press (repeatedly).

8 Press when finished

- To save melody without adjusting tone or loudness, skip ahead to Step 19 on P.8-14.

■ To edit entered sounds, select **Edit** ▶ Press ▶ Perform Step 4 on P.8-15

9 Select *Tone* and press

10 Select a melody chord and press

11 Select a genre with and a tone with

- To use Instrument Effects, select *Original (FM)* or *Original (WT)*.

■ To check tones, press **Set**.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

12 Press

- Repeat Steps 10 - 12 for other melody chords.

■ To play melody, press **Play**.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

13 Press **Set**

- Skip ahead to Step 19 when not adjusting loudness.

14 Select *Adjust Loudness* and press

15 Select a melody chord and press

16 Select from 1 *Strong* to 3 *Faint*

- To check loudness, press **Play**.
- Press **Stop** to stop.

17 Press

- Repeat Steps 15 - 17 for other melody chords.
- To play melody, press **Play**.
- Press **Stop** to stop.

18 Press **Set**

19 Select 1 *Save* and press

20 Press

- Melody is saved to Data Folder (Melodies).
- Select other folders or Memory Card to save melodies.



If the same file name already exists, ~**XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

When Calls Arrive

- Data is saved. Continue to create melodies after the call ends.



Although most tones are named after musical instruments, they may sound different. Also, playback volume may vary or distortion may occur depending on the tone/scale.



When you press **Play**, **Cannot play back too many Phonetic chords** may appear, and when you press **Save**, **Cannot save too many Phonetic chords** may appear. Delete melody chords, replace short notes with longer notes, or reduce triplets.

Editing an Original Ring Tone

Make sure there is enough free memory. When Data Folder is full, delete files and try again (see P.12-45).

Index Menu **Functions** **Sounds** **Original Tones** **Data Folder**

1 Select a file and press **Menu**

- Original Ring Tones are marked with .
- To switch to Memory Card, press **Menu** Select **Memory Card** Press

2 Select *Other Edit Functions* and press

3 Select *Edit* and press

- To change tone, see Steps 9 - 13 on P.8-13 - 8-14 (omit the next steps).
- To change loudness, see Steps 14 - 18 on P.8-14 (omit the next steps).

4 Edit title and press

5 Select tempo and press

6 Select number of chords and press

- To edit other melody chords, press .

7 Move cursor to sound

When Changing Number of Chords

- When changing the number of phonetic chords, a warning of possible data loss may appear. To proceed, choose **1 Yes** and press (see table below).
 - To cancel, choose **2 No** Press

| Current Chords | Changed to | Data to be Lost |
|----------------|------------|------------------------|
| 8 | 16 | Sounds after the 191st |
| 8 | 32 | Sounds after the 96th |
| 16 | 32 | Sounds after the 96th |
| 16 | 8 | Melody chords 9 - 16 |
| 32 | 8 | Melody chords 9 - 32 |
| 32 | 16 | Melody chords 17 - 32 |

- Tone may alter when number of chords is changed.

8 Editing Sounds

1 Use to change pitch and switch type with / /

(see P.8-12)

- Keys - are not available for this operation.

Adding Sounds

1 Enter sound

Sound is entered at the cursor position.

- Refer to entry limit (see P.8-9).

Deleting Sounds

1 Press

Sound at the cursor position is deleted.

- To delete all sounds, press for 1+ seconds.

■ To delete sound sequence before or after cursor, press → Select

6 Delete Posterior or **7 Delete Previous** → Press twice

Copy/Cut & Paste Melodies

1 Press **Menu**

2 Select **3 Copy** or **4 Cut** and press

3 Move cursor to the first sound of a portion and press

4 Move cursor to the last sound of the portion and press

Portion disappears when cut.

5 Open a window to paste the melody

- When pasting into other melodies, close the current melody and open another window.

6 Press **Menu**

7 Select **5 Paste** and press

8 Press at target location

9 Press when finished

- To edit tone or loudness, see Steps 9 - 18 on P.8-13 - 8-14.

10 Select **1 Save** and press

11 Select **2 Overwrite** and press

Original Ring Tone is overwritten.

Tip

To save edited melody separately, select **1 New Entry** and press and then select a save location and press . The original melody remains and the edited melody is saved as a new file [appended with ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) automatically].

Deleting an Original Ring Tone

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Original Tones** ▶ **Data Folder**

1 Select a file and press **Menu**

- To switch to Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press

2 Select **Delete** and press

3 Choose **1 Yes** and press

Instrument Effects

Basics

Create original tones for Original Ring Tones and other melodies.

Save up to eight tones per chord type (8/16 Chords, 32 Chords and WT Original Tone).

Procedure

This system, based on FM synthesis, allows you to select **Algorithm** and **Effect Level** and adjust parameters of **Operator** to create Instrument Effects.

- Select and arrange preset tones or Instrument Effects you have already created.
- Play sounds as you arrange tones and check effects of changes.
- Use WT synthesis by selecting WT Original Tone.

1 Select chord

- Type: **8/16 Chords**, **32 Chords** and **WT Original Tone**

2 Select a location to save

3 Enter name

- Name appears when selecting tones.
- Enter up to 12 single-byte characters.

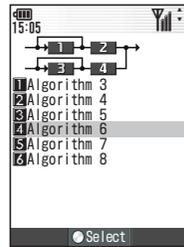
4 Select source tone

- Select from preset tones if this is your first time.



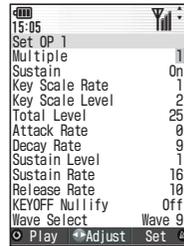
5 Select Algorithm

- Choose from six types for 8/16 Chords, and two types for 32 Chords.
- Algorithm setting is not available for WT Original Tone.



6 Adjust parameters of each Operator (OP)

- There are four types of Operators for 8/16 Chords and two types for 32 Chords.
- Default parameters are the same as those of the source tone.
- Use to select parameter and to adjust.
- Press **Play** to check effects of parameter changes.



7 Set Effect Level, Basic Octave, etc.

8 Save tone (Instrument Effects)

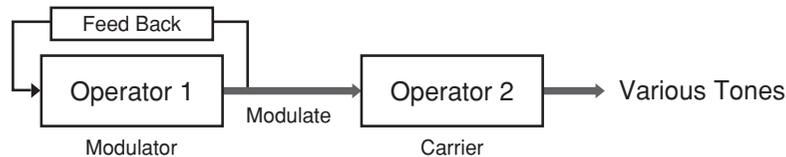
- Select Instrument Effects from tones to use for Original Ring Tone, etc.

WT Synthesis

- WT synthesis is based on recorded waveform data from musical instruments, etc. which are close to original sounds.

FM Synthesis

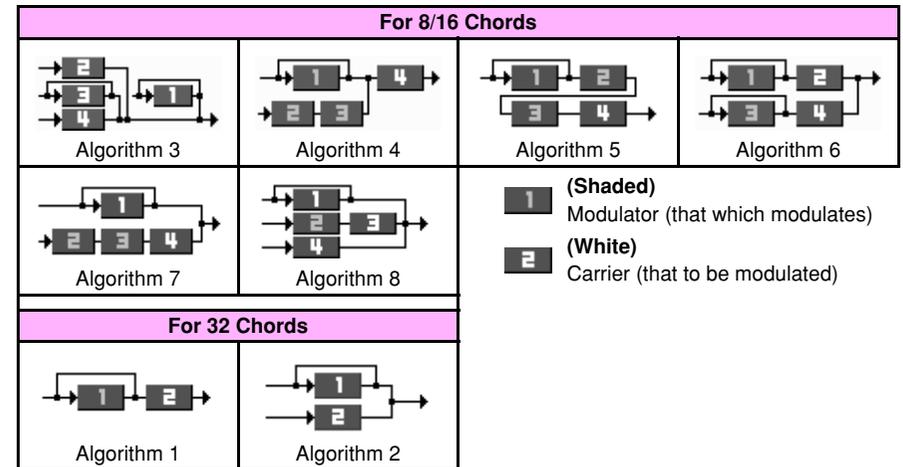
This system synthesizes various tones by generating a sine wave called **Operator**. **Algorithm** is a combination of Operators. Depending on the Algorithm, Operators work either as **Modulator** (that which modulates) or **Carrier** (that to be modulated).



- Adjust a variety of parameters including Multiple and Sustain.
- Some Operators have a parameter called Feed Back for more effects.

Algorithm

Select a combination of Operators from six types (8/16 Chords) or two types (32 Chords).



- 1 (Shaded)**
Modulator (that which modulates)
- 2 (White)**
Carrier (that to be modulated)

- Available Operators vary depending on the combination.
- Algorithm setting is not available for WT Original Tone.

Operator (OP)

See the table for details. Available parameters vary by the number of chords.

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Multiple (13 levels) | Multiple affects tones most. The higher the Carrier level, the higher the pitch. Adjust the Modulator level for a variety of tones. |
| Sustain (On/Off) | When Sustain is set, sound continues after produced. Choose On to provide sustaining effects to tones in Piano, Glockenspiel, etc. |
| Key Scale Rate (two levels) | Set Key Scale Rate high to shorten the rise and fall time. Select 2 to emphasize this effect. |
| Key Scale Level (four levels) | The higher the Key Scale Level, the lower the volume level. Select 0 to disable this effect. |
| Total Level (64 levels) | <p>(1) Carrier The higher the Carrier value, the higher the volume level. Normally set 64 (maximum value), and select smaller values to use tones effectively at low volume for accompaniments, etc.</p> <p>(2) Modulator Increasing Modulator value brightens tones. Select smaller values for softer tones. Normally set between 40 and 64 to enjoy effects of tone changes.</p> |

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Attack Rate (15 levels) | The higher the Attack Rate, the longer sounds take to reach the maximum volume. When using tones with Attack Rate high, use longer notes or select slower tempo. |
| Decay Rate (16 levels) | Lower Decay Rate to shorten the time sounds reach down to Sustain Level |
| Sustain Level (16 levels) | The Sustain Level for a Normal Tone equals the sustained volume. For Step-Down Tones, Sustain Level measures the volume at which Ring Tone begins to decrease. The higher the Sustain Level, the higher the volume. |
| Sustain Rate (16 levels) | The lower the Sustain Rate, the longer the Sustain Level volume is sustained. 16 is Normal Tone, and other levels are Step-Down Tones. |
| Release Rate (16 levels) | The Release Rate for a Normal Tone equals the time from beginning to end of a sound. For Step-Down Tones, Release Rate measures the time from when a sound begins to decrease until it ends completely. The lower the Release Rate, the sooner the sound ends. For sustaining effects, increase Release Rate. |
| KEYOFF Nullify (On/Off) | Choose On to avoid sound skipping of Step-Down Tones including those in DRUM |
| Wave Select (29 types) | Select from 29 waveforms |
| Vibrato (four levels/Off) | Vibrato is a periodic variation in pitch |
| AM Modulation (four levels/Off) | The higher the AM Modulation level, the stronger the tremolo (periodic changes in loudness) |
| Feed Back (eight levels) | Set Feed Back (not available for some Operators) |

Tip When Release Rate is set high for Normal Tones, rests may be ignored in playback.

Additional Settings

| Parameter | Description |
|---|--|
| Effect Level (four levels) | Effect Level affects cycle time of wavering quality in pitch or loudness. Select high level to shorten the cycle. |
| Basic Octave (four levels) | Adjust octave of tones |
| Panpot (31 levels) | Panpot measures the position of sounds, which varies by combination of L (left) and R (right). Sound bias is emphasized as the value difference increases. |
| Sustain (On/Off) | Set On to extend sounds |
| Vibration Level (four levels/Off) | Select higher level for stronger vibrato |

Basic Octave, **Sustain** and **Vibration Level** settings are not available for WT Original Tone.

Creating Instrument Effects

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Instrument Effects*

- 1 Select **1** 8/16 Chords, **2** 32 Chords or **3** WT Original Tone and press **⏵****
If Instrument Effects are already saved and renamed, they appear in Effects list.
- 2 Select a location to save and press **⏵** twice**
• To leave the name unchanged, press **⏵** once and skip ahead to Step 4.
- 3 Enter name and press **⏵****
• Enter up to 12 single-byte characters.
- 4 Select *Base Tone* and press **⏵****
- 5 Select a genre with **⏵** and a tone with **⏵****
■ To check tones, press **⏵** **Play**.
■ Press **⏵** **Stop** to stop.
- 6 Press **⏵****
- 7 Select *Tone* and press **⏵****
• To keep Algorithm unchanged, skip ahead to Step 10.
- 8 Select *Algorithm* and press **⏵****
- 9 Select *Algorithm* and press **⏵****
• To keep each Operator (OP) unchanged, skip ahead to Step 14.
- 10 Select *Operator (OP 1, etc.: see P.8-18)* and press **⏵****
Default parameters are the same as those of the source tone.
- 11 Select a parameter with **⏵** and adjust it with **⏵****
■ For parameter descriptions, see P.8-19 - 8-20.
- 12 Repeat Step 11 to adjust other parameters**
■ Press **⏵** **Play** to check effects of parameter changes.
■ Press **⏵** **Stop** to stop.
- 13 Press **⏵** or **⏵** **Set****
- 14 Select *Effect Level* and press **⏵****
- 15 Select a frequency for tremoro/vibrato and press **⏵****
Confirmation appears.
- 16 Select *Basic Octave* and press **⏵****
- 17 Select a level and press **⏵****

- 18 Select *Panpot* and adjust with
- 19 Select *Sustain* and choose *On* or *Off* with
- 20 Select *Vibration Level* and adjust with
- 21 Press **Set**
- 22 When finished with all settings, press **Set**
- To create more, repeat Steps 2 - 22 on P.8-21 - 8-22.

Other Sound Related Functions

Speaker Phone/ Speaker

Select whether to activate Speaker Phone (for handsfree conversations) or Speaker (to listen only)

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Speaker*

Select **1 Speaker Phone** or **2 Speaker** ▶ Press

▶ To use Earpiece and Microphone for phone conversations, choose **3 Off** ▶ Press

Talk with Speaker

- Before or during calls, press for 1+ seconds.
 - : Speaker Phone is active. : Speaker is active.
 - When Speaker is **3 Off**, use Earpiece and Microphone for phone conversations.
 - To cancel manually during a call, press for 1+ seconds.
- When calls end, speaker talk is canceled.

Note

- Speaker is not available when LCD Remote/Mic, etc. is in use.
- When Speaker Phone is active, ringback tone may not sound. Handsfree conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Keep handset as close as possible when using Speaker Phone.

Tone Octave

Select an octave for each tone from four levels

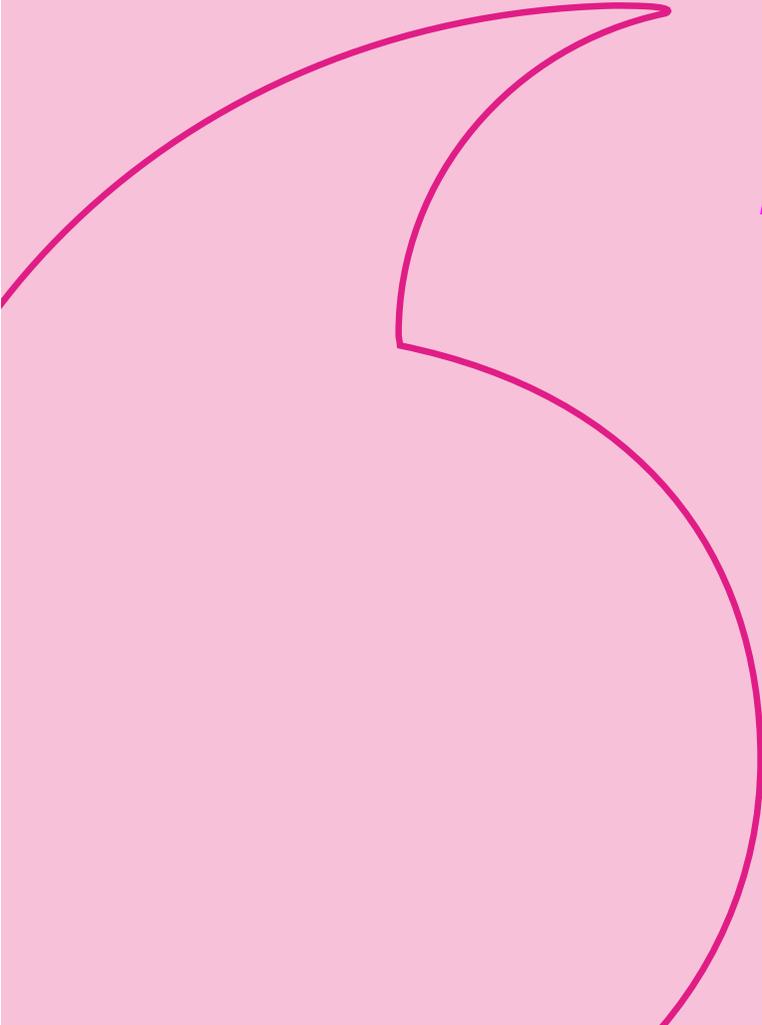
Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Sounds* ▶ *Tone Octave*

Select a genre with and a tone with ▶ Press ▶ Select a level ▶ Press

▶ To check tone or octave, press **Play**.

■ Press **Stop** to stop.

• Adjust octave of Instrument Effects in Basic Octave setting (see Steps 16 - 17 on P.8-21).



Music Player

Music Player Basics

Basic Functions

Use Music Player to record music onto and play music from Memory Cards. A Memory Card must be inserted to open and use Music Player.

- Record tracks in Secure MP3 format from CD players, PC hard disks, etc. to Memory Card. Music Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Music may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- V501SH encryption technology complies with Secure Digital Music Initiative (SDMI) for copyright protection. This technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback through data encryption and authentication.

Basic Requirements

- Vodafone live! subscription
- Download of Music Key (fee-based)

Required Cables for Recording

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Digital Input | Optical Conversion Cable and optical digital connecting cable (sold separately) |
| Analog Input | Analog Conversion Cable and connecting cable (sold separately) |

- MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.
- Supply of this product does not convey a license nor imply any right to distribute content created with this product in revenue-generating broadcast systems (terrestrial, satellite, cable and/or other distribution channels), revenue-generating streaming applications (via Internet, intranets and/or other networks), other revenue-generating content distribution systems (pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications and the like) or on revenue-generating physical media (compact discs, digital versatile discs, semiconductor chips, hard drives, memory cards and the like). An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit <http://mp3licensing.com>.

Music Key & Music Player

Music Key must be purchased to use Music Player. To download, see below.

- Download Music Key via Web. Make sure signal is strong.
- After Music Key is downloaded, select Music Player from Handy Features.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺)

1 Select Music and press ●

Fee-based Music Key Required Connection Fees Apply appears.

- Music Player menu opens when Music Key is already downloaded.



2 Press ☺ three times to open Music Player (4/4)

- Read through the precautions on each page.

3 Press ● Yes

Handset connects to the Network and Music Key download page opens (Japanese only).

- Music Key download page contains the following information:
 - Music Key price
 - Payment method
 - Terms of service
 - Link to customer inquiry service (e-mail only)
- To cancel, press ☺ **No**.

4 Read through terms of service and download Music Key following online instructions

5 After download, choose 1 Yes and press ●

Music Player starts.

- Choose 2 No and press ● to return to menu.



Music Player Menu

- Play tracks on Memory Card (see P.9-12)
- From output devices, record tracks onto Memory Card (see P.9-8)
- Manage tracks on Memory Card (see P.9-15)

- To close Music Player, press ☺.

Tip Standby returns after five minutes of inactivity.

Recording Music

Basic Functions

Precautions before Recording

Charge handset while recording.

- Recording stops when battery level falls too low. Always use Rapid Charger when recording to ensure a stable power supply.
- When battery is low (🔋), Music Player does not record. If battery becomes low (🔋) while recording, **Low Battery** appears and recording stops.

Tracks are recorded onto Memory Card.

To start Music Player, insert a Memory Card formatted for V501SH (see P.11-3, 11-6).

Activate Off-Line Mode to prevent disruptions (see P.9-8).

Incoming communications may disrupt recording or damage outputs of audio sources. (To place calls or send mail, stop recording and cancel Off-Line Mode.)

Do not remove Memory Card while recording.

Doing so may damage the card or result in lost files.

Note

- Under copyright law, duplicated material is limited to private use. Unauthorized reproduction or use is prohibited.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recordings.
- Tracks recorded onto Memory Card cannot be copied to other media digitally.

Recording Time

Estimated recording time for Memory Card with no files or recordings:

| Card Capacity | Bit Rate | Recording Time |
|---------------|----------|----------------|
| 64 MB | 96 kbps | 80 minutes |
| | 128 kbps | 60 minutes |

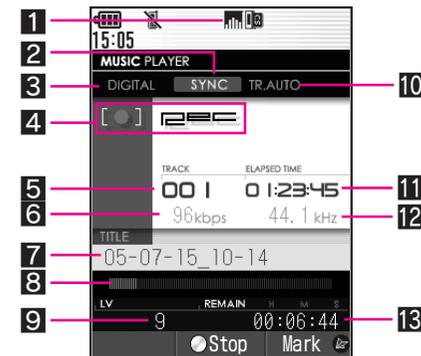
- Recording time varies by Memory Card capacity (measured in megabytes) and bit rate (measured in kilobits per second).
- Bit rate measures audio compression rate or the quality of audio data recorded per second. Sound quality improves at higher rates.

Digital & Analog Recording

Select digital or analog recording according to output types of audio sources.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Digital Input | Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables with Optical Conversion Cable to compress and record high quality digital signals from CD players, PCs, stereo systems, etc. onto Memory Card |
| Analog Input | Convert analog signals to digital with Analog Conversion Cable and Stereo Mini-Phono or Stereo Mini-Stereo Mini Cable, etc. to record onto Memory Card from audio sources with analog outputs |

Recording Window



- 1 Recording in Progress**
- 2 Synchro Recording (see P.9-9)**
Synchro Recording On
- 3 Input Source**
DIGITAL/ANALOG
- 4 Status**
[●] REC / [■] STOP
- 5 Track Number**
- 6 Bit Rate (see P.9-10)**
- 7 Title**
- 8 Recording Level Meter (see P.9-8)**
- 9 Recording Level (see P.9-8)**
- 10 Track Bookmark (see P.9-8)**
- 11 Elapsed Time**
- 12 Sampling Frequency (see below)**
- 13 Remaining Recording Time**
Reduces after each recording

Sampling Frequency

Sampling frequency is the number of times an audio signal is measured (sampled) per second, expressed in kilohertz (kHz). Similar to bit rate, higher rates translate into better sound quality. Sampling frequency is set automatically according to the recording method or audio source.

| Recording | Sampling Frequency |
|----------------------|--|
| Digital Input | 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz or 48 kHz is set according to the audio source status. When recording from DVD players, cancel DTS. |
| Analog Input | 44.1 kHz (fixed) |

Note

Digital recording results may not be satisfactory depending on the signal format.

Track Bookmarks

Number tracks in Play List for Repeat or Random Play. Track Bookmarks are created in the following conditions:

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Digital Input | A period of silence is detected between tracks. When recording from CD/MD players, etc., track numbers remain the same as the original. |
| Analog Input | A period of silence is detected between tracks |

- If Music Player does not detect a period of silence, recorded tracks are all combined and saved as a single track.
- When Synchro Recording is **On**, recording pauses after a period of silence. Recording resumes when sound (track) is detected.
 - When Synchro Recording is **On**, recording stops after 15 seconds of pause.
- Brief sound dropouts occur when Track Bookmarks are created.
- Track Bookmarks may not be created automatically depending on the connected audio source. In this case, number tracks manually (see **P.9-9** "Manual Track Bookmark Creation").

Note Recording may result in silence or a single track with a low volume level if the source tracks consist of long periods of silence or sustained low volume level.

Connecting to Audio Sources

Connection Precautions

Plug an optical digital connecting cable into Optical Conversion Cable, or plug a connecting cable into Analog Conversion Cable. Then gently connect the plug into handset. When disconnecting, hold the plug firmly and pull straight out.

Do not pull on the cables. Doing so may damage the cable, Mini Plug or Headphone/Optical Digital/Line In Connector.

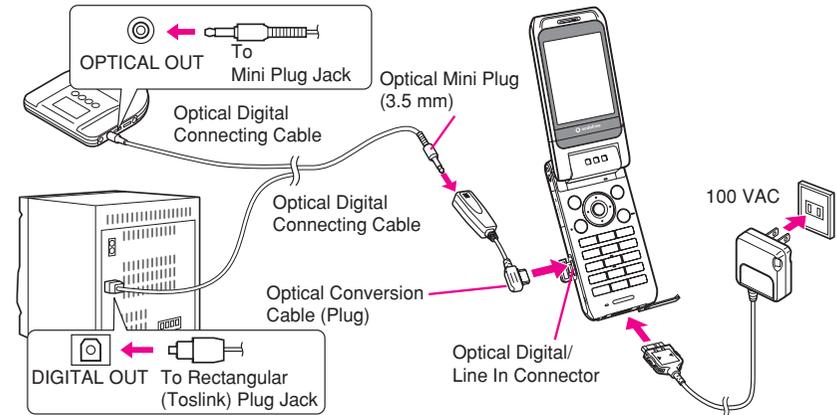
Use specified Conversion Cables only.

Other converters may not function properly and damage may result.

Digital Input

Use Optical Digital Audio Toslink-Mini or Mini-Mini Cables (sold separately) with Optical Conversion Cable to connect output sources to handset.

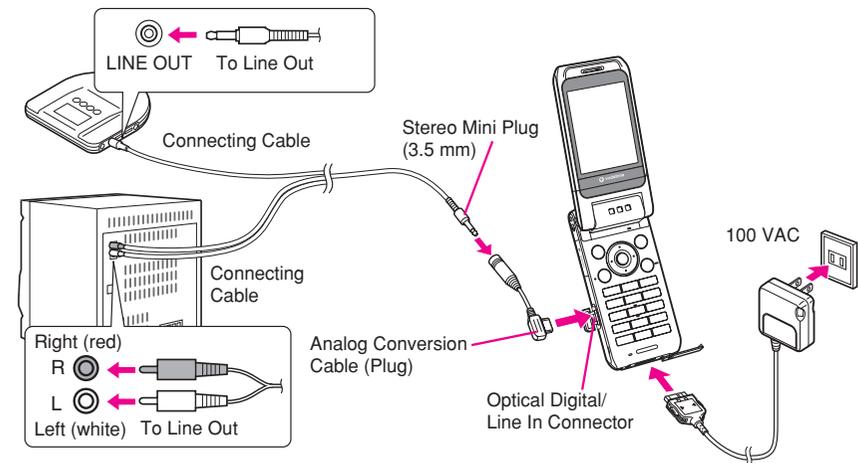
- Use Optical Conversion Cable only for recording music.
- Optical Conversion Cable is designed exclusively for V501SH and other specified Vodafone handsets. Do not use for other devices to prevent damage or malfunction.



Analog Input

Use Stereo Mini-Phono (Y-Adapter) or Stereo Mini-Stereo Mini Cable, etc. (sold separately) and Analog Conversion Cable to connect output sources to handset.

- Before connecting handset to audio sources, activate Off-Line Mode (see Steps 1 - 2 on **P.9-8**).
- Use a device-to-device connecting cable. Do not use speaker or headphone cables.



Recording

- Most operations are described with Synchro Recording active (see P.9-9).
- Read the precautions on P.9-4 before recording.
- To listen to music while recording, adjust Monitor Level before recording (see P.9-9).
- Prepare an audio source and pause playback at the beginning of a track.

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📞) ➔ Music

1 Select **2** Record and press **⏻**

Receive Calls? appears.

- To prevent disruption by calls, choose **2** No to activate Off-Line Mode (see P.9-4).
- If Off-Line Mode is already active (see P.3-6), skip ahead to Step 3.

2 Choose **2** No and press **⏻**

Recording window opens.

- Customize settings before recording (see P.9-9 "Recording Settings").
- To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, choose **1** Yes ➔ Press **⏻**

3 Connect handset to the audio source, and play music to check the recording level



- For digital sources, recording level adjusts automatically.
- For analog sources, use **🔊** to adjust the level (not available while recording).
 - Make sure that the level does not reach the red zone.
- Standby returns after 20 minutes of inactivity.



Red Zone
Recording
Level Meter

4 Press **⏻**

Handset is ready for Synchro Recording.

- When Synchro Recording is **Off**, press **⏻** again ➔ Start playback

5 Start playback

Recording starts automatically when handset detects sound.

- For analog sources, recording may start even while playback is paused.



- Do not remove Memory Card or battery while recording. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Do not touch cables or plugs while recording. May cause noise or skipping.



Manual Track Bookmark Creation (see P.9-6)

Press **🔖** **Mark** while recording.

6 Press **⏻** to stop

Alternatively (when Synchro Recording is **On**), stop playback ➔ Recording pauses ➔ Recording stops after 15 seconds

- If **2** No was selected in Step 2 on P.9-8, Off-Line mode is canceled after recording ends.



- When recording from PCs or BS/CS digital tuners, recording level may decrease.
- Unchecked tracks recorded with J-SH51/J-SH52 will be deleted when the Memory Card is used for V501SH Music Player.



- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts when handset returns to Standby.
- Tracks are saved by date and time by default. To rename, see P.9-16 "Rename Play List Items."

Recording Settings

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.9-8.

Monitor Level

Set volume level to listen to music while recording

Default: Level 3

Press **🔖** **Menu** ➔ Select **Monitor Level** ➔ Press **⏻** ➔ Select a level with **🔊** ➔ Press **⏻**

Synchro Recording

Start recording automatically when playback starts on audio sources

Default: On

Press **🔖** **Menu** ➔ Select **Synchro Recording** ➔ Press **⏻** ➔ Choose **1** On or **2** Off ➔ Press **⏻**

Bit Rate

Select a bit rate (see P.9-4 "Recording Time")

Default 96 kbps

Press **Menu** → Select **Bit Rate** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 96 kbps** or **2 128 kbps** → Press **Enter**

- Sound quality is better at 128 kbps. However, recording time shortens as more space is required in memory.

Track Break Level

Select sensitivity to detect silence for creating Track Bookmarks

Default -41 dB

Press **Menu** → Select **Track Break Level** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 -41 dB** or **2 -59 dB** → Press **Enter**

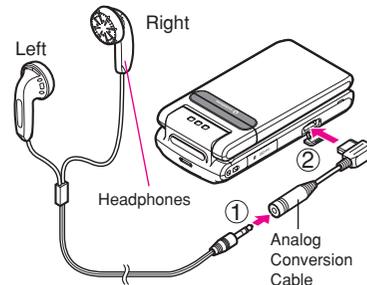
- Select **-59 dB** for soft tracks to prevent unintended Track Bookmark creation.

Playing Music

Basic Functions

Play music on Memory Card

- Use headphones with Analog Conversion Cable or LCD Remote/Mic (sold separately) to listen to music without bothering others. Connect to handset as shown to the right.
- Alternatively, play music from handset speaker.



Tip

Use LCD Remote/Mic to adjust volume by remote control during playback.

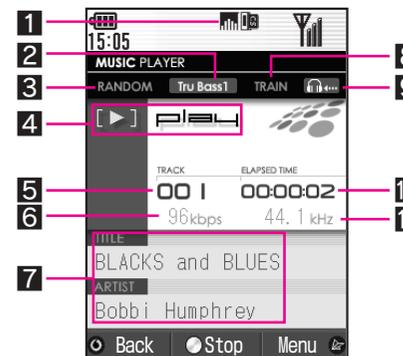
Precautions before Playing Music

- Grasp Analog Conversion Cable when connecting or disconnecting headphones. Do not bend the plug to avoid damaging the cord or Headphone Connector.
- Use only the specified Analog Conversion Cable or LCD Remote/Mic. Other devices may not function properly and cause damage to Headphone Connector.
- When battery is low (🔋), Music Player does not play. If battery becomes low (🔋) during playback, **Low Battery** appears and Music Player shuts down automatically.

Tip

- To answer calls, disconnect headphones and Analog Conversion Cable. To answer calls with LCD Remote/Mic, press Call Button for 1+ seconds.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in speaker sound.

Playback Window Indicators



1 Playback in Progress

2 Sound Effect (see P.9-14)

Tru Bass1: Bass 1,

Tru Bass2: Bass 2,

SRS: Surround,

WOW: Surround Bass

- Indicator does not appear for Normal (no sound effect).

3 Play Mode (see P.9-14 "Play Setting")

Repeat 1:

Repeat All:

RANDOM: Random Play

- Indicator does not appear for Repeat Off.

4 Status

play / **stop** /

FF / **RR**

5 Track Number

6 Bit Rate (see P.9-10)

7 Track Title/Artist Name

8 Volume Control (Train: see P.9-14)

TRAIN: Volume Control On

- Indicator does not appear for Volume Control Off.

9 Incoming Settings (see P.9-15)

Exit Player, **Show Message**

10 Elapsed Time

11 Sampling Frequency (see P.9-5)

Playback

Index Menu ► Handy (📶) ► Music

1 Select **Play** and press **Play**

Playback window opens.

To play other tracks, press **Menu** ► Select **Play List** ► Press **Play** ► Select a track ► Press **Play**

For details on Play List, see P.9-15 "Music Files."

2 Press **Play**

Playback starts from the first track, or the point where it was stopped.

• Playback stops after the last track when **Repeat Off** is set (see P.9-14 "Play Setting").

Press **Play** to stop playback manually.

Press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) to adjust volume.

■ When Train mode (see P.9-14) is active, maximum level is 13.

■ Playback Settings: see P.9-14



Standby returns after five minutes of inactivity.

Incoming Communications during Playback

■ When calls arrive, beeps sound and playback continues. Mail Notice appears for mail messages and indicator (📶 or 📶) flashes for Web/Station information (except Urgent Information).

• To stop playback automatically for incoming calls, set Exit Player in Incoming Settings (see P.9-15).

■ Playback stops in the following cases. (To resume, press **Play**.)

- Alarm starts at Alarm Time, Auto Power On Time, etc.
- Urgent Information arrives
- Message Recorder activates and outgoing message plays
- Calls with no Caller ID or Payphone calls arrive when Reject Call is set for those calls and outgoing message plays



To activate or cancel Manner Mode, press **Text** for 1+ seconds in Playback window.

Playback Operations

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Replay | Press Replay Press repeatedly to play previous tracks. ¹ |
| Skip | Press Skip Press repeatedly to skip more. ² |
| Fast Forward | Press and hold Fast Forward Release for playback. |
| Fast Reverse | Press and hold Fast Reverse Release for playback. |
| Pausing V-Application | Press Play ³ Press again to resume playback. |

¹In Random Play, **Replay** only replays the current track.

²Not available during the last track when **Repeat Off** is set.

³While playback is paused, Fast Forward, Fast Reverse and Skip are not available.

Additional Operations

Closing Music Player

Press **Exit** during playback. **Exit?** appears as shown to the right.

- Select **1 Close Music Player** and press **Play** to exit.
- To continue playback and return to Standby, select **2 Hide Music Player** and press **Play**.
- Select **3 Cancel** and press **Play** to cancel. (Playback window returns.)



Background Music

Hide Music Player to create mail messages, add Phone Book entries or use other functions (except below) while music plays in the background.

Stop Playback OK? appears when you attempt to place calls, activate mobile camera, access Memory Card, send Super Mail, play melodies, access Data Folder, etc.

- Choose **1 Yes** and press **Play** to stop playback. (Playback resumes after Super Mail is sent.)
- Choose **2 No** and press **Play** to cancel. (Playback continues.)



Stop Playback OK? also appears when **Exit** is pressed in Standby.

Playback Settings

Follow these steps after Step 1 on P.9-12.

Play Setting

Repeat tracks or play them in random order

■ Repeat 1 (one track repeat) applies to track on Playback window.
Default Repeat Off

Press **Menu** → Select **Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 Play Setting** → Press **Enter** → Select a mode → Press **Enter**

Sound Effect

Increase bass for dynamic sound or create a surround field
 Use headphones to listen to music with sound effects

Default Normal

Press **Menu** → Select **Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **2 Sound Effect** → Press **Enter** → Select an effect → Press **Enter**

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Normal | No sound effects |
| Bass 1 | Bass is increased |
| Bass 2 | Bass is increased further |
| Surround | Surround effect (SRS) |
| Surround Bass | Surround effect with increased bass |

Note Sound Effect setting does not apply to handset speaker sound. Also, surround effect does not affect mono sound.

Tip

- For Bass 1 and Bass 2, bass level is controlled to reduce distortion. Bass 1 activates for volume level 14 or higher, and Bass 2 activates from 12.
- SRS, TruBass, WOW and  are trademarks or registered trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
 SRS, TruBass and WOW technologies are commercialized based on the license issued by SRS Labs, Inc.

Train (Volume Control)

Activate Train mode to set maximum volume level to 13

Default Off

Press **Menu** → Select **Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **3 Train** → Press **Enter** → Choose **1 On** → Press **Enter**

Tip When set to 14 or higher, volume level decreases to 13 in Train mode. Canceling Train mode does not restore the original volume level.

Incoming Settings

Select a handset response to calls received during playback

Default Show Message

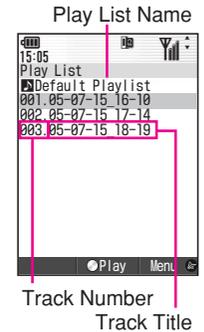
Press **Menu** → Select **Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **4 Incoming Settings** → Press **Enter** → Select **1 Exit Player** or **2 Show Message** → Press **Enter**

Music Files

Play List

Recorded tracks are saved to Play List on Memory Card.

Use Play List to change playback order, edit titles, delete tracks, etc.



Managing Music Files

- If battery becomes low () while editing Play List, **Low Battery** appears and Music Player shuts down automatically.
- Do not remove Memory Card or battery while editing Play List. Doing so may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Play List cannot be edited during playback.

Property

View Play List or track information

Index Menu → **Handy** (☺) → **Music** → **Play List**

Select **Play List** or track → Press **Menu** → Select **Property** → Press **Enter**

Rename Play List Items

Edit track title, artist name or Play List title

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) → *Music* → *Play List*

Track Title

Select a track → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Track Info Editing* →
Press (⏏) → Select **1** *Title* → Press (⏏) → Enter title → Press (⏏)

Artist Name

Select a track → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Track Info Editing* →
Press (⏏) → Select **2** *Artist* → Press (⏏) → Enter name → Press (⏏)

Play List Title

Select Play List (with **PL**) → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Edit List Title*
→ Press (⏏) → Enter title → Press (⏏)

Move

Rearrange tracks in Play List to change playback order

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) → *Music* → *Play List* → *Menu* (⌂) → *Move*

Select a track → Press (⏏) → Select target location → Press (⏏) →
Press (⏏) **Set**

Erase

Delete tracks one by one or all at once

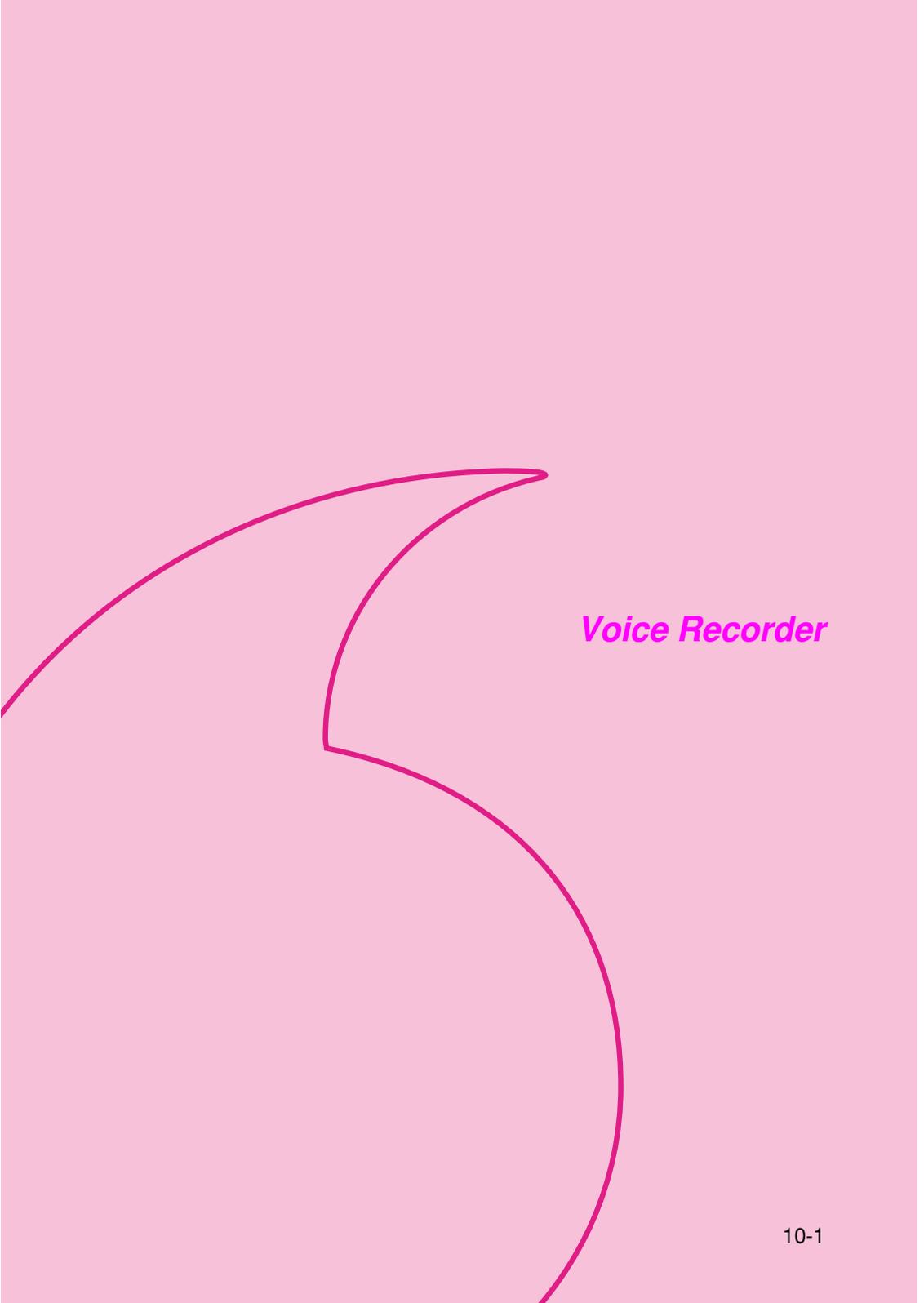
Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (☺) → *Music* → *Play List*

One Track

Select a track → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select *Erase* → Press (⏏) →
Choose **1** *Yes* → Press (⏏)

All Tracks

Select Play List (with **PL**) → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select
Erase List Contents → Press (⏏) → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press (⏏)



Voice Recorder

Recording Voice

Basic Functions

Use handset microphone to record voice onto handset or Memory Card.

- Save up to 100 files per folder.
- Maximum recording time is 150 minutes in **Long** mode, and 35 minutes in **Fine** mode by default (handset). Maximum continuous recording time is 8 minutes.

Preparation

- Make sure battery is adequately charged. When battery is low (🔋), Voice Recorder does not record. If battery becomes low (🔋) while recording, **Low Battery** appears and Voice Recorder shuts down automatically.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

Recording Window Indicators



- 1 Recording in Progress (red)**
- 2 Recording Mode (see P.10-4)**
LONG / FINE
- 3 Status**
[🔊] [🔊] / [🔊] [🔊] stop
- 4 Elapsed Time**
- 5 Folder Name**
- 6 Storage Media**
📱: Handset, 🗂️: Memory Card
- 7 Mic Level (see P.10-4)**
🗣️: Conference, 🗣️: Standard
- 8 File Name**
- 9 Remaining Recording Time**
Reduces when you save recordings or press [Mark] while recording

Recording

Index Menu ▶ Handy (📞) ▶ Voice

1 Select [2] Record and press [OK]

Receive Calls? appears.

- To prevent disruption by calls, choose [2] **No** to activate Off-Line Mode.
- If Off-Line Mode is already active (see P.3-6), skip ahead to Step 3.



First Recording or When Folder Has Been Deleted

- Voice Folder list appears. Select a folder and press [OK].
- To create folders, press [Menu] ▶ Select **New Folder** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press [OK]
 - Select a created folder and press [OK] to set as a save location.

2 Choose [2] No and press [OK]

Recording window opens.

- To change the folder, press [Menu] ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press [OK]
- To create folders, press [Menu] ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [Menu] ▶ Select **New Folder** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press [OK]
- To switch storage media (handset or Memory Card), press [Menu] ▶ Select **Select Folder** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [Menu] ▶ Select **Memory Card** or **Handset** ▶ Press [OK]
- To accept incoming calls, mail, etc. while recording, choose [1] **Yes** ▶ Press [OK]

3 Press [OK]

Recording starts (Small Light illuminates).

- Press [Mark] while recording to save the rest as a new file.



- Do not subject handset to shocks. May cause noise or skipping.
- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

4 Press [OK] to stop

Recording is saved.

- To resume recording, press [OK]. Recording is saved as a new file in the same folder.
- If [2] **No** was selected in Step 2, close Voice Recorder to cancel Off-Line Mode.

Tip

- Voice files are saved by date and time by default; change file names later.
- To activate Voice Recorder with clamshell closed, see P.15-3.
- If Off-Line Mode is not active, recording may be disrupted by calls. (Interrupted recordings are saved automatically.)
- Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.

Recording Settings

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.10-3.

Mic Level

Use **Conference** at meetings, and **Standard** for interviews, etc.

Default: Conference

Press **Menu** → Select **Mic Level** → Press **OK** → Select

1 Conference or **2 Standard** → Press **OK**

- Place handset within approximately 2 m from the sound source for Conference, and 20 to 30 cm for Standard. Make a test recording to check the sensitivity.

Recording Mode

Use Long or Fine mode

Default: Fine

Press **Menu** → Select **Recording Mode** → Press **OK** → Select

1 Long or **2 Fine** → Press **OK**

- Fine mode produces better sound, but uses more memory, reducing recording time.
- Use Fine mode to record sounds to be used as Ring Tones.

Delete

Delete files one at a time

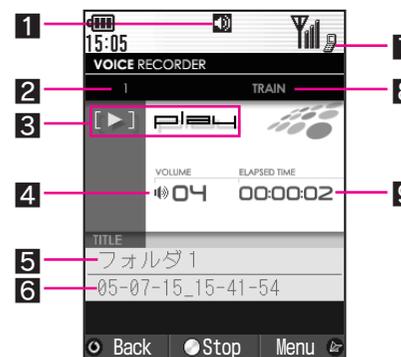
Press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press **OK** → Select a file → Press **OK**

→ Choose **1 Yes** → Press **OK**

Playback

Basic Functions

Playback Window



1 Playback in Progress (green)

2 Play Mode (see P.10-7)

1 : Play One Data, ALL: Play All

3 Status

[▶] play / [■] stop /

[▶▶] FF / [◀◀] RR

4 Volume (see P.10-6)

5 Folder Name

6 File Name

7 Storage Media

📱 : Handset, 📁 : Memory Card

8 Volume Control (Train: see P.10-7)

TRAIN: Volume Control On

- Indicator does not appear for Volume Control Off.

9 Elapsed Time

Playback

Play sounds from handset speaker, or use headphones with Analog Conversion Cable or LCD Remote/Mic (see P.9-11).

Index Menu → **Handy (📞)** → **Voice**

1 Select 1 Play Mode and press OK

Playback window opens.

To play sounds in other folders, press **Menu** → Select **Voice Folder** → Press **OK** → Press **OK** → Select a folder → Press **OK** → Select a file → Press **OK**

To play sounds in Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Voice Folder** → Press **OK** → Press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **OK** → Select a folder → Press **OK** → Select a file → Press **OK**

Tip

First Playback or When Folder Has Been Deleted

Voice Folder list appears. Follow these steps to select a file to play.

Select a folder → Press **OK** → Select a file → Press **OK**

2 Press ●

Playback starts.

Press ⏮ (up) or ⏭ (down) to adjust volume.

- When Train mode (see P.10-7) is active, maximum level is 4.

Incoming Communications during Playback

- When calls arrive, handset rings/vibrates and playback stops.
- Other incoming communications arrive without interrupting playback. Mail Notice appears for mail messages and indicator (📧 or 📠) flashes for Web/Station information (except Urgent Information).

Tip To activate/cancel Manner Mode, press [文字] for 1+ seconds in Playback window.

Playback Operations

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Replay | Press ⏮ Press repeatedly to play previous files. |
| Skip | Press ⏭ Press repeatedly to skip more. |
| Fast Forward | Press and hold ⏭ ¹ Release for playback. |
| Fast Reverse | Press and hold ⏮ ¹ Release for playback. |
| Pause | Press ● Press again to resume playback. |

¹Not available while playback is paused. Available within a single file when Play One Data is set.

Operations in Voice Folder

To open Voice Folder, follow these steps.

In Playback window, press [Menu] → Select **Voice Folder** → Press ●

| | |
|--|--|
| New Folder | Press ⏮ → Press [Menu] → Select New Folder → Press ● → Enter name → Press ● |
| Change Name | Select a file → Press [Menu] → Select Change Name → Press ● → Choose Yes → Press ● → Enter a file name → Press ● |
| Delete Files | Select a file → Press [Menu] → Select Delete → Press ● → Choose Yes → Press ● |
| Copy & Move Files (Between handset and Memory Card) | Select a file → Press [Menu] → Select Copy or Move → Press ● → Select Handset or Memory Card → Press ● → Select a folder → Press ● twice |

Playback Settings

Follow these steps after Step 1 on P.10-5.

Play Setting

Set handset to play specified file only or all files in a folder

Default: Play One Data

Press [Menu] → Select **Settings** → Press ● → Select **Play Setting** → Press ● → Select **Play One Data** or **Play All** → Press ●

Train (Volume Control)

Activate Train mode to set maximum volume level to 4

Default: Off

Press [Menu] → Select **Settings** → Press ● → Select **Train** → Press ● → Choose **On** → Press ●

Tip

When Train mode is activated volume level is decreased from 5 to 4. Canceling Train mode does not restore the original volume level.

Split Data

Split a single file into two at a point specified during playback or at a paused point

Perform this operation while a file is playing or paused.

Press [Menu] → Select **Split Data** → Press ● → Choose **Yes** → Press ●

Note

- Files cannot be split during the first or last 20 seconds.
- If memory is low, files may not be split.
- Split files on Memory Card may not play properly if the card is not formatted for V501SH.

Voice Ring Tone

Crop up to approximately 30 seconds from Voice files to use as Ring Tones.

- Only sounds recorded in Fine mode can be used. Access files from handset Voice Folder (フォルダ1).
- Crop sounds while a file is playing or paused.

Editing Voice Files

Index Menu ▶ *Handy (📞)* ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Play Mode* ▶ *Select a file*

- 1 Press**  **Menu** at the start point
- 2 Select *Edit*** and press 
- 3 Press** 
Playback resumes.
- 4 Press**  **at the end point**
 - Cropping automatically ends when the limit is reached.
 - To play back the cropped portion, select **2 Preview** ▶ Press 
 - Press  to stop.
 - To start over, select **3 Cancel** ▶ Press 
- 5 Select**  **Save and press** 
Cropped portion is saved to handset Voice Folder (フォルダ1) as a new file.

Using as Ring Tone

Index Menu ▶ *Handy (📞)* ▶ *Voice* ▶ *Open Playback window* ▶ *Menu (🗄)* ▶ *Voice Folder*

- 1 Select a Voice file and press**  **Menu**
- 2 Select *Incoming Tone*** and press 
 - *Incoming Tone* appears only for compatible Voice files.
- 3 Select an item and press** 

Memory Card



miniSD is a trademark of the SD Association.



Portions of this product are protected under copyright law and are provided under license by ARIS/SOLANA/4C.

Before Use

V501SH accepts miniSD™ Memory Card. Save images, music, Data Folder files, Phone Book entries, etc. to a miniSD™ Memory Card.

- Format a new miniSD™ Memory Card for use with V501SH (see **P.11-6**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to a Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.
- Use Memory Card Adapter (see **P.11-4**) to use miniSD™ Memory Cards on SD Memory Card-compatible PCs and printers.

Tip The manufacturer recommends the use of 32, 64, 128 or 256 MB cards.

Precautions

- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended miniSD™ Memory Card sizes.
- Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card or Memory Card Adapter. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Use an oil-based felt pen to write on Memory Card.
Using a pencil or ballpoint pen may damage the card or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Do not expose Memory Card to direct sunlight or excessive heat (e.g. inside vehicles, etc.).
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust or high humidity.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage,

Note

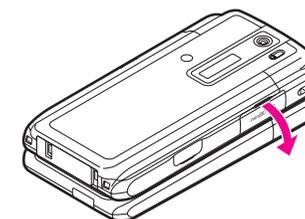
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Please keep a separate record of Phone Book contents, etc.
- miniSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Inserting & Removing Memory Card

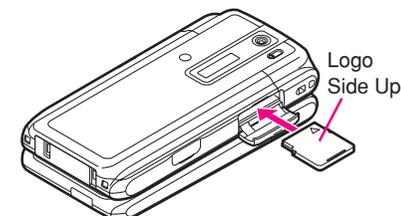
Inserting

Turn handset power off.

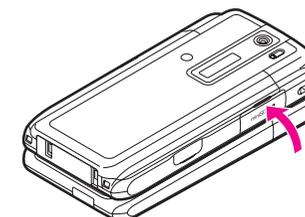
1 Open cover



2 With logo side up, insert card until it clicks



3 Close cover



Note

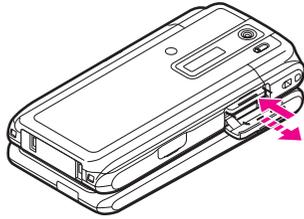
- When using a Memory Card that has been used with another device, always use Synchronize before saving files to the card (see **P.11-12**). Files saved with other devices may not appear as saved.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot. Damage to handset/card may result.

Removing

Turn handset power off.

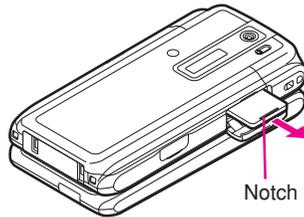
1 Open cover and gently push down on card

- With a light push, the card pops out.



2 Remove card

- Using the notch on its edge, pull the card straight out, then close the cover.



Note Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

Tip Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on. Standby appears. Memory Card load times vary depending on card size and the amount of information saved. When using a Memory Card that has been used with another device, use Synchronize to update V-Appli Library (see P.10-7)

Memory Card Adapter

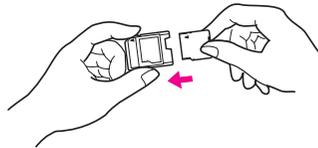
miniSD™ Memory Card includes an adapter that converts miniSD™ Memory Card into a full size SD Memory Card for use with SD-compatible devices.

Mounting

Insert miniSD™ Memory Card into Memory Card Adapter as shown (align the printed logos).

Removing

Holding Memory Card Adapter steady, use notch on bottom edge of miniSD™ Memory Card to pull it free.

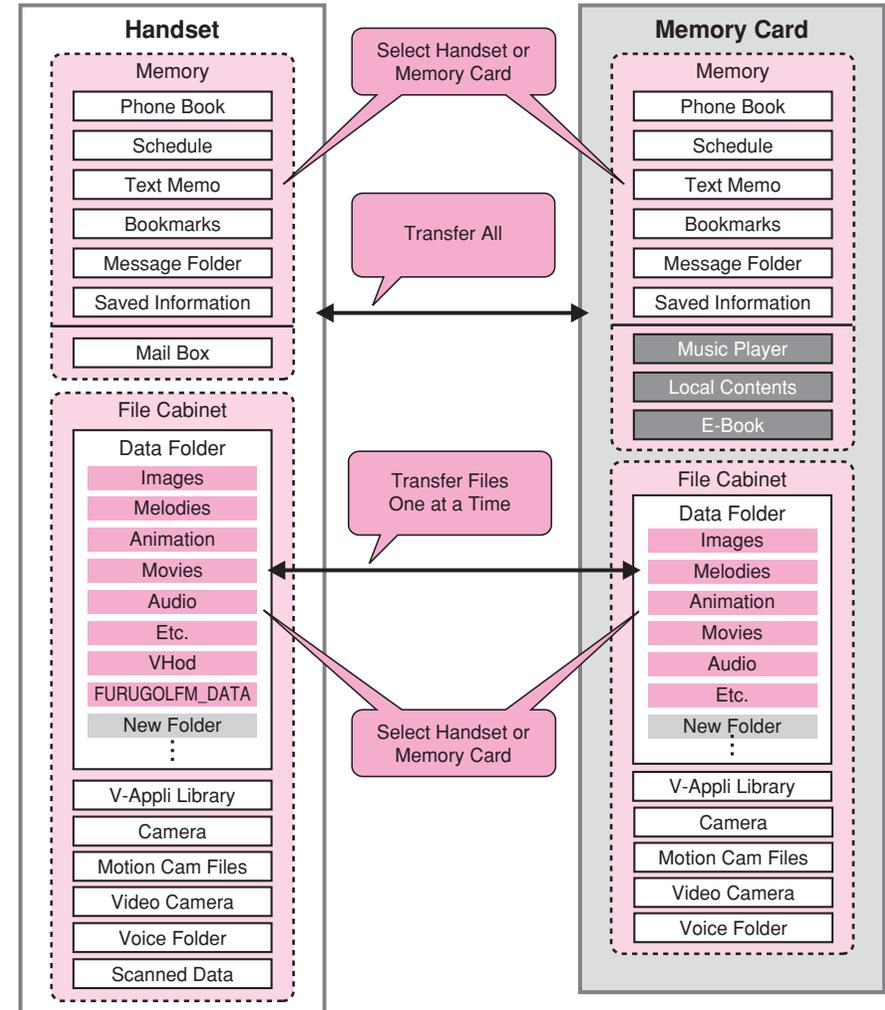


- Note**
- Do not insert miniSD™ Memory Card into PCs and other devices without Memory Card Adapter. Damage to devices or Memory Card Adapter may result. When removing, remove both miniSD™ Memory Card and Memory Card Adapter together. Removing card alone may cause malfunctions.
 - Some devices may not be compatible with miniSD™ Memory Cards used with Memory Card Adapter.

File Organization

Memory Card has two storage areas. Data is automatically sorted into **Memory** by function and into **File Cabinet** by file format.

The following may not be exchanged between handset and Memory Card: Mail, Bookmarks, V-Applications, copy or transfer protected files in Data Folder, etc.



Using Memory Card

Format Card

When using a new miniSD™ Memory Card, format it on V501SH for use with V501SH before trying to save files, etc.

Note

- Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
- An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with V501SH.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Format Card*

- 1 Enter Security Code
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press ●

Memory Card Memory Status

- Press ● ▶ **Select Memory Card** ▶ Press ● ▶ **Select Memory Card Status** ▶ Press ●
 - A portion of Memory Card is reserved for storing copyright information, etc. (For example, approximately 60.6 MB is available for use on a 64 MB Memory Card.)

Opening Memory Card Files

From Function Windows

Open Memory Card files from file list when **Memory Card** appears.

- 1 Open file list and press **Menu**
 - For Bookmarks, press ● **Menu**.
 - To open Phone Book entries on Memory Card, open Entry Search window or Entry List and press ● **Switch**
- 2 Select **Memory Card** and press ●
 - To switch back to handset, select **Handset** ▶ Press ●
 - For Phone Book, select **Handset** or **Memory Card** ▶ Press ●

From Data Folder

Index Menu ▶ *My Files* ▶ *Data Folder*

- 1 Press **Menu** **Menu**
Memory Card Data Folder opens (☰ appears).
- 2 Select a folder and press ●
- 3 Select a file and press ●
The content plays or appears.

Tip

Edit or manage files and folders on Memory Card . Refer to instructions for Data Folder (see P.12-44 - 12-46).

From Folders on Memory Card

Open image/video files in the following folders:

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Camera | Images captured in Camera mode |
| Motion Cam Files | Video recorded in Motion Camera mode |
| Video Camera | Video recorded in Video Camera mode |

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Memory Card Files*

- 1 Select **3 Camera**, **4 Motion Cam Files** or **Video Camera** and press ●
 - For **4 Motion Cam Files**, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press ●
- 3 Select a file and press ●
Image appears or video plays.

Tip

To view available functions, open a file and press **Menu** . Further operations are basically the same as those for files in handset Data Folder.

Transferring Files

Exchange files/entries between handset and Memory Card.

Copy handset files/entries as backups, share information between miniSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer files/entries to a newly purchased handset.

| Method | Description | Applicable for |
|---------------------|---|---|
| Copy or Move | Copy or move a selected file/entry | Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Data Folder ¹ , Camera/Motion Camera/Video Camera files, Voice files, Message Folder (Web) ² , Bookmarks (Web), V-Appli Library ² and Saved Information (Station) |
| Transfer All | Transfer all files/entries by function. When transferred to Memory Card, all contents are copied as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.) Contents cannot be accessed from handset. | Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Mail (Inbox, Sent, Outbox) and Bookmarks (Web) |
| | Transfer all files/entries by function. When transferred to Memory Card, each file/entry is copied as a single file. Contents can be accessed from handset. | Data Folder ¹ , Camera/Motion Camera/Video Camera files, Voice files, V-Appli Library, Message Folder (Web) and Saved Information (Station) |

¹ Images, Melodies, Animation, Movies, Audio, Etc. and created folders

² Not available for copying.

Copy or Move

Refer to P.12-46 to copy or move files in Data Folder to other folders.

1 Phone Book Entry

1 Select a Phone Book entry and press **Menu**

2 Select *Copy to* or *Move to* and press

3 Press and enter Memory No.

Press to toggle storage media between and .

Copying Other Items

1 Select a file/entry and press **Menu**

For Bookmarks, press instead of .

2 Select *Copy to*, *Copy to Handset* or *Copy to Memory Card* and press

Moving Other Items

1 Select a file/entry and press **Menu**

For Bookmarks, press instead of .

2 Select *Move to*, *Move to Handset* or *Move to Memory Card* and press

Precautions for File Transfers

- File transfers are not available when battery is low.
- Copy protected files cannot be copied.
 - Copy protected files are removed from handset once transferred to Memory Card, and vice versa.
 - Copy protected files cannot be transferred to Vodafone handsets of other parties.
 - Only your handset can open copy protected files transferred to Memory Card.
- When handset or Memory Card memory is low, files may not transfer correctly.
- Some files/entries may not be transferable. Some transferred files/entries may not be used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Transfer All

Read "Precautions for File Transfers" on P.11-8 beforehand.

Handset to Memory Card

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Transfer All*

- 1 Select To Memory Card and press**
Receive Call while Forwarding? appears.
 - Choose **No** to activate Off-Line Mode to prevent disruptions from incoming calls, etc.
 - If Off-Line Mode (see P.3-6) is already active, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Choose No and press**
To accept incoming calls, etc. during transfer, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- 3 Enter Security Code**
- 4 Select an item and press**
For *Select All* or *Phone Book*, choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press
- 5 Choose Yes and press**
After transfer, Transfer All menu returns.
 - To transfer other data, repeat Steps 1 - 5.
 - To cancel, press **Cancel**

Note

- Files/entries may be renamed after transfer or may not be transferred if the same name already exists.
- Encode Phone Book, Mail or Schedule data (see P.11-11) to restrict access after Transfer All. Encoded data appears correctly only on your handset.

11

Memory Card

Memory Card to Handset

Handset files/entries are overwritten after Transfer All.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Transfer All*

- 1 Select From Memory Card and press**
Receive Call while Forwarding? appears.
 - Choose **No** to activate Off-Line Mode to prevent disruptions from incoming calls, etc.
 - If Off-Line Mode (see P.3-6) is already active, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Choose No and press**
To accept incoming calls, etc. during transfer, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- 3 Enter Security Code**
- 4 Select an item and press**
 - Some items may not be selected.
 - For items other than Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Mail (Inbox, Sent and Outbox) and Bookmarks, skip ahead to Step 6.
- 5 Select a file/entry and press**
 - If there is more than one file/entry, check the date of transfer to select.
Example: 050715XX indicates the file was transferred on July 15, 2005.
(XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)
 - To delete files/entries on Memory Card, select one ▶ Press **Remove** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- 6 Choose Yes and press**
- 7 Select OK and press**
After transfer, Transfer All menu returns.
 - To transfer other data, repeat Steps 1 - 7.
 - To cancel, press **Cancel**.

Encoding Data

Encode handset data before transferring to Memory Card. Transferred data appears correctly only on your handset.

- Encode is available by function (Phone Book, Mail or Schedule).
- Encode is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Transfer All* ▶ *Encode*

- 1 Select an item and press**
- 2 Choose On and press**
 - To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press
 - To encode other data, repeat Steps 1 - 2.

11

Memory Card

Additional Functions

Local Contents

Open HTML files saved on Memory Card to access linked Memory Card files or Mobile Internet sites

- Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.
- Activate Web service beforehand (see [O]P.1-6).

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Local Contents

Select a title ▶ Press ●

Tip

- Local Contents are saved in **PRIVATE/SDJPHONE/SD コンテンツ** folder when viewed on PCs.
- If Autorun file is deleted, open HTML files via **Local Contents**.

Synchronize

Synchronize Memory Card data between handsets and other devices

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Memory Card ▶ Synchronize

Select an item ▶ Press ● ▶ Select **1**OK ▶ Press ●

■ To cancel, press ● **Cancel** ▶ Choose **1**Yes ▶ Press ●

- When using a Memory Card that has been used on other Vodafone handsets or other devices, always use **Synchronize**.

Note

- Synchronization may fail if Memory Card memory is low.
- Synchronization may take long depending on the amount of information on Memory Card.

Autorun

If an Autorun file is saved on Memory Card, the specified HTML file on Memory Card opens automatically when handset is turned on or the Memory Card is inserted
Execute Autorun manually

- Available only when an Autorun file is saved on Memory Card.

Index Menu ▶ Memory Card ▶ Autorun

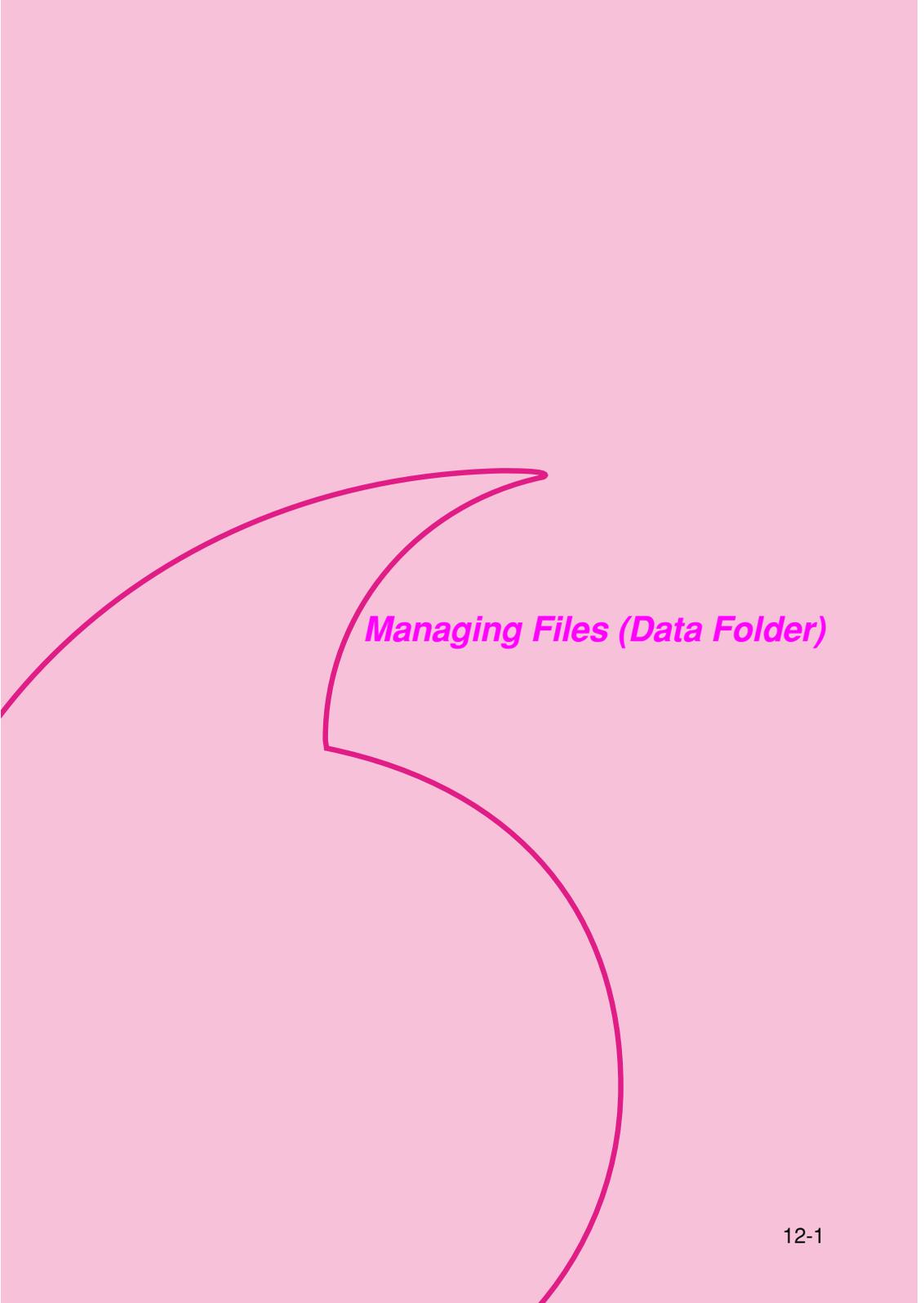
Select **1**Manual Autorun ▶ Press ●

■ To delete Autorun file, select **2**Delete Autorun ▶ Press ● ▶ Enter Security Code ▶ Select **1**OK ▶ Press ●

- HTML files (Local Contents) remain even after Autorun file is deleted.

Note

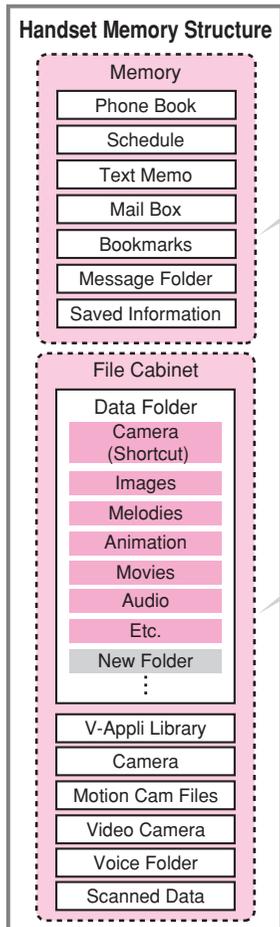
Once deleted, Autorun file cannot be recovered and Autorun is disabled.



Managing Files (Data Folder)

File Organization

Handset has two storage areas. Files are automatically sorted into **Memory** by function and into **File Cabinet** by file format. Handset File Cabinet capacity is approximately 10 MB.



Save files created/obtained using functions. The capacity varies by function.

Files are sorted into folders by file format. File Cabinet capacity is fixed and shared by all folders.

File Cabinet Memory Status

■ To check memory usage status, press **☉** → Select **Functions** → Press **☉** → Select **ⓃSettings 1** → Press **☉** → Select **1Memory** → Press **☉** → Select **ⓃFile Cabinet** → Press **☉**

Reset File Cabinet

■ To reset File Cabinet, press **☉** → Select **Functions** → Press **☉** → Select **ⓃSettings 1** → Press **☉** → Select **1Memory** → Press **☉** → Select **ⓃFile Cabinet** → Press **⏏Menu** → Select **Reset** → Press **☉** → Enter Security Code → Choose **1Yes** → Press **☉**

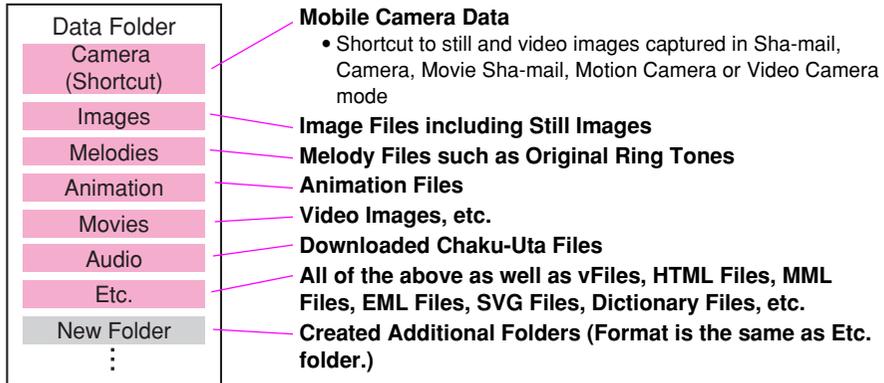
- Before resetting File Cabinet, keep a separate copy of important files.
- Preloaded files are restored.

Tip Some data in Memory can be saved to Data Folder as **vFile** (see P.12-36).

Data Folder

Contents

Files created or obtained via Web or Sky/Super Mail are organized in separate folders according to file format. Files are sorted as follows:



- **速写** folder is created when a Burst Shot image is captured and saved for the first time.
- In addition, folders (**VHod**, etc.) for V-Applications are saved in Data Folder.

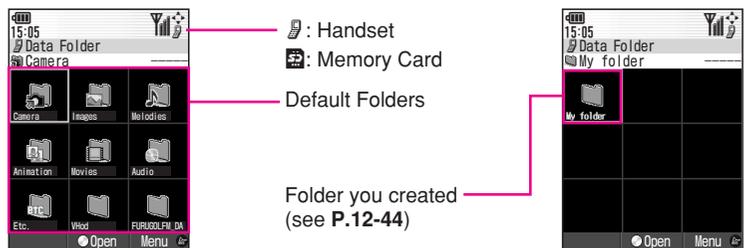
Memory Card

Save files directly to Memory Card, or transfer handset files one at a time or all at once. Exchange files between handset and Memory Card. See **P.11-2** for more about Memory Card.

Window Description

To open Data Folder from Standby, follow these steps.

Press **⓪** ➔ **Select My Files** ➔ Press **⓪** ➔ **Select Data Folder** ➔ Press **⓪**



Data Folder (Handset)

Data Folder (Handset)

File View

Open a folder to view files.

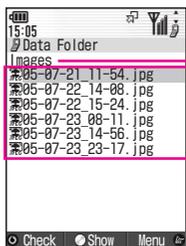
- Example: Images folder
- To customize the appearance of File View, see **P.12-8** "Display Settings."



File View (List)

Format, Name and Size (of selected image)
Saved Files

- Icons appear for files other than images or images not supported by handset.
- **📁** appears for folders.



File View (List File Names)

Folder Name
Saved Files (format and file name)

Icons

Still Image & Animation Files

| Icon | Format & Extension | Description |
|------|--|--|
| | JPEG (.jpg) | JPEG image |
| | PNG (.png) | PNG image |
| | Burst Shot (consisting of Index Image and 4, 9, or 25 frames) (.SRG) | Burst Mode image |
| | E-Animation (NEVA files) (.nva) | Animation (may include sound) |
| | Animation (JPEG, PNG, or PNG/JPEG Animation) ² | Animation |
| | MNG (.mng) | Simple animation made from JPEG and PNG images |

¹ Blue icon: forwardable, red icon: unforwardable

² Extensions do not appear for JPEG, PNG and PNG/JPEG Animations.

Video Files

| Icon | Format & Extension | Description |
|------|--------------------|--------------------|
| | MPEG-4 (.3gp) | MPEG-4 video image |
| | MPEG-4 (.ASF) | MPEG-4 video image |

Sound Files

| Icon | Format & Extension | Description |
|------|---------------------------|---|
| | SMAF (.mmf) | Melody via Web or Super Mail (may include images) |
| | Melody (.smd) | Melody via Web or Sky/Super Mail |
| | Original Ring Tone (.sjm) | Original Melody |
| | Voice ² | Voice/sound you recorded (forwardable) |
| | Audio (.mp4) | Downloaded Chaku-Uta (unforwardable) |

¹ Blue icon: forwardable, red icon: unforwardable

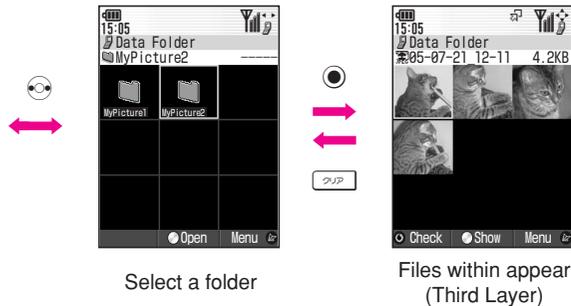
² Extensions do not appear for Voice files.

Opening Files

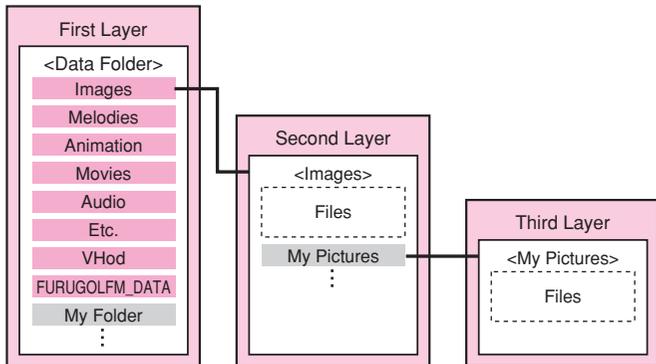
Selecting Folders

In Data Folder, select a folder and press **Enter**.

- Files or folders appear (second layer). To reach the third layer, select a folder and press **Enter**.
- Select a file and press **Enter**. The content plays or appears.



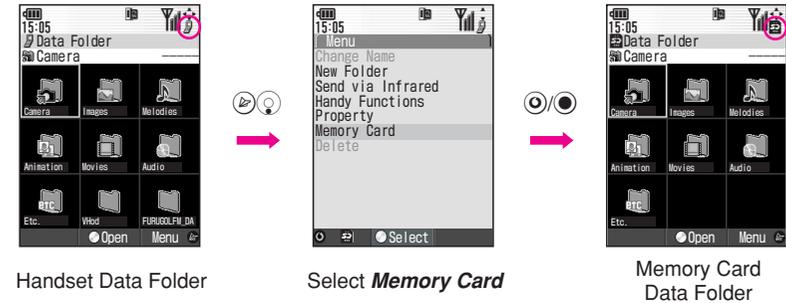
- Press **Return** to return to the upper layer.
- Create up to three layers to organize files. **My Folder** and **My Pictures** in the figure below are created folders.



Memory Card Data Folder

Toggle between handset and Memory Card Data Folder.

Check the display indicator (📱: handset, 🗃️: Memory Card).

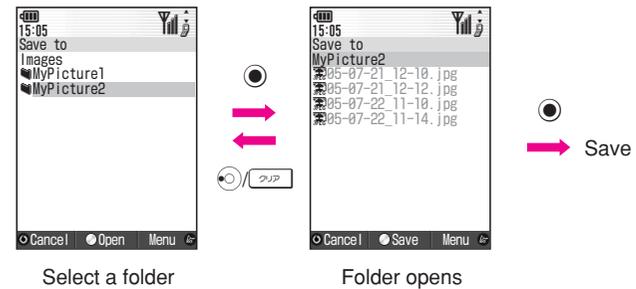


Select **Handset** to switch back to handset Data Folder.

Saving Files

Select a folder to save Original Ring Tones, animation, files obtained via Web or Super Mail, vFiles, etc.

- Enter a file name if needed.
- Appropriate folders may open automatically when saving files (in the figure below, Images folder opens for JPEG image).
- Only folders supporting the file can be selected.



Tip If the same file name already exists, **XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Display Settings

Switching File View

View files by image or name (see P.12-4).

- This setting applies to all folders.
- **List** is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Menu (⌂) ▶ Handy Functions

1 Select **List** or **List File Names** and press ●

- This setting remains until you change it.

Sorting Files

This setting applies to all folders.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Menu (⌂) ▶ Handy Functions ▶ Auto Sort

1 Select an item and press ●

Note Files in folders containing 181 or more files are not sorted. Folder contents may take long to appear when many files are sorted.

Opening Files

Handset Data Folder

Index Menu ▶ My Files

1 Select **Data Folder** and press ●

- To switch to Memory Card, press (⌂) **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press ●

2 Select a folder and press ●

- File names or images appear (see P.12-4 for File View).
- Sort files by date or name (see above).
- Selecting Folders: see P.12-6



3 Select a file and press ●

The content plays or appears.

- Press (⏪) to open the previous file, and press (⏩) to open the next one.



Opening Burst Shot Files

Index Image appears. Use (⏪) to view single frames.

JPEG Images Exceeding W 240 x H 320 Dots

Images are reduced to fit Display. To restore the original size, press (⌂) **Menu**, select **Original Size** and press ●.

4 Press (⏪) to return to Data Folder



- Exchange files via infrared with compatible devices (see P.13-2).
- To select folders/files with MC Cursor, see P.1-14.

Sending Files via Super Mail

Attach files to Super Mail from Data Folder.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

1 Select a file and press (⌂) **Menu**

2 Select **Attachment** and press ●

- For JPEG images, select **1 Attach Full Image** or **3 Attach 1/4 Size** → Press ●
- For Original Ring Tones, select a file format (see (⌂) P.3-9) → Press ●

3 Enter recipient, complete other fields and send Super Mail (see Step 2 and onward on (⌂) P.3-3)

Sending Burst Shot Images

- Press ● → Select **My Files** → Press ● → Select **Data Folder** → Press ● → Select **連写** folder → Press ● → Select a file → Press ● → Select an image with (⏪) → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select **Attach Screen** → Press ● → Perform from Step 2 on (⌂) P.3-3

Sending Split Images

- To split an image (240 x 320 dots) into four frames and attach to Super Mail, follow these steps.
Press ● → Select **My Files** → Press ● → Select **Data Folder** → Press ● → Select a folder → Press ● → Select an image → Press (⌂) **Menu** → Select **Attachment** → Press ● → Select **2 Attach Split Mail** → Press ● → Select or enter recipient → Choose **1 Yes** → Press ● (See Step 3 and onward on (⌂) P.4-22.)
- Split Mail transmission charges are equivalent to sending four Super Mail messages.

Properties

Index Menu ► My Files

- 1 Open Data Folder or a folder within it, and select a folder or file
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Property** and press
 - Details appear.
 - Press to scroll down.
 - Item Descriptions

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| File Name | File name |
| Title¹ | Melody file name |
| Files² | The number of selected files |
| Type | File/folder type |
| Location | File/folder location |
| File Size | Data size in bytes ³ |
| Save Size | File size on handset/Memory Card |
| Date&Time | The date and time the file/folder was created |
| Copy/Fwd | OK: can be sent, edited or copied within Data Folder ⁴ |
| Save | OK: can be saved Invalid: not supported ⁴ |
| Transfer | OK: can be copied or transferred to Memory Card Invalid: not supported ⁴ |
| Setting⁵ | Valid: can be set as Wallpaper/Display Images |
| Folder Protect⁶ | On/Off |
| DF Protect | On/Off |
| Incoming Tone¹ | On/Off ⁴ |
| Sound Effects¹ | On/Off ⁴ |
| Group Ring Tone¹ | On/Off ⁴ |
| DCF⁵ | Compatible: The file can be copied to Camera folder |
| Horizontal⁷ | Width in dots |
| Vertical⁷ | Length in dots |

¹Appears for melody files.

²Appears when multiple files are selected (see P.12-45).

³Total data size when multiple files are selected (see P.12-45).

⁴When multiple files with different status are selected, **Invalid** (for Copy/Fwd, Save and Transfer) or **On** (for Incoming Tone, Sound Effects and Group Ring Tone) takes priority.

⁵Appears for JPEG images.

⁶Appears for folders.

⁷Appears for JPEG, PNG, MTN, MNG or EVA images (does not appear if file size exceeds 40 KB).

Animation File

Simple Animation

Select up to four images to create Simple Animation. Images appear one after another at the selected tempo.

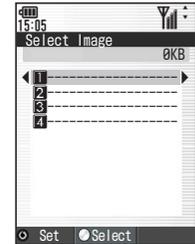
- Use PNG or JPEG images captured with mobile camera or obtained via Web/Super Mail.
- When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.12-45).
- Image quality may change when used for animation.

Creating Simple Animation

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 2 ► Animation ► Animation Tool ► Simple Animation ► New

- 1 Enter title and press
 - Enter title to proceed (up to 24 single-byte characters).
 - Files are saved by title by default; change file names later (see P.12-44).
- 2 Select tempo and press

In animation, images appear in numerical order at the tempo.



- 3 Select a number and press
- 4 Select an image in Data Folder and press
 - For operations in Data Folder, see P.12-8.
 - To use a 4-Burst Shot (all frames), press ► Select **連写** folder ► Press ► Select a Burst Shot file ► Press ► Select **Four Images** ► Press
 - To use a Burst Shot frame, press ► Select **連写** folder ► Press ► Select a Burst Shot file ► Press ► Select **One Image** ► Press ► Select quality and size ► Press ► Select an image with ► Skip ahead to Step 6
 - To start over from selecting an image in Data Folder, press **Change**.
 - To start over from Step 3, press **Back**.

5 Select quality and size and press **⏻**

• 240 x 320 cannot be selected for W 120 x H 160 or smaller images.

■ To change the image, press **⏪** **Change** **➡** Start over from Step 4

6 Press **⏻**

The image is set.

■ To play animation, press **⏪** **Menu** **➡** Select **1 Play** **➡** Press **⏻**

■ Press **⏪** **Back** to return.

■ To change images, select one **➡** Press **⏪** **Menu** **➡** Select **2 Change** **➡** Press **⏻** **➡** Start over from Step 4

■ To compress or reduce the size, select an image **➡**

Press **⏪** **Menu** **➡** Select **3 Compress or Reduce** **➡** Press **⏻**

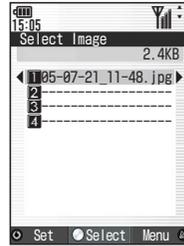
➡ Select **1 Compress** or **2 Reduce** **➡** Press **⏻** **➡** Choose

1 Yes **➡** Press **⏻**

■ Some images cannot be compressed or reduced.

■ To delete images, select one **➡** Press **⏪** **Menu** **➡** Select **4 Delete** **➡** Press **⏻** **➡**

Choose **1 Yes** **➡** Press **⏻**



7 Repeat Steps 3 - 6 to add images

■ Select up to four images.

8 Press **⏻** **Set** when finished

■ To change title, tempo or image, select **2 Edit** **➡** Press **⏻** **➡** Perform from Step 2 below

9 Select **1 Save** and press **⏻**

10 Press **⏻**

The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).

• Select other folders or Memory Card to save animation.



If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Editing Animation

When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.12-45).

Index Menu

➡ Functions **➡ Settings 2** **➡ Animation** **➡ Animation Tool** **➡ Simple Animation** **➡ Data Folder**

1 Select animation and press **⏻**

2 Edit title and press **⏻**

3 Select tempo and press **⏻**

■ To add images, select a number **➡** Press **⏻** **➡** Select an image **➡** Press **⏻** **➡** Select quality and size **➡** Press **⏻** twice

■ To change images, select a number **➡** Press **⏪** **Menu** **➡** Select **2 Change** **➡** Press **⏻**

➡ Select an image **➡** Press **⏻** **➡** Select quality and size **➡** Press **⏻** twice

■ To delete images, select a number **➡** Press **⏪** **Menu** **➡** Select **4 Delete** **➡** Press **⏻**

➡ Choose **1 Yes** **➡** Press **⏻**

4 When finished editing, press **⏻** **Set**

5 Select **1 Save** and press **⏻**

Save location appears. Skip ahead to Step 7.

• When title is the same, options appear.

6 Select **1 New Entry** and press **⏻**

■ To overwrite, select **2 Overwrite** **➡** Press **⏻** (Omit the next step.)

7 Press **⏻**

The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).

• Select other folders or Memory Card to save animation.



If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Converting Animation Format

Convert JPEG or PNG Animation file to **MNG File** to send to PCs or other devices.

• Image quality may change after conversion.

• Animation can only be converted when **MNG File Conversion** appears.

Index Menu

➡ My Files **➡ Data Folder** **➡ Open a folder** **➡ Select animation** **➡ Menu (⏪)** **➡ Other Edit Functions** **➡ MNG File Conversion**

1 Press **⏻**

The animation is saved as a new entry.

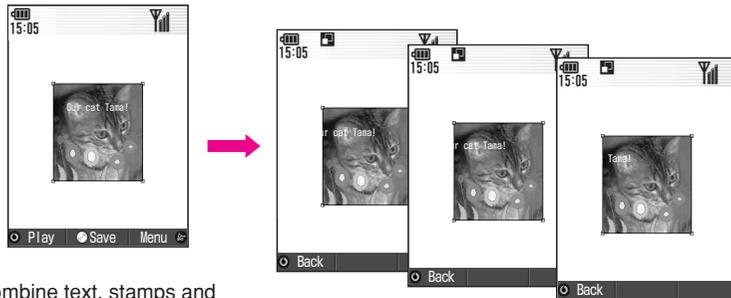


• When converted from JPEG Animation, MNG files open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. To send MNG files to other packet-enabled handsets, convert from PNG Animation.

• Some animation files may not be converted.

Creating E-Animation

Combine original text and preset stamps to create animation. Add background image/melody.



Combine text, stamps and background images

Combined text and stamps appear animated

Animations are saved as **E-Animation** files with a .nva extension.

Note E-Animation files (extension: .nva) open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. With Long Mail-compatible Sharp handsets (J-SH04 or later), images/sounds may not appear/play properly.

Entering Text & Stamps

Before creating your E-Animation files, read below to learn how to add text and stamps to animation.

Selecting Text or Stamps

In **Add Stamp/Text** window, select **1 Character Entry** or **2 Stamps**.

- Enter up to 3 text entries/stamps or 29 KB.

Tip The number of text entries or stamps you can use may decrease depending on the complexity of animation.

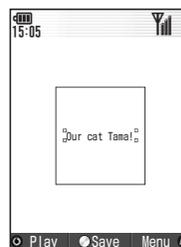
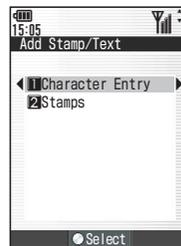
Entering Text

1 Enter text for animation

Enter text and press **Enter**.

- Entered text appears. Four squares (□) indicate the text is selected.
- Enter up to 150 single-byte characters per text.

Tip When multiple text or stamps are entered, move four squares with **Left/Right** to select an item to edit.



2 Change text position

Move text to target location with **Left/Right** and press **Enter**.

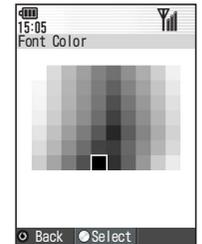
- To adjust the shift amount, press **Menu** → Select **Range Setting** → Press **Enter** → Enter a value (01 - 20) → Press **Enter**
 - Change in shift amount for text affects the shift amount for stamps, and vice versa.
- To clear text, press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press **Enter**
 - Choose **Yes** → Press **Enter**



3 Change color

Press **Menu**, select **4 Font Color** and press **Enter**.

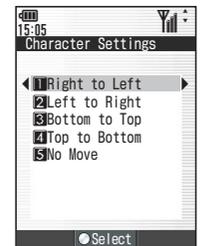
- Select a color with **Left/Right** and press **Enter**.



4 Select action

Press **Menu**, select **5 Character Settings** and press **Enter**.

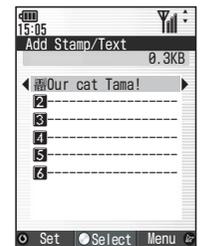
- Select a direction to scroll text and press **Enter**.



5 Save the text

Press **Enter** to save settings.

- Add additional text or stamps as needed.
 - To change the order of saved items, select one → Press **Menu** → Select **3 Move** → Press **Enter** → Select target location with **Left/Right** → Press **Enter**
 - To edit saved text, select one → Press **Menu** → Select **4 Change** → Press **Enter** → Edit text → Press **Enter** twice



Entering Stamps

1 Select source

Select **1 Preset Patterns** or **2 Data Folder** (stamps obtained via Web or Super Mail) and press **Enter**.

- For **2 Data Folder**, handset Data Folder (Animation) opens.

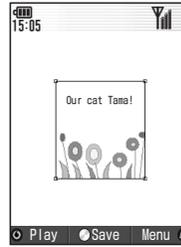
2 Select a stamp

Select a stamp and press **Enter**.

- Stamp appears in the center.
- Four squares (□) indicate the stamp is selected.



When multiple text or stamps are entered, move four squares with **Left/Right** to select an item to edit.



3 Enlarge or reduce stamps

Select from the following keys and press **Enter**.

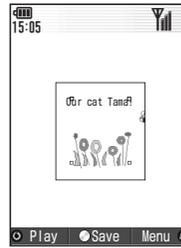
- Four squares (□) appear in red when enlarging/reducing.

| | | |
|----------------|--------|--------------------------|
| Enlarge/Reduce | 3 DEF | Enlarge the entire stamp |
| | 7 POKY | Reduce the entire stamp |
| | 2 ASC | Enlarge vertically |
| | 6 WPD | Enlarge horizontally |
| | 8 TUV | Reduce vertically |
| | 4 GHI | Reduce horizontally |

- Alternatively, press **Menu** and select **Enlarge/Reduce**.

To flip stamps, select a stamp → Press **Menu** → Select **Flip Upside Down** or **Switch Left&Right** → Press **Enter**

To delete stamp, press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press **Enter** → Choose **Yes** → Press **Enter**

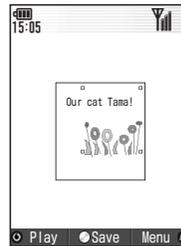


Some stamps do not support all the features.

4 Change the position

Move stamps with **Left/Right** and press **Enter**.

- Adjust the shift amount of four squares (see P.12-15).

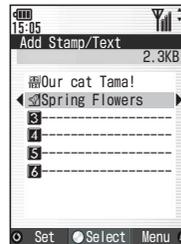


5 Save the stamp

Press **Enter** to save settings.

To change the order of saved items, select one → Press **Menu** → Select **Move** → Press **Enter** → Select target location with **Left/Right** → Press **Enter**

To replace saved stamps, select one → Press **Menu** → Select **Change** → Press **Enter** → Select another stamp → Press **Enter**



Creating E-Animation

When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.12-45).

Index Menu → **Functions** → **Settings 2** → **Animation** → **Animation Tool**

1 Select **E-Animation** and press **Enter**

If there is temporarily saved E-Animation (see P.12-18), **Temporary Saved File Edit?** appears. Choose **Yes** and press **Enter** to complete the animation.

2 Enter title and press **Enter**

Enter title to proceed (up to 24 single-byte characters).

3 Select a size of animation (Stage Size) and press **Enter**

4 Setting the Background

1 Select **Data Folder** and press **Enter**

2 Select an image and press **Enter**

3 Press **Enter**



Some images cannot be set as backgrounds, or text and stamps may not be entered.

Proceeding without Background

1 Select **No Background** and press **Enter**

5 Select a number and press **Enter**

- Saved items overlap each other in numerical order.

6 Entering Text

1 Select **Character Entry** and press **Enter**

2 Enter text

Entering Text: see P.12-14

Entering Stamps

1 Select **Stamps** and press **Enter**

2 Enter a stamp

Entering Stamps: see P.12-15



Depending on type of the entered stamp, the background, text or other stamps may not appear. Resize or move the stamp, or change the order of saved items (see P.12-15).

7 Repeat Steps 5 - 6 to add text or stamps

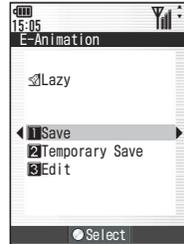
- To play animation, press **Menu** → Select **1 Play All** → Press ●
 - Press ● to stop.
- To add background image, press **Menu** → Select **4 Background Setting** → Press ●
 - Select an image → Press ● twice
- To add background melody, press **Menu** → Select **7 Set BGM** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● → Select a melody → Press ●

8 Press ● **Set** when finished

- To edit animation, select **3 Edit** and press ● (see Step 3 and onward on P.12-19).



E-Animation cannot be edited once saved by **1 Save**. Select **2 Temporary Save** for later editing (only one animation can be temporarily saved).



9 Select **1 Save** or **2 Temporary Save** and press ●

- E-Animation Editable** appears for **2 Temporary Save** → Press ● **OK** (Omit the next steps.)

10 Choose **1 Yes** and press ●

- To cancel, choose **2 No** → Press ● → Start over from Step 9

11 Press ●

- The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).
- Select other folders or Memory Card to save animation.



If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

3 Edit title and press ●

4 Set the background and press ●

5 Select text or stamp, press ● and edit it

- To enter text or stamps, see P.12-14 - 12-16.
- To change background image, press **Menu** → Select **4 Background Setting** → Press ● → Press ● **Change** → Select another image → Press ● twice
- To add background melody, press **Menu** → Select **7 Set BGM** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● → Select a melody → Press ●

6 When finished editing, press ● **Set**

- To edit E-Animation, select **3 Edit** → Press ● → Start over from Step 3

7 Select **1 Save** or **2 Temporary Save** and press ●

- E-Animation Editable** appears for **2 Temporary Save** → Press ● **OK** (Omit the next steps.)

8 Choose **1 Yes** and press ●

9 Press ●

- The animation is saved to Data Folder (Animation).
- Select other folders or Memory Card to save animation.



If the same file name already exists, ~XX (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.

Opening Animation Files

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder**

1 Select a folder and press ●

- To switch to Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press ●

2 Select animation file and press ●

- The selected animation plays.
- Press ● **Back** to stop.
- Using Images & Animation: see P.12-20

Editing Temporarily Saved E-Animation

- When there is no temporarily saved E-Animation, create new one (see P.12-17).
- When memory is full, delete files to free some space (see P.12-45).
- E-Animation cannot be edited once completely saved (by **1 Save**).

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 2** ▶ **Animation** ▶ **Animation Tool**

1 Select **2 E-Animation** and press ●

Temporary Saved File Edit? appears.

2 Choose **1 Yes** and press ●



To create new animation, choose **2 No** and press ●. See Step 2 and onward on P.12-17 for more.

Using Images & Animation

Some images may not be used.

Changing Display Size

1 Open a file and press

Display size toggles between **100% (with indicators)**, **100% (no indicators)**, **Enlarged (with indicators)** and **Enlarged (no indicators)**.

- Size may not be changed or size options may vary depending on the file. When enlarged, the entire image may not appear on Display.
- : 100%, : Enlarged

Show & Hide Indicators

■ To toggle indicators on and off from Menu, follow these steps.

Press  → **Select My Files** → Press  → **Select  Data Folder** → Press 
→ **Select a folder** → Press  → **Select a file** → Press  → Press  **Menu**
→ **Select Show Indicators or Hide Indicators** → Press 

- **Show Indicators** or **Hide Indicators** can be selected only for compatible files.

Setting Image & Animation as Wallpaper

Save As Wallpaper can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Open a folder** ▶ **Open a file** ▶ **Menu** ()

1 Select **Save As Wallpaper** and press

■ For more, see Steps **4** - **5** in "Original Images" on P.7-2.

- Options for Wallpaper Display do not appear for some images, depending on size. In this case, press  to complete.

Setting Image & Animation as Display Images

To Display Images can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Open a folder** ▶ **Open a file** ▶ **Menu** ()

1 Select **To Display Images** and press

2 Select an item and press

■ For more, see Step 4 and onward on P.7-5.

Saving Burst Shot Images

Save all frames and Index Image of a Burst Shot file () as individual images at one time, or select a single image to save.

Individual Burst Shot images are saved to Data Folder (Images) in JPEG format. (Source file remains.)

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **連写** ▶ **Open a Burst Shot file**

1 Saving All Images Individually

1 Press **Menu**

2 Select **Save Single Frames** and press

Saving a Single Image

1 Select a frame or Index Image with and press **Menu**

2 Select **Save Screen** and press

Slide Show

All images in Data Folder (Images) or Camera folder appear sequentially.

Adjust Slide Show speed. Use Slide Show Wipe; images are gradually replaced with the next image either from top, bottom, left or right.

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Open a folder**

1 Select an image and press **Menu**

2 Select **Slide Show** and press

3 Select **Slide Show** and press

Slide Show starts from the selected image.

■ To stop Slide Show, press .

■ To resume, press .

■ To skip images manually, press  **Next**.

Setting Interval

■ Interval is **Standard** by default. To change interval, follow these steps.

After Step 2 above, select **Display Speed** → Press  → **Select an interval** → Press 

Wipe Directions

■ Slide Show Wipe is **Off** by default. To set wipe direction, follow these steps.

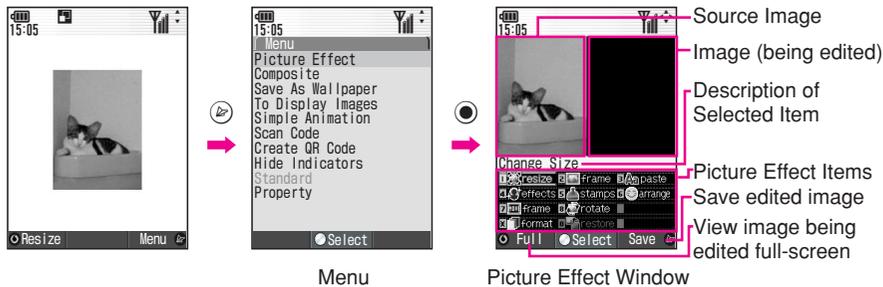
After Step 2 above, select **Slide Show Wipe** → Press  → **Select from**
2 **Wipe ↓** to 3 **Combination** → Press 

Editing Images

Open an image file (see Steps 1 - 3 on P.12-8 - 12-9) and follow these steps to open Picture Effect window.

Press **Menu** → **Select Picture Effect** → Press **OK**

- Some functions may not be available and menu items may vary by file type.



- Use Multi Selector or Keypad to select a Picture Effect item.
- The editing procedure is described on P.12-22 - 12-29. To save edited images, see below.

Saving Edited Images

After applying effects, press **OK** or **OK** to return to Picture Effect window. To save edited image, follow these steps.

Press **Save** → **Change the title (up to 24 single-byte characters)** → Press **twice**

- To cancel, press **Cancel**.
- To change the save location, press **Folder** → Select another folder → Press **OK**
- To switch to Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **OK**

Changing Image Size

Resize images in Data Folder to send via Super Mail or set as Wallpapers.

- Alternatively, crop image for size. File size changes when images are resized.
- Images may not appear depending on the size.
- **Change Size** can be selected only for compatible files.

Resize to Preset Size

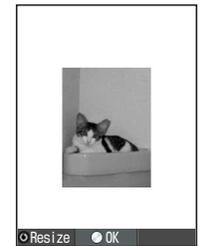
Index Menu

▶ My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (☰)
▶ Picture Effect → Change Size

- 1 Select from **1 Wallpaper** to **5 Alarm** and press **OK**
Image appears with a rectangle indicating display size (see below).

| | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Wallpaper | W 240 x H 320 dots |
| Sha-mail Size | W 120 x H 160 dots |
| Power On/Off | W 240 x H 260 dots |
| Incoming Call | W 240 x H 80 dots |
| Alarm | W 240 x H 100 dots |

- To start over from selecting preset size, press **Folder**.



- 2 **Selecting Display Area**

1 Use **Move** **to specify display area**

- Display area may not be specified depending on image size.

Enlarge or Reduce

1 Press **Resize**

Move appears in the left bottom corner.

2 Press **Enlarge** **to enlarge and** **Reduce** **to reduce the size, and press** **OK**

- To soften images, press **Soft**.

- 3 Press **OK**

- 4 Press **Save**

To save the edited image, see P.12-22.

- To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Cropping Images

Index Menu

▶ My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (☰)
▶ Picture Effect → Change Size → Cut

- 1 Use **Move** **to move** **+** **to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press** **OK**

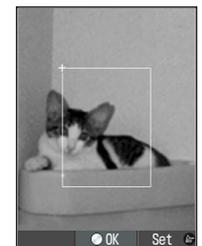
- 2 Use **Move** **to move** **+** **to the lower right corner of the portion**

- To start over, press **Back** → Return to Step 1

- 3 Press **Set**

- To select another size, press **Folder**.

- For more, see Step 2 and onward in "Resize to Preset Size" above.



Entering Text

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect

- Select Paste Text and press** ●
 - **Paste Text** can be selected only for compatible files.
 - To specify the color, press ● **Color** ▶ Select a combination ▶ Press ●
 - To hide outline of characters, press ● **Color** ▶ Select **Border** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press ●
- Select Free Text and press** ●
 - To enter the date, select **Date** ▶ Press ● ▶ Skip ahead to Step 4
- Enter text and press** ●
 - Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.
 - Scan Code feature is disabled.
 - To reenter text, press ● **Back** ▶ Start over from Step 2
- Use** ● to move text or date to target location and press ●
 - To save the edited image, see P.12-22.
 - To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Adding Stamps

- Choose from preset stamps, images captured with mobile camera, and images or animation obtained via Web or Super Mail.
- Use PNG images as stamps. Some images may not be used.
- **Stamps** can be selected only for compatible files.

Preset Stamps

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Stamps

- Select from Target Lock - Critter Paw Prints and press** ●
 - To use Custom Screen stamps, select **Custom Screens** ▶ Press ●
 - Available only when Custom Screen is set.
 - To change the stamp, press ● **Back** ▶ Select another ▶ Press ●
- Use** ● to move stamp to target location and press ●
 - To save the edited image, see P.12-22.
 - To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Data Folder Images

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect ▶ Stamps

- Select Original and press** ●
- Select an image from Data Folder (see P.12-8) and press** ●
 - To change the stamp, press ● **Back** ▶ Start over from Step 1
- Use** ● to move stamp to target location and press ●
 - To save the edited image, see P.12-22.
 - To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Visual Effects

Dress up images with preloaded visual effects.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images including Burst Shot files.
- Use images between W 52 x H 52 and W 240 x H 320 dots. Images larger than W 240 x H 320 dots are automatically cropped and centered.
- **Effects** can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (⌂)
▶ Picture Effect

- Select Effects and press** ●



Decorations are added to all frames and Index Image when using Burst Shot captured in Sha-mail mode. To decorate a single image, use ● and display the individual image first.

- Select an effect and press** ●

- Picture Effects:

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| Sepia | Renders image in sepia tones |
| Sparkling | Adds sparkling effect to bright portions of an image |
| Soap Bubbles | Superimposes bubbles over an image |
| Kaleidoscope | Renders an image as a kaleidoscopic image |
| Emboss | Renders images in black and white relief |
| Scrunch | Renders image as a pencil sketch |
| Aluminum Can | Superimposes image onto a 3D can image |
| Round Frame | Adds a round, opaque frosting to the edges of an image |
| Soft Frame | Adds an soft, opaque edged frame to image |
| Zigzag Frame | Adds a jagged edged frame around image |

3 Press

To save the edited image, see **P.12-22**.

To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Note Edited images may be too large to save or send via Super Mail.

Face Arrange

- Make smiley, angry or sad faces.
- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Use portrait images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (see **P.12-27**).
- **Face Arrange** can be selected only for compatible files.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu
 ▶ Picture Effect ▶ Face Arrange

1 Select a type and press

| | | | |
|---------------------------|--|-------------------|--|
| Mirror: Right-half | Copies right side of face onto left side | Slender | Stretches face to lengthen appearance |
| Mirror: Left-half | Copies left side of face onto right side | Crush Face | Shortens distance between top and bottom of face |
| Grin | Pulls eyes down & mouth up | Dark | Darkens skin tone |
| Mad | Pulls eyes up & mouth down | Fair | Brightens skin tone |
| Sad | Pulls eyes & mouth down | Angry Mark | Adds a stress mark to face |

To check the current positions of targets, press **Parts**.

Press **Back** to return.

To adjust the positions, see Step 1 and onward on **P.12-27**.

To start over, press **Back**.

2 Press

To save the edited image, see **P.12-22**.

To cancel the effect, press **Restore**.

Note When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Face Arrange Position

After Face Arrange (see **P.12-26**), change the positions and sizes of targets to fit your images. Changes apply to the current image only.

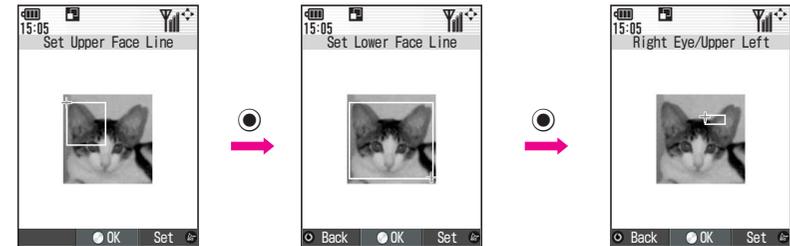
1 Press **Parts**

Face Arrange targets appear.

2 Press **Modify**

A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

3 Set the face line



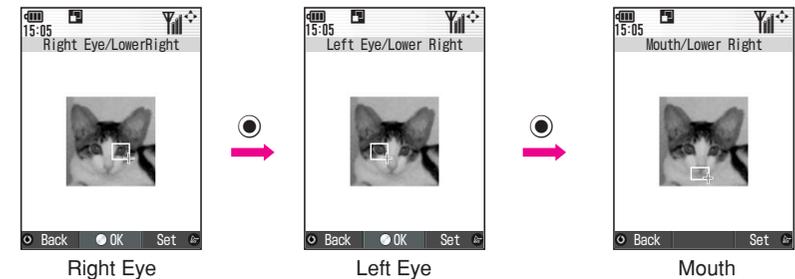
Use to move + to the upper left corner

Use to move + to the lower right corner

Face line is set

To start over, press **Back**.

4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way



Right Eye

Left Eye

Mouth

5 Press **Set** when finished

After **Arranging Face...**, all the targets appear.

To start over from the face line, return to Step 2.

To restore the original positions, press **Reset**.

6 Press

7 Choose **Yes** and press **OK**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted.

- Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Additional Picture Effects

Frame, **Moving Photo Frame**, **Rotate**, and **Change Format** can be selected only for compatible files.

Frames

Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images

Index Menu

My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (⌂)
→ Picture Effect → Frame

Select a frame → Press **OK** twice

- To use images in Data Folder, select **Original** → Press **OK** → Select a folder → Press **OK** → Select a file → Press **OK** twice
- To use Custom Screen stamps, select **Custom Screens** → Press **OK** twice
 - Available only when Custom Screen is set.
- To check frames, select one → Press **OK** **Show**
 - Press **OK** **Back** to return to Frame list.
- To save the edited image, see P.12-22.
- To cancel the effect, press **OK** **Restore**.

Rotate

Rotate images

Index Menu

My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (⌂)
→ Picture Effect → Rotate

Select a type → Press **OK*** → Press **OK**

*To rotate further, press **OK** **Rotate**. Each press rotates image by 90 degrees.

- To save the edited image, see P.12-22.
- To cancel the effect, press **OK** **Restore**.

File Format & Size

Convert image format to JPEG (📄) or PNG (📄), and change file size

Index Menu

My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (⌂)
→ Picture Effect → Change Format

Format

Select **Format** → Press **OK** → Select a format → Press **OK** →

Press **OK** **Set**

- To save the edited image, see P.12-22.

Size

Select **Size** → Press **OK** → Select a size → Press **OK** → Press **OK** **Set**

- To save the edited image, see P.12-22.

- Changing file format or size may affect image quality.

Moving Photo Frame

Add Moving Photo Frame to JPEG and PNG images to create animations

Index Menu

My Files → Data Folder → Open a folder → Open a file → Menu (⌂)
→ Picture Effect → Moving Photo Frame

Select a frame → Press **OK** twice

- To view file animation alone, select one → Press **OK** **Play**
 - Press **OK** **Back** to return to Moving Photo Frame list.
 - To save the edited image, see P.12-22.
 - To cancel the effect, press **OK** **Restore**.
- Animations are saved as **E-Animation** files with a .nva extension.

Note

Images with Moving Photo Frame open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. With Long Mail-compatible Sharp handsets (J-SH04 or later), images may not appear properly.

Tip

Moving Photo Frames are available in two sizes: W 120 x H 130 dots and W 240 x H 260 dots. The size is automatically selected to fit original images.

- **Original: W 120 x H 130 dots or smaller**

Moving Photo Frames: W 120 x H 130 dots

- **Original: Larger than W 120 x H 130 dots**

Moving Photo Frames: W 240 x H 260 dots

- **Original: Larger than W 240 x H 260 dots**

Moving Photo Frames (W 240 x H 260 dots) appear centered.

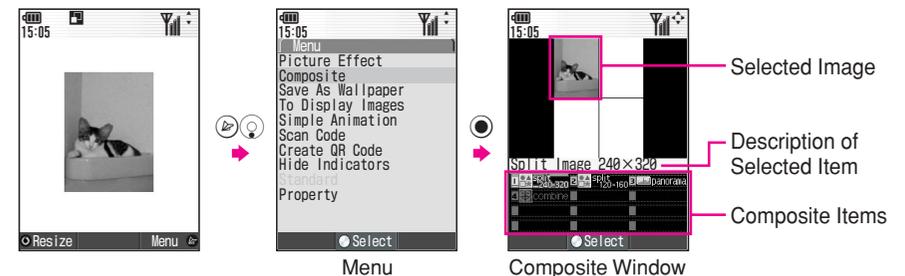
Frames cannot be added to some images. Resize or crop images to fit frame (see P.12-23).

Combining Images

Open an image file (see Steps 1 - 3 on P.12-8 - 12-9) and follow these steps to open Composite window.

Press **OK** **Menu** → Select **Composite** → Press **OK**

Some images may not be combined and menu items may vary by file type.



Split Screen

Combine up to four reduced images into one.

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images including Burst Shot images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.

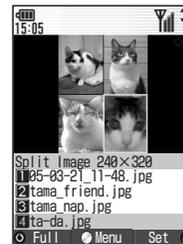


Split Image

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

- 1 Select an image for upper left and press ●
- 2 Press ⏏ **Menu**
- 3 Select **Composite** and press ●
- 4 Select **split 240 x 320** or **split 120 x 160** and press ●
- 5 Select a number and press ●
Handset Data Folder (Images) opens.
- 6 Select an image and press ●
 - Some images may not be selected.
 - To change the image, press ⏏ **Change**.
 - To start over from selecting a number, press ⏏ **Back**.

- 7 Press ●
- 8 Repeat Steps 5 - 7 to add images
 - To change images, select one ▶ Press ● **Menu** ▶ Select **Change** ▶ Press ● ▶ Start over from Step 6
 - To delete images, select one ▶ Press ● **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ●
- 9 Press ⏏ **Set** when finished
The current date and time appear as a title.
 - To cancel, press ⏏ **Cancel**.



10 Enter title and press ●

- To proceed without changing the title, press ●.
- To change the save location, press ⏏ ▶ Select another folder ▶ Press ●
- To switch to Memory Card, press ⏏ **Menu** ▶ Select **Memory Card** ▶ Press ●

11 Press ●

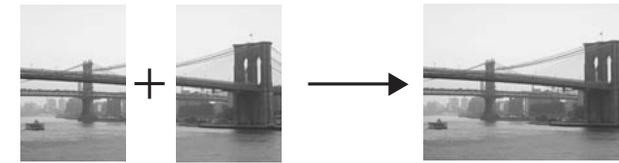
Image is saved as a new entry.

Using a Single Image of Burst Shot File

- In Step 6 on P.12-30, press ● (when files are listed by name) or ⏏ and follow these steps.
Select **複写 folder** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a Burst Shot file ▶ Press ● ▶ Use ●
to select an image ▶ Press ● ▶ Perform from Step 8 on P.12-30
 - 1/4 - 4/4, etc. is added to the file name.
- Index Image can be used (田 is added to the file name).

Panorama Images

Combine two images into one.



Select two images

Merge Panorama

Panorama Image Effects:

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Standard | Applicable to all kinds of shots |
| Near View | Best suited for close-up shots with parallax correction |
| Document | Use for images with text |

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if color tones are different between two images.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

- 1 Select an image and press ●
- 2 Press ⏏ **Menu**
- 3 Select **Composite** and press ●

4 Select **Merge Panorama** and press **Enter**

The first selected image appears on the left when combined.
• **Merge Panorama** can be selected only for compatible files.

5 Select **Handset Data Folder** and press **Enter**

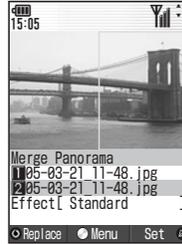
Handset Data Folder (Images) opens.

6 Select another image and press **Enter**

7 Press **Enter**

The selected image appears on the right. Two images are set.

- If the image is too large or too small, select another.
 - To check image, select either **Left** or **Right** → Press **Enter** → Select **Show Image** → Press **Enter**
 - To return, press **Back** → Press **Left**
 - To change images, select either **Left** or **Right** → Press **Enter** → Select **Change** → Press **Enter** → Select an image → Press **Enter** twice
 - To switch the positions, press **Back** → **Replace**.



8 Select **Effect** and press **Enter**

9 Select from **1 Standard** to **3 Document** and press **Enter**

10 Press **Set** when finished

Combined image appears.
• Use **Left** to scroll the image.

11 Press **Enter**

The current date and time appear as a title.

12 Enter title and press **Enter**

- To proceed without changing the title, press **Enter**.
- To cancel, press **Back** → **Cancel**.
- To change the save location, press **Left** → Select another folder → Press **Enter**
- To switch to Memory Card, press **Left** → **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **Enter**

13 Press **Enter**

Image is saved as a new entry.

Combining Split Mail Images

Use one of four Split Mail images to combine them all into one.

- Images may not be combined properly if file names of Split Mail images are changed, or the same file name exists.
- When combined, image quality may change.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder ▶ Open a file ▶ Menu (Enter) ▶ Composite ▶ Combine Split Mail

1 Press **Enter**

The saved date and time appear as a title.

2 Enter title and press **Enter**

- To proceed without changing the title, press **Enter**.
- To cancel, press **Back** → **Cancel**.
- To change the save location, press **Left** → Select another folder → Press **Enter**
- To switch to Memory Card, press **Left** → **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **Enter**

3 Press **Enter**

Image is saved as a new entry.

Melody Files

Some functions may not be available and menu items may vary by file type.

Playback Volume

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Melodies

1 Select a file and press **Enter** → **Menu**

2 Select **Playback Volume** and press **Enter**

3 Use **Left** to adjust the level and press **Enter**

Using for Incoming Tone/Sound Effects

Files cannot be used if the file name exceeds 24 single-byte characters.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Melodies

- 1 Select a file and press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Incoming Tone** or **Sound Effects** and press
 - **Incoming Tone** or **Sound Effects** can be selected only for compatible files.
- 3 Select an item and press

Editing Melodies & Adjusting Tone or Loudness

- Press ▶ Select **My Files** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Data Folder** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Melodies folder** ▶ Press ▶ Select a melody ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Other Edit Functions** ▶ Press
 - To edit melodies, select **Edit** ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 4 on **P.8-15**
 - To adjust tone, select **Tone** ▶ Press ▶ Perform Steps 10 - 13 on **P.8-13 - 8-14**
 - To adjust loudness, select **Adjust Loudness** ▶ Press ▶ Perform Steps 15 - 18 on **P.8-14**
- Melody files with a .smd extension are saved as Original Ring Tones (extension: .sjm) after **Edit**, **Tone** or **Adjust Loudness**.

Chaku-Uta

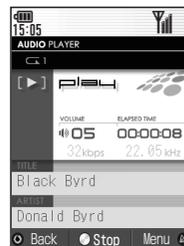
Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Playback

Play Chaku-Uta in Data Folder (Audio).

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Audio

- 1 Select a file and press
 - To set as Ring Tone, see **P.12-35**.
 - To stop playback, press (toggle between **Stop** and **Play**).
 - To adjust volume, press (up) or (down).
 - To skip, press (previous) or (next).
 - Playback Settings: see **P.12-35**



Note If sound is distorted, reduce volume level.

Playback Operations

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Replay | Press Press repeatedly to play previous music. |
| Skip | Press ¹ Press repeatedly to skip more. |
| Fast Forward | Press and hold Release for playback. |
| Fast Reverse | Press and hold Release for playback. |
| Pause | Press ² Press again to resume playback. |

¹Incompatible files are skipped.

²While playback is paused, Fast Forward, Fast Reverse and Skip are not available.

Playback Settings

Play Setting Set playback method

■ Set Repeat 1 while track information appears.
Default Repeat 1

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Audio ▶ Select a file ▶ Menu ▶ Play Setting

Select a mode ▶ Press

Using as Ring Tone

Incoming Tone Set Chaku-Uta in Data Folder (Audio) as Ring Tone

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Audio

Select a Chaku-Uta file ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Incoming Tone** ▶ Press ▶ Select an item ▶ Press

vFiles

Basics

vFile is a generic term for the file format by which Phone Book and Schedule entries, etc. are made transferable between V501SH and other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices. Using vFiles, use Phone Book or Schedule entries, etc. created on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices on V501SH, or manage V501SH Phone Book entries on a PC. vFile-compatible functions and vFile formats:

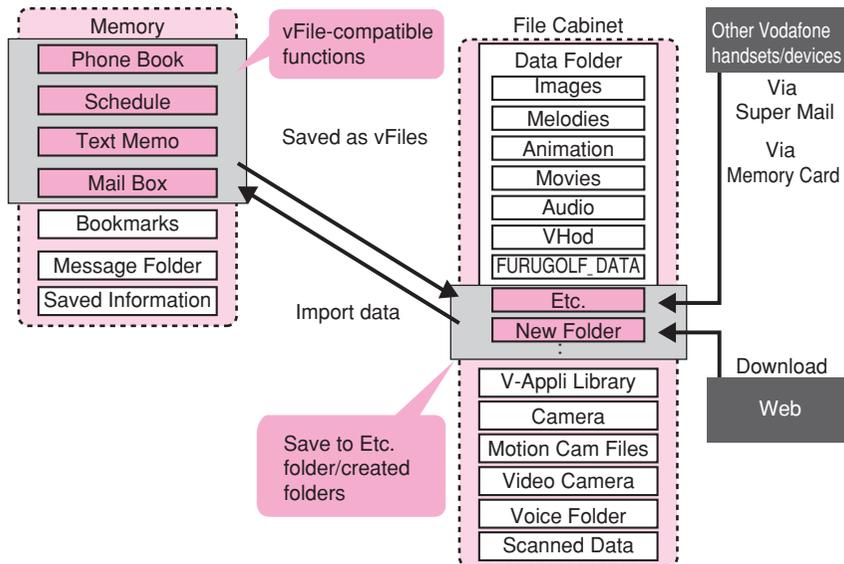
| Function | Icon | Format | Function | Icon | Format |
|-------------------------------|----------|-----------|------------------------|----------|-------------|
| Phone Book (Owner Profile) | ☎ (.vcf) | vCard | Text Memo ¹ | 📄 (.vnt) | vNote, Text |
| | | | Mail Message | ✉ (.vmg) | vMessage |
| Schedule | 📅 (.vcs) | vCalendar | Bookmark ² | 🔖 (.vbm) | vBookmark |

¹ 📄 (.txt): Memo format

² Some files may have a **.url** extension.

File Organization

V501SH Phone Book and Schedule entries, etc. are automatically converted to vFiles when saved to Data Folder (except for Bookmarks). Exchange vFiles with other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices via Super Mail, Web or Memory Card.



Exchanging vFiles with Vodafone Handsets

- Exchange vNote Text Memo via infrared with compatible Vodafone handsets (see P.13-2).

Exchanging vFiles with Other Devices

- Install vFile-compatible software. Some files may not be used on Vodafone handsets or other devices.
- Some PCs or memory card drives may not read Memory Card formatted on V501SH.
- V501SH may not read Memory Card formatted on other devices.

Using Super Mail

Sending via Super Mail

- 1 Create vFiles (see P.12-38)
- 2 Select files from Data Folder and send as Super Mail attachments (see P.3-8)
 - Send to Mail-compatible Vodafone handsets.

vFiles Obtained via Super Mail or Web

- 1 Save vFiles to Data Folder (see P.4-23)
- 2 Import vFile data (see P.12-39)

Using Memory Card

Use Memory Card to exchange vFiles with other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Note Bookmarks on Memory Card can only be used on your handsets. Some vFiles on Memory Card may not be used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Creating vFiles

V501SH Phone Book and Schedule entries, etc. are automatically converted to vFiles when saved to Data Folder.

1 Phone Book

1 Open a Phone Book entry (see P.5-13)

- Open Owner Profile to convert your profile (see P.2-22).

2 Press

Note

When a Phone Book entry is saved to Data Folder, Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice and Mail Folder settings are lost. Images set for Picture Call/Mail may be deleted depending on size.

Schedule

1 Open Schedule (see P.15-19)

2 Select an entry and press **Menu**

Text Memo

1 Open Text Memo (see P.4-18)

2 Select a memo and press **Menu**

Mail Message

1 Open Inbox, Sent or Outbox (see Steps 1 - 2 on P.4-2)

2 Select a message and press **Menu**

- Sky Melody message cannot be converted to vFile.

2 Select To Data Folder and press

3 Enter title and press

Handset Data Folder (Etc.) opens.

- Data can be saved to other folders.

To switch to Memory Card Data Folder, press  **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press  → Perform from Step 4 on P.12-46

4 Press

Importing vFiles

Save received vFiles to Data Folder (see  P.4-23) before importing to Phone Book, Schedule, etc.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder ▶ Open a folder

1 Select a vFile and press **Menu**

2 Phone Book

1 Select **Add to Phone Book** and press

2 Assign a Memory No. and save the entry (see P.5-5)

Schedule

1 Select **Save to Schedule** and press

2 Choose **1 Yes** and press

Text Memo

1 Select **Save to Text Memo** and press

2 Choose **1 Yes** and press

Mail Message

1 Select **Save to Mail Box** and press

- Messages are sorted into Inbox, Sent or Outbox.

Bookmarks

1 Select **Save to Bookmarks** and press

2 Select **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** and press



SVG Files

V501SH supports SVG-T (Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny). View graphics in SVG files, including tables and maps.

- For more information on SVG-T, visit <http://www.sharp.co.jp/j/> (Japanese only).
- Open a SVG file and press  **Guide** to see key assignments.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Scroll Up/Down & Left/Right |  |
| Scroll Pages |  (Up),  (Left),  (Right),  (Down) |
| Enlarge & Reduce |  (Enlarge),  (Enlarge Slightly),  (Reduce),  (Reduce Slightly),  (Original Size),  (Key Action) |

E-Books

Read a variety of E-Books (XPDF or Text format) on Memory Card.

Use handset as a dictionary by saving E-Book dictionaries.

- For details, access Sharp's **Space Town** Mobile Internet site (see **P.8-2**).
- Handset may not support sounds or images embedded in E-Books.
- For precautions on Memory Card, see **P.11-2**.

Reading Content

E-Books cannot be opened while Music Player is active or a V-Application is paused.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card*

1 Select **E-Book** and press **Enter**

E-Book list appears.

- When you press **Enter** to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.
- To read E-Books saved in other folders, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Change Folder** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press **Enter** (The selected folder will open next time.)

2 Select an E-Book and press **Enter**

• ○% indicates location of the current page.

- To see the title, author, etc., press **Menu** ▶ Select **Property** ▶ Press **Enter**
- If the E-Book is password protected, enter password ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Reading window opens

3 Press **Close** or **Home** to close

- Press **Close** to return to E-Book list.
- Alternatively, when **List** is on Display, press **Home** to return to E-Book list.
- When you press **Enter** to close Reading window, the same page will open next time.

Tip Save E-Book to User Shortcut (see **P.15-29**).

Key Assignments

Operations vary by writing style as follows:

| | Lateral | Vertical |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Up | Scroll up (by line) | Backward (by page) |
| Down | Scroll down (by line) | Forward (by page) |
| Left | Backward (by page) | Scroll left (by line) |
| Right | Forward (by page) | Scroll right (by line) |

Text Operations

- Jump to the first or last page.
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Home or End** ▶ Press **Enter**
- Move to a specific location.
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **% Shift** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Enter location by percentage (00 - 99) ▶ Press **Enter**
- Select chapter when a table of contents is contained.
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Contents** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a chapter ▶ Press **Enter**
- See **P.12-42** to use Bookmarks.
- Reading window settings:
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Display Settings** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select an item ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Change the setting ▶ Press **Enter**

| Item | Description | Default |
|----------------|--|---------------|
| Font Size | Select <i>Tiny, Small, Standard, Standard Plus</i> or <i>Large</i> | Standard |
| Text Direction | Read text vertically or horizontally | Vertical Text |
| Ruby | Show ruby annotations | Off |

- Above settings are not available for some E-Books.

Using Linked Info/Copying Text

- Use numbers, addresses or URLs to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites.
Select an item ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **OK** ▶ Press **Enter**
- Linked information cannot be used while other operations are paused (see **P.1-31** "Hot Switching").
- Some linked information may not be used.
- Copy text (up to 20 double or single-byte characters).
In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Copy** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Perform from Step 3 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on **P.4-17**

Mask & Jump

- Some E-Books may contain hidden text or images (masked info) or links (jump links).
 - Select a part with masked info and press **Enter** to show the text or image. Press **Enter** again to hide.
 - Select a part with jump link and press **Enter** to jump to the specified page. Press **Home** to return to the original location.

Bookmark

Add bookmarks to return to the pages easily.
Use two bookmarks per E-Book (for up to five E-Books).

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open E-Book*

- 1 Press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Bookmark** and press
- 3 Select **1 Bookmark 1** or **2 Bookmark 2** and press
Bookmark is added.

Auto Bookmark

- When you close Reading window, Auto Bookmark 1 is added to the last page you opened. The next time you close the same E-Book, Auto Bookmark 1 is replaced with Auto Bookmark 2, and added to the new last page.
 - Up to two Auto Bookmarks can be stored per E-Book, and will be deleted older first when another is added.

Opening Bookmarked Page

- In Reading window, press **Menu** ▶ **Select Move to Bookmark** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Select Bookmark 1, Bookmark 2, Auto Bookmark 1 or Auto Bookmark 2** ▶ **Press**

Using E-Book Images

Save as Wallpaper Save images as Wallpaper

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open E-Book* ▶ *Select an image*

Select **Save as Wallpaper** ▶ **Press**

- For more, see Step **21** and onward in "Original Images" on **P.7-2**.
- To cancel, press .
- Some images may not be used.

Embedded Information

Use information contained in images

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open E-Book* ▶ *Select an image*

Select **Jump to Link, Toggle Mask or Play Animation** ▶ **Press**

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Jump to Link | Select jump information to move to other pages. Use linked information to send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites (E-Book will close). See P.12-41 "Using Linked Info/Copying Text." |
| Toggle Mask | Hidden text or images appear |
| Play Animation | Flip animation plays |

- To cancel, press .

Using a Dictionary

Look Up Word

Use downloaded E-Book dictionaries to look up word definitions, etc.

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book* ▶ *Open an E-Book dictionary*

Select an entry field ▶ **Press** ▶ **Enter word** ▶ **Press**

- Select an entry and press to view its definitions.
- Key Assignments: see **P.12-41**

Property

Check details of E-Books

Index Menu ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *E-Book*

Select an E-Book ▶ **Press** **Menu** ▶ **Select Property** ▶ **Press**

- Press to scroll down and to scroll up.
- Press **Back** to return to E-Book list.

Editing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

Created folders support all the file formats just as Etc. folder does (see **P.12-3**).

- Create folders in the first and second layers (see **P.12-6**).
- Add folders to the default folders (Images, Melodies, Animation, Movies, Audio and Etc.) as well as to created new folders. (Folders in a layer cannot have the same name.)

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Press** **Menu**
 - To add to existing folders, select a folder, press then **Menu**.
- 2 Select New Folder and press**
- 3 Enter name and press**
 - To add more, repeat Steps 1 - 3.

Changing File/Folder Name

- The default folders cannot be renamed.
- File extensions do not change.
- The same file/folder name cannot be entered within a layer.
- Disable protection before renaming folders (see **P.12-45**).

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a file or folder and press** **Menu**
- 2 Select Change Name and press**
 - When the file is used for Incoming Tone, Sound Effects or Group Ring Tone, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- 3 Change the name and press**
 - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, |, ?, *, " and Pictographs are not supported.

Deleting Files & Folders

- When a folder is deleted, all items in the folder are also deleted.
- Default folders cannot be deleted.
- Disable protection before deleting folders (see below).
- V-Applications may not operate properly if related folders (**VHod**, etc.) or files within are renamed or deleted.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a file or folder and press** **Menu**
 - Selecting Multiple Files: see below
- 2 Select Delete and press**
- 3 Choose** **Yes** and press

Selecting Multiple Files

- To select multiple files in Data Folder, repeat the following steps.
 - Select a file** ▶ Press **Check**
 - To uncheck, press **Check** for files with (check up to 50 files).
 - Files in use for V-Application cannot be checked.
 - To reset all checkmarks, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Reset Check(s)** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Protecting Folders

Restrict access to folders in Data Folder. Security Code must be entered to use them.

- Protect up to 10 folders.
- Protect the default folders (Images, Melodies, Animation, Movies, Audio and Etc.) as well as created folders.

Index Menu ▶ My Files ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press** **Menu**
- 2 Select Handy Functions and press**
- 3 Select Protect Folders and press**
- 4 Enter Security Code**

- 5 Choose  On and press **
To cancel, choose ** Off** → Press 

Note

- The following folders cannot be protected.
 - Folders on Memory Card
 - Data Folder (Camera) and shortcut folders inside it
- Protection is canceled when all data is transferred at once from Memory Card to handset.
- V-Applications may not be downloaded properly if related folders are protected.

Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to other folders in Data Folder.

- Copy/forward protected files cannot be copied.
- The default folders support corresponding file formats (see **P.12-3**).
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Burst Shot files cannot be copied or moved.

Index Menu ▶ *My Files* → *Data Folder* → *Open a folder*

- 1 Select a file and press  Menu**
Selecting Multiple Files: see **P.12-45**

- 2 Select *Copy* or *Move* and press **

- 3 Select  Handset and press **

- To copy or move to Memory Card, select ** Memory Card** → Press 
- When moving a file used for Incoming Tone, Sound Effects or Group Ring Tone, ***Execute and Cancel Tone Setting?*** appears.
 - To cancel moving, choose ** No** → Press 
 - To cancel the settings and move, choose ** Yes** → Press 

- 4 Select a folder and press **

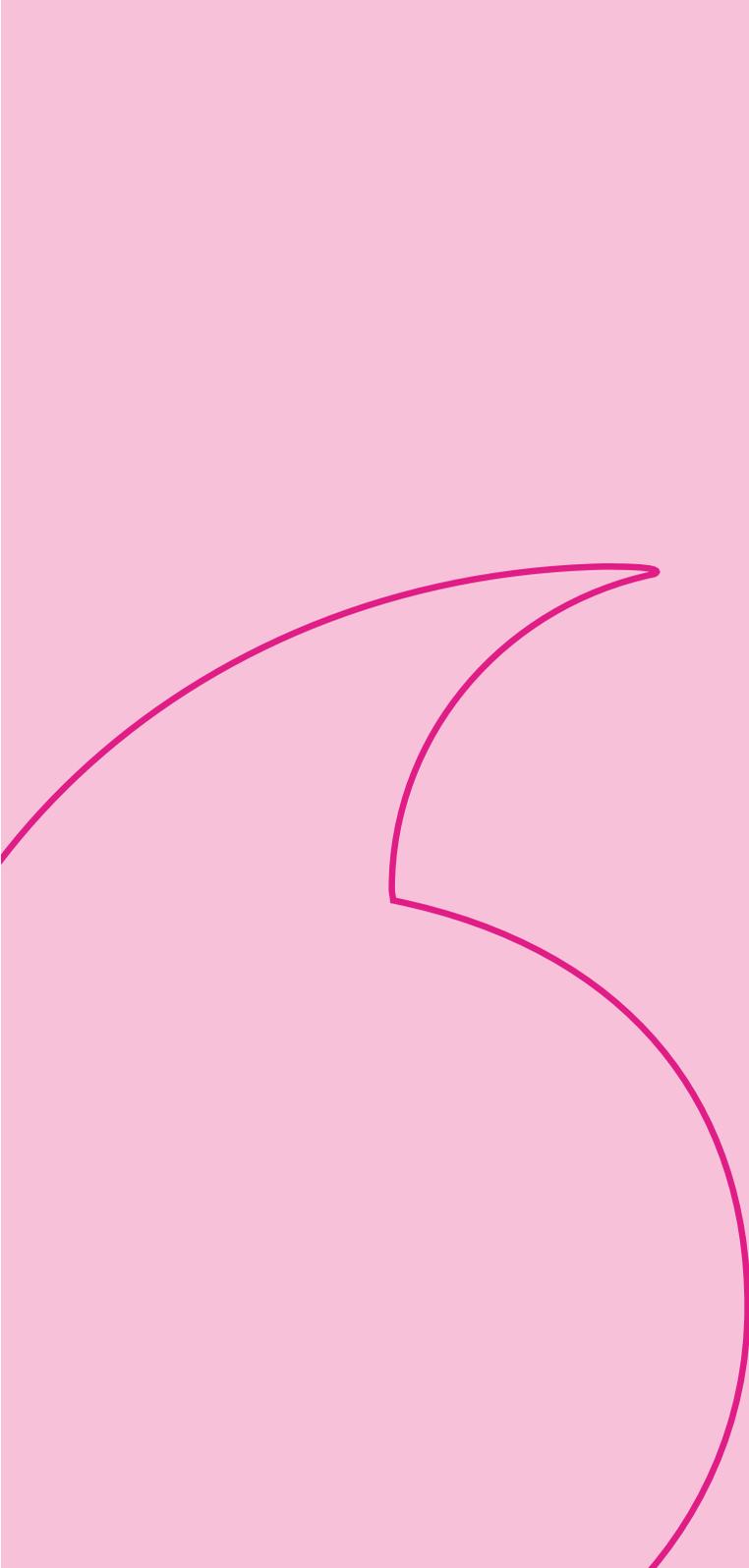
- 5 Press **

Note

Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices.

Tip

If the same file name already exists, ~**XX** (00 - 99 or aa - zz) is automatically added to the file name.



Infrared

Getting Started

Exchange information and files with infrared-compatible Vodafone handsets and other devices. Select from the following transfer options:

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| Send One File | Send files/entries one by one |
| Receive One File | Receive one file/entry from other handsets. Received files/entries are sorted into corresponding folders. |
| Send Folder | Send the entire Data Folder or a selected folder and its contents |
| Receive Folder | Receive the entire Data Folder or a selected folder and its contents from other handsets |
| Send All Files | Send all files/entries by function |
| Receive All Files | Receive all files/entries in a function of other handsets |

- V501SH complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.
- Infrared transfers are disabled while handset is connected to the Network (receiving/ sending mail or information) or while using Vodafone live! services.
- During infrared transfers, handset automatically enters Off-Line Mode (see **P.3-6**). Thus transfers are disabled while receiving calls/messages, during calls, while using Vodafone live! services, Music Player or Synchronize, while editing mail or data, etc. Off-Line Mode is canceled after transfers.

Available Files

| Function | One File | All Files | Note |
|---------------------------|-----------|-----------|--|
| Phone Book | Available | Available | In One File transfers, the following settings are lost: Group, Secret, Personal Ring Tone, Incoming Notice and Mail Folder. All File transfer includes Owner Profile (except handset phone number). |
| Schedule | Available | Available | In One File transfers, Secret Mode settings are lost |
| Text Memo | Available | Available | Note format only |
| Mail | Available | Available | |
| Data Folder* | Available | Available | In All File transfers, transfer the entire Data Folder or a selected folder. Copy protected files cannot be transferred. |
| Camera Mode Images | Available | N/A | Transfer a DCF format file of up to 900 KB |

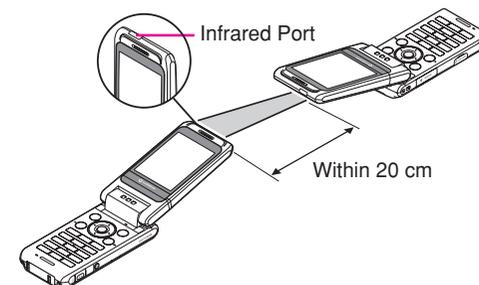
*Received Chaku-Uta files (.mp4) or Nancy files (.noa) are saved to Etc. folder as unknown files. Receive Bookmarks from compatible devices.

Note

- Files on Memory Card cannot be sent all at once. Phone Book, Schedule and Text Memo entries cannot be sent one by one.
- Files over 100 KB cannot be transferred (except Camera mode images).

Precautions

Bring handsets to within 20 cm and place the ports face-to-face. Do not place objects between handsets.



- Keep the ports face-to-face during transfer.
- Transfers may fail under direct sunlight or fluorescent lights, or near infrared equipment.
- Clean the ports with a soft cloth. Dirty ports may not transfer files properly.

Tip

When transfer fails, **Remote Device Not Found Reconnect?** appears. Take the above precautions and try again. (Choose **Yes** and press **OK**.)

IR Password

IR Password is specific for infrared transfers. Transfers are possible when passwords of both handsets match.

The password specified when receiving an infrared transfer for the first time remains valid. Use the procedure described below to change IR Password.

Index Menu ► **Briefcase** ► **Infrared** ► **Set IR Password**

1 Enter Security Code

2 Enter IR Password

Password is set and Infrared menu returns.

Tip

If IR Password is set by this procedure beforehand, password entry is not requested when receiving an infrared transfer for the first time.

Transferring Files

One File Transfer

Sending

Send one file or entry from Phone Book, Schedule, Text Memo, Mail or Data Folder.

1 Open file list and highlight a file

- Alternatively, for Phone Book, Schedule or Text Memo, open an entry.

2 Press **Menu**

- For files in Data Folder, select **Send via Infrared** Press

3 Select **Single File** for files in Data Folder or **Send via Infrared** for other files and press

Off-Line Mode is set and title entry window opens.

- When handset fails to enter Off-Line Mode, file list returns.



Phone Book Entry List

4 Edit title and press

- Source file or entry name remains unchanged. To proceed without changing the title, press .
- Camera mode files cannot be renamed.

5 Prepare recipient handset

6 Within 15 seconds, choose **Yes** and press

Transfer starts. When finished, file or entry list returns.

Receiving

Index Menu Briefcase Infrared Acquire

1 Enter Security Code

Standing by... appears and handset receives files if sent within 30 seconds.

(A confirmation appears.)

- Press to cancel.
- Press to end.

Tip

Infrared Password

- **IR Password?** appears when receiving an infrared transfer for the first time. Enter a 4-digit password to start receiving.
- The entered password remains valid. See P.13-3 to change the password.
- If incorrect, Infrared menu returns.

2 Choose **Yes** and press

File is saved and Infrared menu returns.

- To cancel transfer, choose **No** Press Choose **Yes** Press

All File Transfer

- Security Code and IR Password are required to transfer all files.
 - Security Code: see P.1-36
 - IR Password is required for infrared transfers. Transfers are possible when the passwords of both handsets match. To set recipient handset password before transfer, see P.13-3.
- To transfer all files in Data Folder, see P.13-6.

Sending

Index Menu Briefcase Infrared

1 Select **Transfer All** and press

Off-Line Mode is set.

- When handset fails to enter Off-Line Mode, Infrared menu returns.

2 Enter Security Code

3 Select an item and press

4 Prepare recipient handset

5 Enter IR Password

- For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No** Press

6 Within 15 seconds, choose **Yes** and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Transfer All menu returns.

- If IR Password is incorrect, Transfer All menu returns.

Receiving

Index Menu Briefcase Infrared Acquire

1 Enter Security Code

Standing by... appears and handset receives files if sent within 30 seconds.

(A confirmation appears.)

- Press to cancel.
- Press to end.
- When **IR Password?** appears, see P.13-4 "Infrared Password."

2 To Add Entries

1 Select **New Item** and press

Receiving... appears. When finished, Infrared menu returns.

To Overwrite Existing Entries

1 Select **Delete All & Save** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Infrared menu returns.

Note

When Phone Book is overwritten, all Owner Profile contents are deleted, except handset phone number.

Folders

Sending

Index Menu ► *My Files* ► *Data Folder*

- 1 Select a folder and press**  **Menu**
 - When sending the entire Data Folder, select any folder. Then press  **Menu** and proceed to Step 2.
- 2 Select *Send via Infrared* and press** 
- 3 Select *Folder (All)* or *Data Folder Files* and press** 

Off-Line Mode is set.

 - When handset fails to enter Off-Line Mode, Data Folder window returns.
 - For *Data Folder Files*, skip ahead to Step 5.
- 4 Edit title and press** 
- 5 Prepare recipient handset**
- 6 Within 15 seconds, choose**  **Yes** and press 

Transfer starts. When finished, Data Folder window returns.

Receiving

Index Menu ► *Briefcase* ► *Infrared* ► *Acquire*

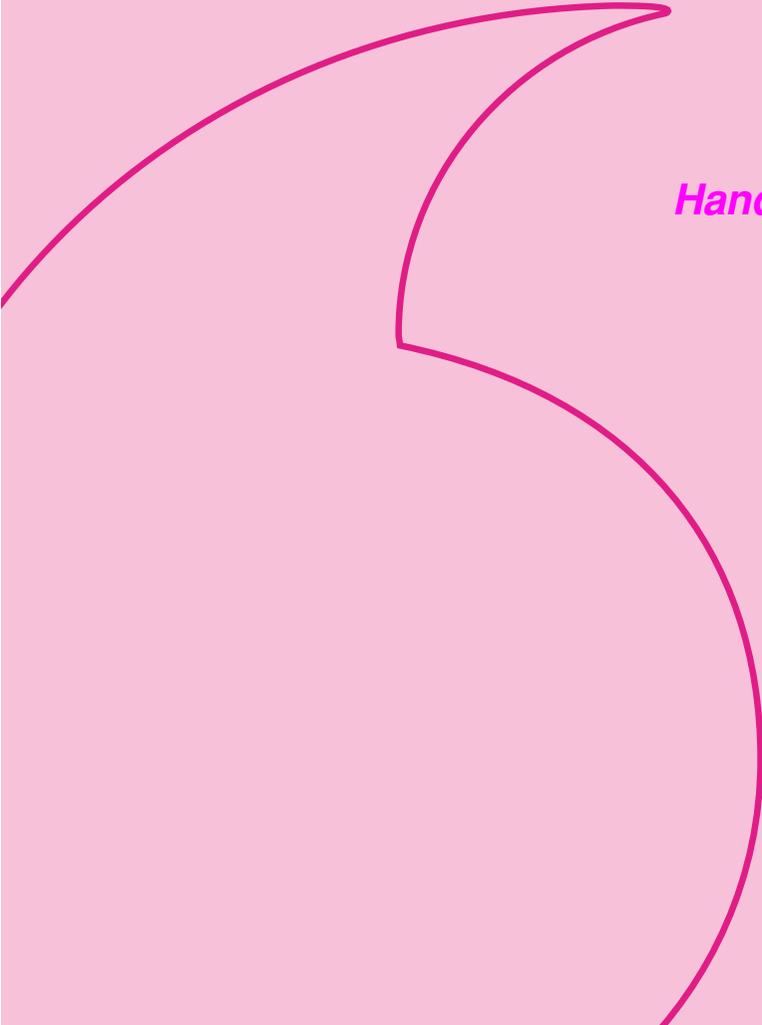
- 1 Enter Security Code**

Standing by... appears and handset receives files if sent within 30 seconds. When finished, Infrared menu returns.

Tip

If a folder with the same name already exists, ***Add to Handset Data Folder?*** appears.

- Choose  **Yes** and press . Contents are added to the folder.
- Choose  **No** and press  to end transmission. Infrared menu returns.



Handset Security

Changing Security Code

Whenever necessary, change Security Code.

Center Access Code cannot be changed from handset.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Change Code*

1 Enter current Security Code

Security Code: see **P.1-36**

If incorrect, Standby returns.

2 Enter new Security Code

3 Re-enter Security Code

If incorrect, Standby returns.

Handset Locks

Keypad Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Keypad Lock*

1 Enter Security Code

🔒 appears and Keypad Lock is set.

When Keypad Lock is Active

- In Standby, press **Ⓜ** for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power, **Ⓜ** for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Key Guard, **0 9999** - **9 9999** to enter Security Code or **Ⓜ** to edit Security Code entry. Emergency calls to Police (110), Fire (119) and Coast Guard (118) are possible.
- During a call, press **Ⓜ** to end the call, **Ⓜ** to answer another call or switch between callers in Call Waiting, **0 9999** - **9 9999** to enter Security Code or **Ⓜ** to edit Security Code entry.
- Answer calls by pressing **Ⓜ** or keys for Anykey Answer (see **P.2-6**). Press **Ⓜ** to forward incoming calls or press **Ⓜ** to place callers on hold. Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **Menu** and select **1 Accept Call**, **2 Hold**, **3 Reject Call**, **Message Recorder** or **Forward Voice Mail**.

Canceling

1 Enter Security Code

🔒 disappears and Keypad Lock is canceled.

- Keypad Lock can be canceled during calls.
- Keypad Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

Auto Key Lock

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Auto Key Lock*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Choose **1 On** and press **Ⓜ**

- Keypad Lock activates from the next time handset power is turned on.

Canceling

Cancel Keypad Lock (see **P.14-2**) first and follow these steps.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Auto Key Lock*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Choose **2 Off** and press **Ⓜ**

Phone Book Lock

Protect Phone Book entries from accidental alteration and restrict access to Phone Book information.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Phone Book Lock*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Choose **1 On** and press **Ⓜ**

- To cancel Phone Book Lock, choose **2 Off** ► Press **Ⓜ**

Note

When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

- Searching, saving, editing and dialing, including Speed Dial (see **P.5-14**)
- Creating QR Codes from Phone Book entries or Owner Profile (see **P.15-37**)

Restrict Dial

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Restrict Dial*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Choose **1 On** and press **Ⓜ**

- To cancel Restrict Dial, choose **2 Off** ► Press **Ⓜ**

When Restrict Dial is Active

- Dialing from Keypad is disabled except for emergency calls to Police (110), Fire (119) and Coast Guard (118).

Accept Call & Reject Call

Designate numbers from which to accept or reject calls.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Accept Call | Accept calls from designated numbers only. Calls from other numbers are rejected and caller hears a busy tone. |
| Reject Call | Reject calls from designated numbers. Caller hears a busy tone. |

- For rejected calls, **Missed Calls** appears in Information Menu (see P.2-18) and **Reject** appears in Call History.
- Accept Call and Reject Call operate only when Caller ID is sent.
- To reject calls with No Caller ID or Payphone calls, see P.14-5.
- Accept Call and Reject Call cannot be set at the same time.

Saving Entries

- Save at least one entry before activating Accept Call or Reject Call.
- Save up to 10 entries each.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy*

1 Accept Call

- 1 Select **5** *Accept Call* and press ●
- 2 Enter Security Code

Reject Call

- 1 Select **6** *Reject Call* and press ●
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select **1** *Specify Number* and press ●

2 Select **3** *Save to List* and press ●

Names or phone numbers appear if saved.

■ To delete list entries, select a number ▶ Press **Ⓡ** *Remove* ▶ Choose **1** *Yes* ▶ Press ●

3 Select a number and press ●

- Select ----- for new entry.

4 Enter a phone number

■ To select from Phone Book, see P.5-13.

5 Press ●

Name appears if selected from Phone Book. Number appears if entered directly. (Name does not appear even if saved in Phone Book.)

- Repeat Steps 3 - 5 to save other numbers.

Accept Call

- At least one entry is required to set Accept Call (see P.14-4).
- Cancel Reject Call before activating Accept Call.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Accept Call*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Choose **1** *On* and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

Reject Call

- At least one entry is required to set Reject Call (see P.14-4).
- Cancel Accept Call before activating Reject Call.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Reject Call*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Select **1** *Specify Number* and press ●

3 Choose **1** *On* and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

Rejecting Other Calls

Reject calls with No Caller ID or Payphone calls. Handset does not ring and caller hears a rejection message.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Privacy* ▶ *Reject Call*

1 Enter Security Code

2 Select **2** *No ID* or **3** *Payphone* and press ●

3 Choose **1** *On* and press ●

■ To cancel, choose **2** *Off* ▶ Press ●

Secret Mode

Activate Secret Mode to open Secret Mode entries.

Activating Secret Mode

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy*

- 1 Select **Secret Mode** and press **OK**
- 2 Enter Security Code
Secret Mode is set and **⚡** appears.

Note Secret Mode is canceled when handset power is turned off.

Exiting Secret Mode

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy*

- 1 Select **Secret Mode** and press **OK**
⚡ disappears and Secret Mode is canceled.

Opening Secret Mode Entries

Activate Secret Mode and open a Phone Book or Schedule entry.

- **⚡** lights for standard entries and flashes for Secret Mode entries.
- To edit or delete Secret Mode entries, see procedures for standard entries.



Reset

Reset Defaults

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings.

- Phone Book entries are unaffected.
- For settings affected by Reset, see **P.17-2 - 17-5**.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Reset Defaults*

- 1 Enter Security Code
- 2 Select **OK** and press **OK**
To cancel, select **Cancel** ► Press **OK**

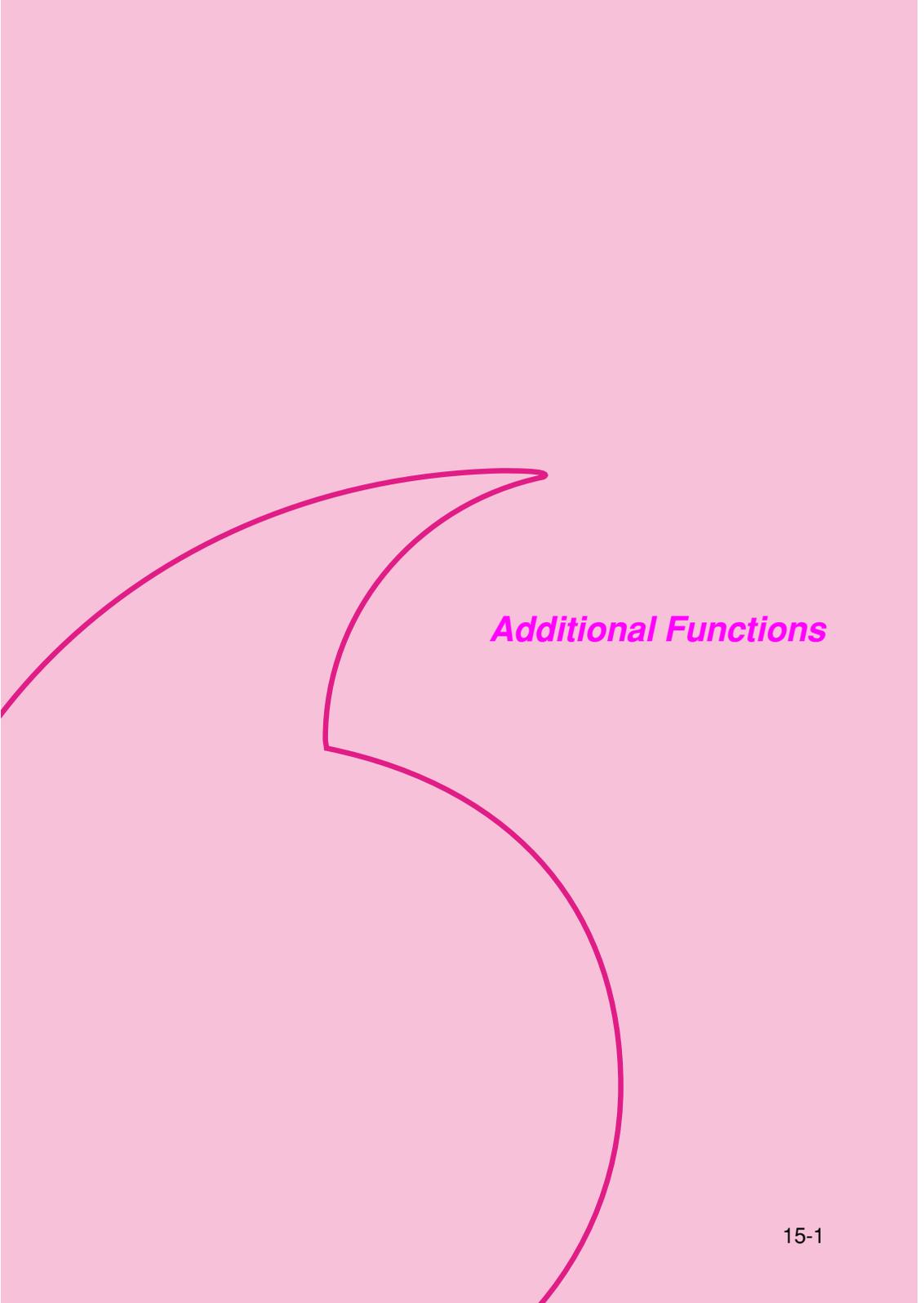
Reset All

Clear all Phone Book entries, Original Tones and other data (including Mail and Web). Custom settings return to their defaults. However, Security Code is unchanged.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Privacy* ► *Reset All*

- 1 Enter Security Code
- 2 Select **OK** and press **OK**
To cancel, select **Cancel** ► Press **OK**

Note Files removed using Reset All cannot be recovered.



Additional Functions

Handy Call Functions

Signal Alert

When Signal Alert is active, handset emits warning beeps when the signal is weak and the call may be disconnected.

Signal Alert is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 1* ► *Signal Alert*

1 Choose **1 On** and press **⏻**

To cancel Signal Alert, choose **2 Off** ► Press **⏻**

Note Even when Signal Alert is active, calls may be disconnected without warning.

Push Tones

Use Push Tones to send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answering machine remotely.

From Phone Book

Use this function to send set messages to pagers.

- Save Push Tones to Phone Book first (see **P.5-4**).
- When saving Push Tones to Phone Book (**☎**), do not save other information to that entry.

1 After a connection is established, press **Ⓞ** (**TEL**) to open Phone Book entry (see P.5-13)

2 Press **⏻**

3 Select **Send All Push Tones** and press **⏻**

Tip Enter a comma (Pause) in Push Tones to separate each sequence.

Direct Entry

Press Keypad to send individual Push Tones during calls.

1 After a connection is established, use Keypad to enter numbers

- For more information, see the manual for the specific device/service.
- Use 0 - 9, * and # to send Push Tones.

2 Press **Ⓞ** **Send Tones**

Side Key Settings

For Incoming Calls

Press a Side Key for 1+ seconds to activate the assigned function while ringing/vibrating. Available functions:

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Hold | Place callers on hold |
| Quick Silent | Temporarily mute ringer for incoming calls |
| Reject Call | Reject and end the call |
| Message Recorder | Record caller messages on handset |
| Forward Voice Mail | Forward incoming calls to Voice Mail |

- The same function can be assigned to multiple keys.
- Message Recorder is assigned to **Ⓞ** by default. (No function is assigned to other keys.)

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 1* ► *SideKey Settings* ► *Incoming Calls*

1 Select from **1 M** to **5 C** and press **⏻**

2 Select a function and press **⏻**

Standby **Ⓞ**

In Standby, press **Ⓞ** for 1+ seconds to activate Voice Recorder. Standby **Ⓞ** is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ► *Functions* ► *Settings 1* ► *SideKey Settings* ► *Standby* **Ⓞ**

1 Select **1 Voice Rec (Accept)** (activate Voice Recorder) or **2 Voice Rec (Reject)** (activate Voice Recorder in Off-Line Mode) and press **⏻**

To cancel, choose **3 Off** ► Press **⏻**

Tip Press **Ⓜ** in Standby to activate an assigned function (see **P.15-22**).

Message Recorder

Activating

Record caller messages on handset.

- Message Recorder cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Off-Line Mode. Use Voice Mail to record caller messages when Message Recorder is not available (see P.16-4).
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Message Recorder, Voice Memo (see P.15-6) and My Voice Memo (see P.15-6).

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Message Recorder

1 Select **1** Recorder Settings and press **Ⓞ**

Remaining recording time appears and Message Recorder menu returns (Ⓞ appears).

- To sample outgoing message, select **3** Outgoing Message ▶ Press **Ⓞ**
- To activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings, select **4** Volume Level ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **1** Volume Level Link or **2** Silent ▶ Press **Ⓞ**

Message Recorder Disabled

- In Manner Mode, activate/deactivate Message Recorder via Manner Settings only.
- When less than 7 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Message Recorder is disabled. Delete messages (see P.15-6) to activate Message Recorder.

Answer Time

- Adjust ring time between 0 and 59 seconds (Message Recorder waits to answer calls). Answer Time is **09 seconds** by default.

Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **Tel Ops** ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **7** Message Recorder ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **4** Answer Time ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Enter time (00 - 59) ▶ Press **Ⓞ**

- To start recording immediately after a call arrives, enter **00** ▶ Press **Ⓞ**

- When Message Recorder and Voice Mail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority. However, if Message Recorder is full, handset is in Off-Line Mode or out-of-range, incoming calls are handled by Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

In-Car Recorder

- Activate In-Car Recorder to automatically activate Message Recorder when In-Car Charger is in use. In-Car Recorder is active by default. To cancel this setting, follow these steps.

Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **Tel Ops** ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **7** Message Recorder ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **5** In-Car Recorder ▶ Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Choose **2** Off ▶ Press **Ⓞ**

When Message Recorder is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
 - Recording continues even if handset is closed.
 - To answer calls, press **Ⓞ** during recording (no message will be recorded).
- When recording ends, Ⓞ appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full (see P.15-4) after the recording, Message Recorder is deactivated and Ⓞ disappears. (Ⓞ remains lit until the message is deleted.)

Quick Recorder

- Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Message Recorder is inactive. When a call arrives, follow the steps below to activate Quick Recorder. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded.
 - Press **Ⓞ** ▶ Select **7** Message Recorder ▶ Press **Ⓞ**
 - Alternatively, set Side Key Settings for incoming calls (see P.15-3) to **4** Message Recorder to activate Quick Recorder with Side Key. When a call arrives, press the corresponding Side Key for 1+ seconds. Outgoing message plays and caller's message is recorded. (Available only with clamshell closed.)
 - When recording capacity is full (see P.15-4), delete messages (see P.15-6) to activate Message Recorder.

Deactivate

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Message Recorder

1 Select **1** Recorder Settings and press **Ⓞ**

Message Recorder is deactivated and menu returns (Ⓞ disappears).

Playing Messages

Index Menu ▶ Tel Ops ▶ Message Recorder

1 Select **2** Play and press **Ⓞ**

Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends and Standby returns.

- Press **Ⓞ** to stop playback.

Tip

Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press **Ⓞ** to answer the call.

■ Playback Operations (Example: 3 Messages are Recorded)

| Skip the message | Replay the message | Play the previous message |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| <p>Press Ⓞ during playback</p> | <p>Press Ⓞ during playback</p> | <p>Press Ⓞ twice during playback</p> |

Deleting Recorded Messages

- While message is playing, press **[F5]** → Choose **[Yes]** → Press **[End Call]**
 - The next message plays, if any. **[F5]** disappears after all messages are deleted.

Voice Memos

Record the other party's voice (Voice Memo) during a call or your own (My Voice Memo) in Standby.

- For Voice Memo, only the other party's voice is recorded.
- Record up to 90 seconds between Voice Memo, My Voice Memo and Message Recorder (see P.15-4). When less than 3 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, messages cannot be recorded.
- Use Voice Recorder (see P.10-3) to record for a long time on handset in Standby.

- Recording Voice Memo**
 - During a call, press **[Voice Memo]** for 1+ seconds

Recording My Voice Memo

- In Standby, press **[Voice Memo]** for 1+ seconds
- Select **[My Voice Memo]** and press **[End Call]**

- Recording starts**

- For My Voice Memo, talk to Microphone from the distance of 5 - 10 cm.

- Press **[End Call]** or **[Voice Memo]** to stop recording**



- If Close to End Call (see P.2-3) is active, calls and Voice Memo recordings end when handset is closed (clamshell closed). The remaining recording time will not appear.
- My Voice Memo stops for incoming calls. Press keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6) to answer the call. (The recorded message is saved.)



- Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.
- Refer to the description for Message Recorder on P.15-5 and above to play or delete Voice Memo/My Voice Memo.

Alarm

Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week.

- Save up to 5 Alarm settings.
- Save a message or phone number to appear with Alarm. Customize Ring Time, Tone Volume, Alarm Tone, LED Indicator and Vibration.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Alarm*

- Select a number and press **[End Call]****
 - For a new entry, select -----.
- Select **[Input Time]** and press **[End Call]****
- Enter time and press **[End Call]****
 - Apply 24-hour clock format.
 - To set Alarm Tones, Vibration, Snooze, etc., see P.15-9.
- Select **[Repeat Settings]** and press **[End Call]****
- Daily**
 - Select **[Daily]** and press **[End Call]**

Specified Day of the Week

- Select **[Weekly]** and press **[End Call]**
- Select a day of the week and press **[End Call]**
 - The day is set and **[]** appears.
 - To cancel, highlight the selected day and press **[End Call]**.
- Repeat **[2]** to select more
- Press **[Set]** when finished

One-Time Alarm

- Choose **[Off]** and press **[End Call]**

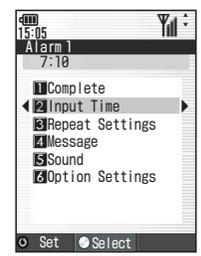
- Press **[Set]** when finished**

Alarm is set.

 - For more settings, repeat Steps 1 - 5.

- Press **[End Call]** to exit**

Standby returns and **[]** appears. **[]** (blue) appears in Alarm list when Schedule Alert (see P.15-9) is set.



Alarm Settings

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.
Image appears if Display Images is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over Display Images.

Stopping Alarm Tone

■ Press or

- Alternatively, press keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6).

Snooze

- Alarm repeats at the set interval.
 - Snooze is not canceled even when Alarm is stopped by pressing .
 - Accept incoming calls. After each call, press to reactivate Snooze.
- To cancel Snooze after initial Alarm Time, press keys for Anykey Answer, choose **1 Yes** and press .
 - Snooze is canceled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

Phone Number

- While saved name or number appears, press to dial the number.
 - Cancel Snooze before dialing.
- Press instead of to close window without dialing.

Sending Advance Mail Message

- While saved address, name or number appears, press **Menu** → Select **2 Send Mail** → Press → Press **Send**
 - Cancel Snooze before sending a message.

Note

- While Alarm Message, Phone Number or Advance Mail appears, Alarm will not sound for other Alarm settings.
- If Alarm Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. End the call to reactivate Alarm.

Tip

While **ALARM** appears on Sub Display, press to show the saved message, number, etc. Press again for 1+ seconds to return to Standby (except when Snooze is active).

Alarm Options

- Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.15-7.
- After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.
- In Manner Mode, Manner Settings (see P.3-4) take priority over Alarm options.

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| Message | Saved message appears at Alarm Time Select 1 Message → Press → Enter message → Press |
| Alarm Tones | Set a tone to sound at Alarm Time Select 5 Sound → Press → Select 1 Alarm Tones → Press → Select a type → Press → Select a tone → Press → Press Back •To select a tone, see procedures for Ring Tone (see P.8-3). |
| Tone Volume | Set volume for Alarm Tone Select 5 Sound → Press → Select 2 Tone Volume → Press → Select a level with → Press → Press Back |
| Ring Time | Set ring time Select 5 Sound → Press → Select 3 Ring Time → Press → Enter time (02 - 99 seconds) → Press → Press Back |
| Vibration | Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time Select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 1 Vibration → Press → Choose 1 On or 2 Off → Press → Press Back •Vibration Pattern is the same as that for incoming calls. |
| LED Indicator | Customize color and blink patterns |
| Mobile Light | Select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 2 LED Indicator → Press → Select 1 Mobile Light → Press → Select a color → Press → Select a blink pattern → Press → Press Back |
| Small Light | Select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 2 LED Indicator → Press → Select 2 Small Light → Press → Select a blink pattern → Press → Press Back |
| Cancel | Select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 2 LED Indicator → Press → Choose 3 Off → Press → Press Back |
| Snooze | Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time Select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 3 Snooze → Press → Choose 1 On → Press → Enter interval (02 - 20 minutes) → Press → Press Back •To cancel, select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 3 Snooze → Press → Choose 2 Off → Press → Press Back |
| Schedule Alert | Set an Alert to announce upcoming Alarm Time beforehand Select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 4 Schedule Alert → Press → Choose 1 On → Press → Enter time (02 - 99 minutes) → Press → Press Back •To cancel, select 6 Option Settings → Press → Select 4 Schedule Alert → Press → Choose 2 Off → Press → Press Back |

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Phone Number | <p>Saved phone number appears at Alarm Time</p> <p>Select 3 Option Settings → Press 1 → Select 5 Phone Number → Press 1 → Enter a phone number → Press 1 → Press 2 Back</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Dial the number after Alarm stops. •Phone Number and Advance Mail cannot be set at the same time. •To copy from Phone Book, press 2 (TEL) before entering a phone number. |
| Advance Mail | <p>Saved outgoing mail appears at Alarm Time</p> <p>Select 3 Option Settings → Press 1 → Select 6 Advance mail → Press 1 → Select a message → Press 1 → Press 2 Back</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •To cancel, select a message and press 2 Cancel → Press 2 Back •Advance Mail and Phone Number cannot be set at the same time. |

Canceling & Reactivating Alarm

Cancel

Cancel Alarm and retain the settings

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** → **Clock** → **Alarm** → **Select a number**

Select **2 Cancel** → Press **1**

- **1** or **2** disappears.
- Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

Delete

Delete Alarm settings

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** → **Clock** → **Alarm** → **Select a number**

Select **3 Delete** → Press **1**

Settings

Reactivate Alarm with the same settings, or change current settings

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** → **Clock** → **Alarm**

Same Settings

Select a number → Press **1** → Select **1 Settings** → Press **1** → Press **2** **Set**

Change Settings

Select a number → Press **1** → Select **1 Settings** → Press **1** → Perform from Step 2 on P.15-7

Auto Power On/Off

Auto Power On

Use Auto Power On to activate handset power automatically at a specific time each day.

- Once set, Auto Power On remains active until canceled.
- Alarm can be set to sound for Auto Power On.
- Auto Power On is inactive by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** → **Clock** → **Auto Power On**

1 Choose **1 On** and press **1**

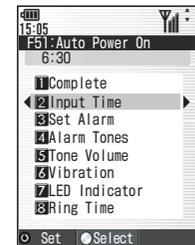
- To cancel Auto Power On, choose **2 Off** → Press **1** (Omit the next steps.)

2 Select **2 Input Time** and press **1**

3 Enter time and press **1**

- Apply 24-hour clock format.
- To set Alarm, see P.15-12.

4 Press **2** **Set**



Auto Power On Settings

At Auto Power On Time

When Handset is Off

Handset turns on. When Alarm is set, Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if Display Images is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over Display Images.

When Handset is On

When Alarm is set, Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Note

If Auto Power On Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. Press **2** after the call to reactivate Alarm.

Tip

Press **2** to stop Alarm. Alternatively, press **2** or keys for Anykey Answer (see P.2-6).

Setting Alarm

- Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.15-11.
- After each setting, Auto Power On settings window returns. Complete other settings.
- Activate Alarm (Set Alarm On) before setting other Alarm options.
- In Manner Mode, Manner Settings (see P.3-4) take priority over Alarm options.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Set Alarm | Activate Alarm at Auto Power On Time Select 3 Set Alarm ➔ Press 0 ➔ Choose 1 On or 2 Off ➔ Press 0 |
| Alarm Tones | Set a tone to sound at Auto Power On Time Select 4 Alarm Tones ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select a type ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select a tone ➔ Press 0 •To select a tone, see procedures for Ring Tone (see P.8-3). |
| Tone Volume | Set volume for Alarm Tone Select 5 Tone Volume ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select a level with 0 ➔ Press 0 |
| Vibration | Set handset to vibrate at Auto Power On Time Select 6 Vibration ➔ Press 0 ➔ Choose 1 On or 2 Off ➔ Press 0 •Vibration Pattern is the same as that for incoming calls. |
| LED Indicator | Customize color and blink patterns |
| Mobile Light | Select 7 LED Indicator ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select 1 Mobile Light ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select a color ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select a blink pattern ➔ Press 0 |
| Small Light | Select 7 LED Indicator ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select 2 Small Light ➔ Press 0 ➔ Select a blink pattern ➔ Press 0 |
| Cancel | Select 7 LED Indicator ➔ Press 0 ➔ Choose 3 Off ➔ Press 0 |
| Ring Time | Set ring time Select 8 Ring Time ➔ Press 0 ➔ Enter time (02 - 99 seconds) ➔ Press 0 |

Auto Power Off

Use Auto Power Off to deactivate handset power automatically at a specific time each day.

- Once set, Auto Power Off remains active until canceled.
- Auto Power Off is inactive by default.

Index Menu ➔ *Functions* ➔ *Clock* ➔ *Auto Power Off*

- 1 Choose **1** **On** and press **0****
 - To cancel Auto Power Off, choose **2** **Off** ➔ Press **0** (Omit the next step.)
- 2 Enter time and press **0****
 - Apply 24-hour clock format.

At Auto Power Off Time

Handset power turns off.

- When handset is in use, confirmation appears (after operation if the time arrives during a call or while Shake Counter is active).
 - Handset power turns off after a minute of inactivity. Alternatively, choose **1** **Yes** and press **0**. Unsaved data will be deleted.
 - Choose **2** **No** and press **0** to cancel Auto Power Off.
- Even if there are messages saved as Auto Send, handset power turns off without confirmation.

Schedule

Enter upcoming events with dates and times. Save event with deadlines to Action Item.

- Handset and Memory Card hold up to 400 Schedule entries (including Action Items) each.
- Mark completed Action Items (see P.15-16).

Tip Exchange Schedule and Action Item entries between compatible devices via infrared (see P.13-4).

Saving Entries

Saving Schedule Entries

Index Menu ➔ *Briefcase* ➔ *Schedule*

- 1 Press **0****
 - Press **0** again to select date from Calendar.
- 2 Enter start/end date and time**
 - Enter 4 digits for year, 2 digits for month and day each, and apply 24-hour clock format for time.
 - Start date and time are mandatory.



Schedule Window

3 One-Time Schedule

1 Press **⓪**

Repetitive Schedule

1 Press **⓪** **Cycle**

2 Select from **2xx:xx Daily** to **5xx/xx Yearly** and press **⓪**

- Start date and time are reflected in the items. For **4xx Monthly**, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.

3 Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) and press **⓪**

- Not available for **5xx/xx Yearly**.

Press **⓪** **Reps** to change the number of times to repeat.

4 Press **⓪**

4 Select **Title** and press **⓪**

5 Enter title and press **⓪**

- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters. Title is mandatory.

6 Select **Stamp** and press **⓪**

7 Select a stamp and press **⓪**

8 Select **Contents** and press **⓪**

9 Enter text and press **⓪**

- Enter up to 128 single-byte characters.
- Set Alarm (see P.15-16) and Option Settings (see P.15-18).

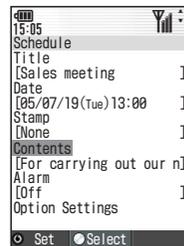
10 Press **⓪** **Set** when finished

Save? appears.

- To save to Memory card, press **⓪** **MC**.
- To switch back to handset, press **⓪** **Handset**.

11 Choose **Yes** and press **⓪**

The scheduled date is underlined. Stamp appears if set.



Schedule Settings

On Scheduled Day

■ **🔔** (Alarm is set) or **🔕** (Alarm is not set) appears. (They will disappear after Schedule Time.)

Saving Action Items

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Schedule

1 Press **⓪** **文字**

2 Enter title and press **⓪**

- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters. Title is mandatory.

3 Select **Limit** and press **⓪**

- Enter 4 digits for year, 2 digits for month and day each, and apply 24-hour clock format for time.
- Limit is mandatory.

4 Enter date and time

5 **One-Time Action Item**

1 Press **⓪**

Repetitive Action Item

1 Press **⓪** **Cycle**

2 Select from **2xx:xx Daily** to **5xx/xx Yearly** and press **⓪**

- Start date and time are reflected in the items. For **4xx Monthly**, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.

3 Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) and press **⓪**

- Not available for **5xx/xx Yearly**.

Press **⓪** **Reps** to change the number of times to repeat.

4 Press **⓪**

6 Select **Stamp** and press **⓪**

7 Select a stamp and press **⓪**

8 Select **Contents** and press **⓪**

9 Enter text and press **⓪**

- Enter up to 128 single-byte characters.
- Set Alarm (see P.15-16) and Option Settings (see P.15-18).

10 Press **⓪** **Set** when finished

Save? appears.

- To save to Memory Card, press **⓪** **MC**.
- To switch back to handset, press **⓪** **Handset**.

11 Choose **Yes** and press **⓪**



Action Item Settings

Completed Action Items

- To mark Action Items as completed, follow these steps.
Press **→ Select** *Briefcase* **→ Press** **→ Select** **3** *Schedule* **→ Press** **→ Press** **→ Select** *View* **→ Press** **→ Select** **6** *All List* **→ Press** **→ Select** **completed Action Item** **→ Press** **twice** **→ Choose** **1** *Yes* **→ Press**
- Completed date and time are set automatically for completed action items. To edit, see **P.15-20**.
- Completed Action Items do not appear in Schedule window.
- To delete completed Action Items automatically, see **P.15-21**.

Setting Alarm

Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at Schedule Time or Action Item Limit

Schedule

In Schedule settings window (see Step 9 on P.15-14), select **Alarm** **→ Press** **→ Choose** **1** *On* **→ Press**

- Set Alarm window opens. For more, see "Alarm Options" below.
- Press **Set** to return to Schedule settings window. Complete other settings.

Action Item

In Action Item settings window (see Step 9 on P.15-15) select **Option Settings** **→ Press** **→ Select** **Alarm** **→ Press** **→ Choose** **1** *On* **→ Press**

- Set Alarm window opens. For more, see "Alarm Options" below.
- Press twice to return to Action Item settings window. Complete other settings.

Alarm Options

- Follow these steps after opening Set Alarm window for Schedule or Action Item.
- After each setting, Set Alarm window returns.
- In Manner Mode, Manner Settings (see **P.3-4**) take priority over Alarm options.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Alarm Time | Set date and time to activate Alarm Select 1 <i>Alarm Time</i> → Press → Enter date and time → Press |
| Message | Saved message appears at Alarm Time Select 2 <i>Message</i> → Press → Enter message → Press |
| Alarm Tones | Set a tone to sound at Alarm Time Select 3 <i>Sound</i> → Press → Select 1 <i>Alarm Tones</i> → Press → Select a type → Press → Select a tone → Press → Press Back •To select a tone, see procedures for Ring Tone (see P.8-3). |

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Tone Volume | Set volume for Alarm Tone Select 3 <i>Sound</i> → Press → Select 2 <i>Tone Volume</i> → Press → Select a level with → Press → Press Back |
| Ring Time | Set ring time Select 3 <i>Sound</i> → Press → Select 3 <i>Ring Time</i> → Press → Enter time (02 - 99 seconds) → Press → Press Back |
| Vibration | Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time Select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 1 <i>Vibration</i> → Press → Choose 1 <i>On</i> → Press → Press Back •Vibration Pattern is the same as that for incoming calls. |
| LED Indicator | Customize color and blink patterns |
| Mobile Light | Select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 2 <i>LED Indicator</i> → Press → Select 1 <i>Mobile Light</i> → Press → Select a color → Press → Select a blink pattern → Press → Press Back |
| Small Light | Select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 2 <i>LED Indicator</i> → Press → Select 2 <i>Small Light</i> → Press → Select a blink pattern → Press → Press Back |
| Cancel | Select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 2 <i>LED Indicator</i> → Press → Choose 3 <i>Off</i> → Press → Press Back |
| Snooze | Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time Select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 3 <i>Snooze</i> → Press → Choose 1 <i>On</i> → Press → Enter interval (02 - 20 minutes) → Press → Press Back •To cancel, select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 3 <i>Snooze</i> → Press → Choose 2 <i>Off</i> → Press → Press Back |
| Schedule Alert | Set an Alert to announce upcoming Alarm Time beforehand Select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 4 <i>Schedule Alert</i> → Press → Select from 2 <i>Minutes</i> to 6 <i>Months</i> → Press → Enter amount of time (5 minutes, 1 week, etc.) → Press → Press Back •To cancel, select 4 <i>Option Settings</i> → Press → Select 4 <i>Schedule Alert</i> → Press → Choose 2 <i>Off</i> → Press → Press Back |

At Schedule Alarm Time

When Alarm is set, Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

- Alarm does not sound, vibrate, etc. for entries on Memory Card.
- Image appears if Display Images is set. However, SMAF file images take priority over Display Images.
- For stopping Alarm Tone, dialing numbers, sending Advance Mail and canceling Snooze, see **P.15-8**.

Note If Alarm Time arrives during a call, no tone will sound. Press after the call to reactivate Alarm.

Tip While **ALARM** appears on Sub Display, press to show the saved message, number, etc. Press again for 1+ seconds to return to Standby (except when Snooze is active).

Schedule & Action Item Options

- Follow these steps after Step 9 on **P.15-14** (Schedule) or **P.15-15** (Action Item).
- After each setting, Schedule settings window or Action Item settings window returns. Complete other settings.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Secret Mode | Restrict access to entries |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Secret Mode → Press ● → Choose 1 On or 2 Off → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate handset Secret Mode (see P.14-6) to open/edit Secret Mode entries. |
| Attach Image (Schedule only) | Set an image to appear at Schedule Time |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Attach Image → Press ● → Select 2 Data Folder → Press ● → Select from 1 Images to 3 Movies → Press ● → Select an image → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel, select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Attach Image → Press ● → Select 3 Cancel → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back Select 1 Camera instead of 2 Data Folder to capture a still image or record video. |
| Call | Saved phone number appears at Schedule Time or Action Item Limit |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Call → Press ● → Enter a phone number → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dial the number after Alarm stops. Call and Advance Mail cannot be set at the same time. To copy from Phone Book, press ⊙ (TEL) before entering a phone number. |
| Advance Mail | Saved outgoing mail appears at Schedule Time or Action Item Limit |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Advance Mail → Press ● → Select a message → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel, select a message and press ⊙ Cancel → Press ⊙ Back Advance Mail and Call cannot be set at the same time. |
| Date Color | Set Calendar date color |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Date Color → Press ● → Select a color → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Colors do not appear in 1-Week view (see P.15-19). |
| Auto Protect | Protect entries from Auto Delete |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Auto Protect → Press ● → Choose 1 On (protect) or 2 Off (cancel) → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Auto Delete is Off, entries are protected automatically regardless of this setting. |

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Standby Display | Show or hide entries in Standby |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Standby Display → Press ● → Choose 1 On or 2 Off → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The setting is effective when Clock Display is set to Calendar (see P.7-4). |
| Priority | Set priority |
| | Schedule |
| | Action Item |
| Condition | Select Plan for upcoming events and Complete for completed events |
| | Select Option Settings → Press ● → Select Condition → Press ● → Select 1 Plan or 2 Complete → Press ● → Press ⊙ Back |

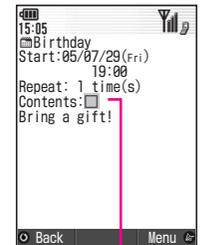
Opening Entries

Index Menu ► **Briefcase** ► **Schedule** ► **Select a date**

1 Select an entry and press ●

- To save to Data Folder, press ⊙ **Menu** → Select **To Data Folder** → Press ● → Enter title → Press ● → Select a folder → Press ●
- Priority & Condition Indicators:

| Indicator | Priority | Condition | Indicator | Priority | Condition |
|-----------------------------------|------------|-----------|--|------------|-----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> (Green) | No Setting | Plan | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Green) | No Setting | Complete |
| <input type="checkbox"/> (Yellow) | Low | Plan | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Yellow) | Low | Complete |
| <input type="checkbox"/> (Red) | High | Plan | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Red) | High | Complete |



Priority & Condition Indicator

2 Press ⊙ **Back** to end

Toggle View

- Press ● → Select **Briefcase** → Press ● → Select **3 Schedule** → Press ● → Press ⊙ **View**
- Press ⊙ **View** to toggle between **Action Item**, **1-Week**, **1-Month**, **Schedule**, **All List** and **Day Detail/Stamps**.

- To select the Types of view that toggle, follow these steps.

Press ● → Select **Briefcase** → Press ● → Select **3 Schedule** → Press ● → Press ⊙ **Menu** → Select **View** → Press ● → Select **7 Toggle View** → Press ● → Select a type* → Press ⊙ **Check** → (Select another type → Press ⊙) → Press ●

*Select to check and select to uncheck.

Check Writer & Entry Number

Press **⏏** → Select **Briefcase** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Schedule** → Press **⏏** → Select a date → Press **⏏** → Select an entry → Press **⏏** **Menu** → Select **Details** → Press **⏏**

- Entry Numbers are assigned when a new entry is saved. Name saved in Owner Profile (see P.2-22) appears for Writer.
- **Details** does not appear for **Day Detail/Stamps, 1- Week** or **1-Month**.

Schedule Display for Standby

To use Schedule for Standby, set Calendar type to **2 Schedule & Stamps** (see P.7-4).
 Customize Standby Display (show or hide Schedule details).

Press **⏏** → Select **Briefcase** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Schedule** → Press **⏏** → Press **⏏** **Menu** → Select **Standby Display** → Press **⏏** → Select an item → Press **⏏**

Editing Entries

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Select a date**

- 1 Select an entry and press **⏏**
- 2 Press **⏏** **Menu**
- 3 Select **Edit** and press **⏏**
- 4 Select an item and press **⏏**
 - For details, see procedures for saving Schedule/Action Item.
- 5 When finished editing, press **⏏** **Set**
- 6 Select **1 New Entry** or **2 Overwrite** and press **⏏**

Deleting Entries

Delete Item Delete one entry

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Select a date** → **Select an entry** → **Menu** (⏏) → **Delete Item**

Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

One Day Schedules

Delete the day's Schedule/Action Item entries

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Select a date** → **Menu** (⏏) → **Delete All**

Select **2 One Day Schedules** or **3 One Day Items** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Select All** or **2 Unprotected** → Press **⏏** → Enter Security Code → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

Delete All

Delete all past entries or all entries

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Select a date** → **Menu** (⏏) → **Delete All**

Select **1 Past Schedules**, **3 Schedules**, **4 Completed Items**, **5 Incomplete Items**, **7 Action Items** or **8 All Entries** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Select All** or **2 Unprotected** → Press **⏏** → Enter Security Code → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

Other Schedule Settings

Auto Delete

Delete the oldest Schedule or completed Action Item entries automatically when memory is full

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Menu** (⏏) → **Auto Delete**

Select **1 Schedule** or **2 Action Item** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Auto Delete On** or **2 Auto Delete Off** → Press **⏏**

Set Color

Change color for days of the week

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Menu** (⏏) → **Set Color**

Select a day → Press **⏏** → Select a color → Press **⏏**

View

Change view

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Menu** (⏏) → **View**

Select from **1 Day Detail/Stamps** to **3 All List** → Press **⏏**

Even List

Check the number of saved entries

Index Menu ▶ **Briefcase** → **Schedule** → **Menu** (⏏)

Select **Event List** → Press **⏏**

Motion Control Sensor & Settings

MC Sensor

Adjust MC Sensor before using Motion Control (see P.1-14) for the first time or when Motion Control does not work correctly.

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ MC Settings

1 Select **Adjust MC Sensor** and press **Enter**

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip Incoming calls, etc. interrupt adjustment. Start over from the beginning.

Note

- Avoid adjusting MC Sensor when:
 - Near magnetized objects such as audio speakers, refrigerators, magnetic necklaces and therapy equipment
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
- MC Sensor may need to be readjusted when temperatures change.

Motion Control Settings

M-key Settings Assign a function to Multi Key

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ MC Settings ▶ M-key Settings

Select **MC Cursor**, **Assign Function** or **Off** ▶ Press **Enter**

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| MC Cursor | Press M to activate MC Cursor (see P.1-33) |
| Assign Functions | Use M instead of Enter (except for ending calls) |

Enter-Key Settings Press and hold **Enter** to activate MC Cursor

Default Off

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ MC Settings ▶ Enter-Key Settings

Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press **Enter**

15

Additional Functions

Viewer Setting

In Viewer position, shake handset to use **Enter** functions

Default Cancel MC Sensor

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Settings 2 ▶ MC Settings ▶ Viewer Setting

Select **Activate MC Sensor** or **Cancel MC Sensor** ▶ Press **Enter**

- **Activate MC Sensor** cancels Full Auto in Viewer Display (see P.7-15).
- **Activate MC Sensor** is disabled during incoming calls.

Compass

Use Compass to find magnetic north and calculate other directions from your current position.

- Read the precautions on P.1-14 before using Compass.
- Compass indicator points towards magnetic north.
- Use either **2D** or **3D** Compass.
- 3D Compass opens by default.

Index Menu ▶ Handy **Enter**

1 Select **Compass** and press **Enter**

- Press **Enter** to toggle between **3D** and **2D**.

Note

- Built-in sensors detect handset orientation and Earth's magnetic field. Compass calculates the direction of magnetic north based on the readings of these sensors and does not support the Global Positioning System (GPS). Actual direction may differ from that shown on Compass. Use Compass only as a rough guide.
- Actual direction of magnetic north may differ when:
 - Aboard trains or in vehicles
 - Near metal objects such as desks and shelves
 - In steel-framed buildings
 - Near or inside elevators
 - Near magnetized objects (see P.1-14)
- For 2D Compass, keep handset Display as level as possible. For 3D, a slight tilt is allowable.

Tip

When directions do not appear correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.15-22). In Compass window, press **Adjust** and follow onscreen instructions.

15

Additional Functions

Shake Counter

Count up/down numbers by shaking handset.

- Read the precautions on P.1-14 before using Shake Counter.
- Use Shake Counter with clamshell open or closed, or in Viewer position.
- Adjust Sensitivity Level of shake recognition.
- Count up to 99,999 shakes.
- Save counts to Text Memo on handset or Memory Card.

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Shake Counter

1 Counting Up

- 1 Select 1 Count and press ●

Counting Down

- 1 Select 2 Count Down and press ●
- 2 Enter numbers (1 - 99999 counts) and press ●

2 Press ●

- Stop appears. (Shakes can be counted while it appears.)

3 Shake handset

Shake Counter starts counting.



- When counter reaches 0 or 99,999, Alarm Tone sounds and LED Indicator flashes. (Alarm Tone is fixed to Pattern 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on the settings for Sound Volume and Set LED to Sound respectively. Vibration is Off.)
 - Alarm stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press ● to stop manually.
 - In Manner Mode, handset vibrates. (Vibration Pattern is Vibration 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on Manner Settings.)
 - Alarm Tone and Vibration Pattern cannot be changed.
- No tone sounds while counting.

4 Press ● to stop

- To save the count to Text Memo, press ● Menu ▶ Select **Save Text Memo** ▶ Press ● ▶ Choose 1 Yes ▶ Press ●
 - To check saved counts, see P.4-18.
- Press ● to resume.
- Press ● Reset to clear the count.

5 Press ● or ● to exit

- When Shake Counter is active or paused, choose 1 Yes ▶ Press ●

Sensitivity Level

- Follow these steps after Step 1 on P.15-24.

Press ● Menu ▶ Select **Sensitivity Level** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select from 1 Level1 to 5 Level5 ▶ Press ●

- Sensitivity decreases as the level number decreases.



- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- When Shake Counter does not work correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.15-22).



- If Alarm Time arrives (see P.15-7) while Shake Counter window is open, no tone will sound. Cancel Shake Counter to activate Alarm.
- Count continues even while handset is closed or in Panel Saving mode.

Shake Sound

Shake handset to produce sound effects.

- Read the precautions on P.1-14 before using Shake Sound.
- Use preset files or compatible files in Data Folder for sound effects. Some files on Memory Card cannot be used.

Index Menu ▶ Briefcase ▶ Shake Sound

1 Volume

- 1 Press ● (up) or ● (down) to adjust volume

- Each press changes volume in the following order:

| | |
|---|---|
| ● | ● |
| 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → Shaker ¹ | Shaker ¹ → 5 → 4 → 3 → 2 → 1 |

¹For **Shaker**, volume changes according to the strength of shaking.



- In Manner Mode, Shake Sound volume depends on Manner Settings (see P.3-5 "Sound Volume").

Sound

1 Press **Menu**

2 Select from **1 Whistle 1** to **9 Original** and press

- For **1 Whistle 1** to **8 Shuffle**, proceed to Step 2.
- For **9 Original**, press to toggle between **Single Play Mode** and **Continuous Mode**.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Single Play Mode | When handset is shaken sequentially, sound stops and starts from the beginning for each shake |
| Continuous Mode | Sound plays all the way through and repeats while handset is shaken |

Tip

- For **8 Shuffle**, sound changes according to the direction and angle of shaking.
- Press to stop playing **7 Handclap** or **9 Original**.

3 Select a sound or melody and press

2 Shake handset

Sound plays.

Tip

Mobile or Small Light flashes with sound as set in Set LED to Sound (see P.8-6).

3 Press , or **Back** to end

Note

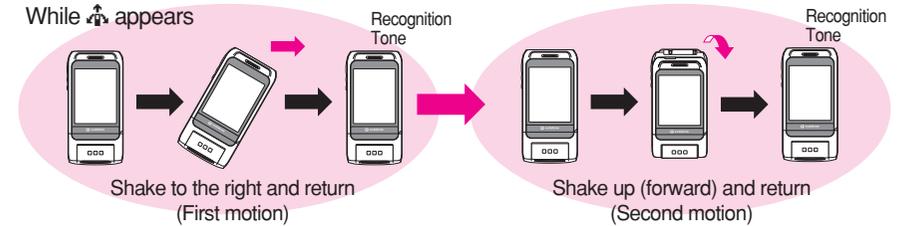
- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- When Shake Sound does not work correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see P.15-22).
- Shake Sound is disabled while handset is in Panel Saving mode.

User Shortcuts

Create shortcuts to functions and files.

Press a key for 1+ seconds to activate corresponding functions in User Shortcut (see below). Alternatively, open User Shortcut list and shake handset in two directions sequentially.

Example: When Motion Pattern is Set to Right and Up



To change default shortcuts, see P.15-29 "Assigning User Shortcuts."

| User Shortcut | Key | MC Shortcut (Motion Pattern) |
|---------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| Entry Search (Phone Book) | (Long Press) | - |
| Auto Reply | (Long Press) | - |
| Calculator | (Long Press) | - |
| Alarm | (Long Press) | - |
| Call Functions | (Long Press) | - |
| Display Settings | (Long Press) | - |
| Inbox | (Long Press) | Up & Up () |
| 2-Touch Mail (Sky Mail) | (Long Press) | Left & Left () |
| V-Appli Library | (Long Press) | - |

Assign functions to or (see P.15-29 "Assigning User Shortcuts").

Using Shortcuts

Key

1 Press - - or or for 1+ seconds

Assigned function or file window opens.

- When the shortcut is assigned to an image or melody file, it opens or plays.

Tip

- Alternatively, press and press a key for assigned function to use shortcut.
 - When Mail, Web, Station, or V-Application is disabled or a Memory Card is not inserted, related function shortcuts are disabled.
- When the assigned file is already deleted, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to delete shortcut. User Shortcut list returns.

Motion Pattern (MC Shortcut)

- Read the precautions on **P.1-14** before using MC Shortcuts.
- Use MC Shortcuts with clamshell open or in Viewer position.
- MC Shortcut is available only while appears (press if not).
- Activate Quick Shortcut (see **P.15-30** "Setting Quick Shortcut") to use a shortcut (without pressing) immediately after handset is opened or Panel Saving is canceled.

1 Press or

User Shortcut list appears.

2 Shake handset in the corresponding motion pattern

- Complete within the time-out period (see **P.15-30** "Setting Time-Out Period"). Recognition tone sounds for each shake and the corresponding window opens. To adjust volume, see **P.8-6**.
- If no motion is performed within the time-out period (see **P.15-30**), **Time Out** appears with error tone and User Shortcut list returns. Start over from Step 1.

Tip

- For better recognition, start the second shake after the first tone ends.
- Press while appears to cancel MC Shortcut.

Note

- Do not shake handset roughly. Handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Recognition accuracy varies by user. Set patterns that are easily recognized.
- When MC Shortcut does not work correctly, adjust MC Sensor (see **P.15-22**).

Assigning User Shortcuts**Setting Keypad Shortcuts**

Assign shortcut keys to functions or files when appears.

1 Select a file or function from a list**2 Press for 1+ seconds****3 Select an entry and press**

- When overwriting, choose **Yes** → Press

Tip

- Shortcut names appear automatically. (To change the name, see **P.15-30**.)
- To assign a V-Application to (Long Press), see **P.12-4** "Save Direct Key."
- Overwritten default shortcuts return when user-defined shortcuts are deleted.

Setting MC Shortcuts

Assign motion pattern to User Shortcuts.

- Set time-out period to recognize a motion pattern.
- To set Quick Shortcut, see **P.15-30**.

1 Press **2 Select an item and press **Menu******3 Select *Motion Control* and press** **4 *Assigning/Editing Motion Pattern*****1 Select **MC Sensor On/Off** and press** **2 Choose **On** and press**

- To delete assigned motion, choose **Off** → Press

3 Select from **Up & Return to **Left & Return** and press**
(First motion)

- Press **Guide** to see an illustration.

4 Select from **Up & Return to **Left & Return** and press**
(Second motion)

Assigned motion pattern appears (combination of , or). Press **Practice** to try performing motions.

- For a motion pattern already assigned, **Cannot Save** appears. Select another motion.

Setting Time-Out Period

- 1 Select **2** *Time Out Setting* and press ●
- 2 Enter time (01 - 60 seconds) and press ●
 - Time is **10** seconds by default.

Setting Quick Shortcut

- 1 Select **3** *Quick Shortcut* and press ●
- 2 Choose **1** *On* or **2** *Off* and press ●
 - Quick Shortcut is *Off* by default.

Editing & Deleting Shortcuts

Change Name

Rename shortcuts

- Press ● → Select an item → Press ● → **Menu** → Select *Change Name* → Press ● → Edit name → Press ●
- Pictographs cannot be entered.

Delete

Delete shortcuts

- Press ● → Select an item → Press ● → **Menu** → Select *Delete* → Press ● → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press ●

Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments. Use lap time feature to segment elapsed time.

- Save times (including the last five lap times) to Text Memo on handset or Memory Card.
- Stopwatch ends when battery level is low.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Stopwatch*

- 1 Press ●

Stopwatch starts.

 - To record Lap times, press ● **Lap**.
 - In Viewer position, press ● for 1+ seconds or ●.
- 2 Press ● to stop

The last five Lap times are recorded. The records are deleted when Stopwatch is canceled.

 - To save the records to Text Memo, press ● **Menu** → Select *Save Text Memo* → Press ● → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press ●
 - To check saved records, press ● **Menu** → Select *See Text Memo* → Press ● → Select a record → Press ●
 - Press ● to resume Stopwatch.
 - Press ● **Reset** to clear the record.
 - In Viewer position, press ● for 1+ seconds.

3 Press ● or ● to exit

- When Stopwatch is running or paused, choose **1** *Yes* → Press ●

Tip

- Records are deleted when Stopwatch is canceled. Save records to Text Memo.
- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. Press ● after the call to return to Stopwatch.
- Alarm (see P.15-7) is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, and starts when handset returns to Standby.
- Count continues even if handset is closed. (TIMER flashes on Sub Display.)

Kitchen Timer

Set Kitchen Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Tone sounds when set time elapses.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Clock* ▶ *Kitchen Timer*

- 1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00)
 - Use ● to move cursor and correct the number.
- 2 Press ●
 - When times over 60 minutes (60:00) are entered, the last set time returns.
 - To change time, press ● **Edit** → Enter time → Press ●
- 3 Press ●

Countdown starts.
- 4 Press ● to stop
 - Press ● to resume.
 - Press ● **Reset** to return to the set time.
- 5 Press ● or ● to exit
 - When Kitchen Timer is running or paused, choose **1** *Yes* → Press ●

Kitchen Timer End

- **Timer End** appears. Tone sounds and LED Indicator flashes. (Tone is fixed to Pattern 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on the settings for Sound Volume and Set LED to Sound respectively. Vibration is Off.)
 - Tone stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press ● to stop manually.
 - In Manner Mode, handset vibrates. (Vibration Pattern is Vibration 1. Volume and LED Indicator depend on Manner Settings.)
 - Tone and Vibration Pattern cannot be changed.
- When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, **Timer End** appears after ● is pressed to end the call.

Tip

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. Press after the call to return to Kitchen Timer window.
- Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner Mode.
- Alarm (see P.15-7) is disabled while Kitchen Timer window is open, and starts when handset returns to Standby.
- Countdown continues even if handset is closed. flashes on Sub Display.)

Barcode

Scan printed barcodes with mobile camera or download QR Codes via Web or Super Mail. Scan UPC (JAN) or QR Codes in Normal or Continuous modes.

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Normal | Read UPC (JAN) or QR Codes one at a time. Handset automatically detects split QR Codes. |
| Continuous | Read multiple UPC (JAN) or QR Codes consecutively |

- Handset automatically detects code type and reads code data.
- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on barcode data or data size.
- Hold handset vertically with Earpiece up when capturing barcodes.

Note

- If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If handset becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera...** appears and scanning ends.
- Barcodes cannot be scanned from functions opened with Hot Switching (see P.1-31).
- Scanning may fail if the barcode is dirty or unclear.
- It is recommended to use Mobile Light when scanning barcodes indoors.
- Capture one barcode at a time. If not, handset may fail to scan.

Tip

- UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (called bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are *elements*, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
- QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells. It allows omni-directional reading of up to 7,366 characters—numeric, alphanumeric, byte data as well as kanji and kana.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Scan & Capture

Use mobile camera to scan printed barcodes. Activate mobile camera from Barcodes menu or during text entry.

Scanning from Barcodes Menu

Paste scan results into text entry windows or use URLs as hyperlinks.

Index Menu ▶ *Handy* (📶) ▶ *Barcodes*

1 Select **Scan Code** and press

Camera is activated.

- If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If handset becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera...** appears and scanning ends.
- Select Portrait or Macro mode depending on the barcode size (see P.6-7).
 - ▶ Press to toggle between Normal Scanning and Continuous Scanning.
 - ▶ Press to toggle Mobile Light **On** (Macro) and **Off**.
 - ▶ Press (brighter) or (darker) to adjust Brightness.

2 Frame barcode in the center of Display

3 Press

Mobile camera scans the barcode.

- ▶ To stop scan, press **Cancel** ▶ Start over from Step 2

4 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

- ▶ Using Scan Results: see P.15-34

- ▶ To start over, press **Back** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 2

Continuous Mode

- After scanning, **Scan Complete Scan New?** appears.

- To scan next code, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ Frame the code on Display ▶ Press
- To exit, choose **No** ▶ Press

Split Data

- After scanning, **Split Data Scan next Symbol?** appears.

- To scan next code, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ▶ Frame the code on Display ▶ Press
- To cancel, choose **No** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Data will not be saved until all split data is scanned.

- The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example, indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

Font & Image Size

- While scan results appear, press **Menu** → Select **Set Display Size** → Press ● → Select **Font Size** or **Image Size** → Press ● → Select a size → Press ●
 - Font Size is **Standard** and Image Size is **100%** by default.
- Alternatively, press  to switch image size.  appears for 100% and  for 200%.)
- The changes do not affect the settings for received/sent messages or Web.

Using Scan Results

| | |
|--|--|
| Place Calls¹ | Select a number starting with TEL: ² → Press ● → Select Call → Press ● → Press ⏪ |
| Send Mail³ | Select a mail address including @ → Press ● → Select Send Mail → Press ● → Select Send Super Mail or Send Sky Mail → Press ● (See  P.3-3 for more.) |
| Quote & Send Mail | Press Menu → Select Send Mail → Press ● → Select Send Super Mail or Send Sky Mail → Press ● → Scan results appear → Press ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To use a part of text, press Cut → Highlight the first character of the text block to copy → Press ● → Highlight the text block → Press ● (See  P.3-3 for more.) |
| Save to Phone Book^{1,3} | Select a number starting with TEL: ² or a mail address including @ → Press ● → Select Add to Phone Book → Press ● (See Step 4 on P.5-8 for more.) |
| Access Mobile Internet Sites⁴ | Select a URL starting with http:// → Press ● → Select Open Link → Press ● → Perform Step 2 in "URLs" on  P.4-9 |
| Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies) | Select an image or melody file → Press ● → Select To Data Folder → Press ● → Enter title → Press ● → Select a folder → Press ● |
| Save to Scanned Data | Press Menu → Select Save → Press ● → Enter title → Press ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Save up to 10 items. To open saved items, see P.15-36. |
| Copy Text | Press Menu → Select Copy → Press ● → Highlight the first character of the text block to copy → Press ● → Highlight the text block → Press ● <p>Paste the copied text into a text entry window.</p> |

¹ Available when text is in **TEL:*** format.

² Text strings of 10 to 24 digits starting with 0 are also recognized as phone numbers.

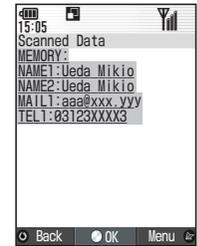
³ Available when text is in ***@*** format.

⁴ Available when text is in **http://*** format.

* represents one or more alphanumerics.

MEMORY: or MAILTO:

- When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press ● to save text underlined with a dotted line to Phone Book or send it via Sky/Super Mail. All underlined items are entered. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.



Scan during Text Entry

Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **Menu** → Press **Scan** → Select **Scan Code** → Press ● → Frame barcode in the center of Display → Press ● twice

Note

Barcodes cannot be scanned while:

- Entering titles to save scan results
- Entering text for Paste Text
- Entering text during a call
- Entering titles for sending files via infrared
- Creating Phone Book entries during calls
- Entering titles to save edited images
- V-Application is active

Reading Saved Barcode Images

Index Menu ▶ **My Files** ▶ **Data Folder**

- Select **Images** and press ●
 - To open files in sub folders, select a folder → Press ●
- Select a barcode image and press ●

Barcode appears.
- Press **Menu**
- Select **Scan Code** and press ●

Scan results appear.

 - Using Scan Results: see **P.15-34**

Split Data

- **Split Data Scan next Symbol?** appears.
 - To search remaining codes automatically, select **Auto Select** → Press ●
 - To select next code manually, select **Single Scan** → Press ● → Select a file → Press ●
 - To cancel, select **Cancel** → Press ● → Choose **Yes** → Press ●

Note

- Resized QR Codes may be invalid.
- For invalid codes, **Error This data may be Incorrect** appears.

Opening Saved Scan Results

Open files saved in Scanned Data folder.

Index Menu ► **Handy (☺)** ► **Barcodes**

- Select **Saved Files** and press ●**
 - Select a file and press **Menu** to see properties, change file name or delete. For operations, see P.12-10 and P.12-44 - 12-45.
- Select a file and press ●**

Scan results appear.

 - The file cannot be re-saved.
 - Using Scan Results: see P.15-34
 - Press **Back** to return to Scanned Data list.

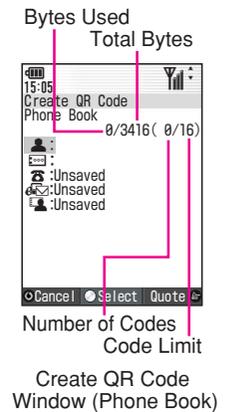
Create QR Codes

Create QR Codes from Owner Profile, Phone Book, Mail, Text, Melodies or Images. Save created QR Codes to Data Folder or attach to Super Mail. Barcodes cannot be created from windows opened with Hot Switching (see P.1-31).

Creating from **Create QR Code** Menu

Create QR Codes by selecting an item in Create QR Code menu.

- Use saved contents or enter new contents for a QR Code.
- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items up to 3,416 bytes are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Images).



Owner Profile

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses and Personal Data

■ Postal Codes cannot be encoded.

Index Menu ► **Handy (☺)** ► **Barcodes** ► **Create QR Code** ► **Owner Profile**

Enter Security Code → Press ● → Press **Create** → Press ●

Phone Book

Encode name, reading, phone numbers, mail addresses and Personal Data

■ Group Names and Option Settings are not encoded.

Index Menu ► **Handy (☺)** ► **Barcodes** ► **Create QR Code** ► **Phone Book**

Press **Quote** → **Search Phone Book** (see P.5-13) → **Select an entry** → Press ● twice → Press **Create** → Press ●

■ To add information, select an item → Press ● → Enter information → Press ●

Mail

Encode address or number (as recipient), subject, message text and attached files

Index Menu ▶ **Handy** (☺) → **Barcodes** → **Create QR Code** → **Mail**

Press **Quote** → Select from **1 Inbox** to **3 Outbox** → Press **Menu** →
Select a message → Press **Menu** → Press **Create** → Press **Menu**

To add text or attachments, select a field → Press **Menu** → Enter contents → Press **Menu**
(See **P.3-3** for details.)

Text

Encode entered text or phone number

Index Menu ▶ **Handy** (☺) → **Barcodes** → **Create QR Code** → **Text**

Select **Text** or **Phone Number** → Press **Menu** → Enter text or number →
Press **Menu** → Press **Create** → Press **Menu**

Melodies & Images

Encode melody and image files in Data Folder

Index Menu ▶ **Handy** (☺) → **Barcodes** → **Create QR Code**

Select **5 Melodies** or **6 Images** → Press **Menu** → Select a file → Press
Menu → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Menu** twice

For Original Ring Tones, select a format → Press **Menu** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Menu**

Switching Storage Media

Before pressing **Menu** to save, press **Menu** → Select **1 Save to** → Press **Menu** →
Select **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** → Press **Menu**

Attaching to Super Mail

Before pressing **Menu** to save, press **Menu** → Select **2 Attachment** → Press **Menu** →
Perform from Step 2 on **P.3-3**

Deleting Created QR Codes

Before pressing **Menu** to save, press **Menu** → Select **3 Delete** → Press **Menu** →
Select a file → Press **Menu** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Menu**

Incoming Calls while Creating

Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Creating from Saved Data

Open Owner Profile, Phone Book entry, mail message, Text Memo entry, melody file or image file to create QR Code.

1 Open a file or entry and press **Menu** or **Menu**

For mail, select a message in Mail Box.

Alternatively, for melody and image files, open Data Folder and select a file → Press **Menu** → Select **Handy Functions** → Press **Menu** → Select **Create QR Code** → Press **Menu** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **Menu** twice (Omit the next steps.)

2 Select **Create QR Code** and press **Menu**

Create QR Code window for each item opens.

3 Press **Create**

Switching Storage Media: see **P.15-38**

Attaching to Super Mail: see **P.15-38**

Deleting Created QR Codes: see **P.15-38**

4 Press **Menu**

Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines.
- Text Scanner is disabled while:
 - Music Player is active
 - Memory Card is being synchronized
 - V-Application is active
- Hold handset vertically when capturing text.
- Zoom is not available.
- Some symbols cannot be read.

Index Menu ▶ **Camera**

1 Select **7 Text Scanner** and press **Menu**

Mobile camera is activated.

• If handset is too hot, **Heat Warning: Camera Temporarily Disabled** appears and mobile camera cannot be activated. If handset becomes too hot while scanning, **Temperature High Closing Camera...** appears and scanning ends.

• Select Portrait or Macro mode depending on the text size (see **P.6-7**).

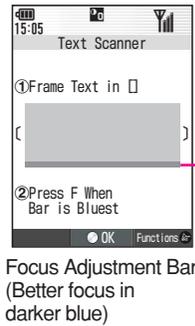
• If Music Player is active or Memory Card data is being synchronized, choose **1 Yes** → Press **Menu**

• Press **#**#** to toggle Mobile Light **On** (Macro) and **Off**.

• Use **Menu** to adjust Brightness.

2 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Text mode is set to **Auto** each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in **Auto** (such as white text in black background).
 - Press **[F3/F4]** to toggle text mode among **Standard Text (A)**, **Reversed Text (A)** and **Auto**.



3 Press [OK]

- Text Scanner reads the text. When multiple lines are captured, use [Up] to select a line. (Text Scanner reads one line per scan.)
- Press **[Esc]** to cancel → Repeat from Step 2

4 Press [OK]

Text Scanner reads the text.

5 Scan results appear

- Handset automatically recognizes scan results as a Web Address, Mail Address, Phone Number or Roman Text. If handset setting is incorrect, enter the correct mode.
- To change mode, select **[3] Change Mode** → Press **[OK]** → Select a type → Press **[OK]** (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)
 - To edit, select **[2] Select/Edit** → Press **[OK]** → Use [Left/Right] to move cursor to the character to edit → Select an alternative from the list with [Up/Down] or enter the correction directly from keypad → Press **[OK]**
 - To start over, select **[0] Retry** → Choose **[1] Yes** → Press **[OK]** → Repeat from Step 2

Tip If Text Exceeds Limit *Exceeds Limit Edit Text* appears and overage is truncated.

6 Select [OK] and press [OK]

- Scan results can be used as follows:

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| URL | Access Mobile Internet, copy |
| Mail Address | Send mail, save to Phone Book, copy |
| Phone Number | Dial, save to Phone Book, copy |

- Using Scan Results: see P.15-34
- To change font size, see P.15-34 "Font & Image Size."

Tip

- To scan additional text, press **[Menu]** → Select **Continue or Add** → Press **[OK]**
 - Select **Continue** to enter additional text. (Mode remains the same.)
 - Select **Add** to enter text after a line break.
- **Continue** and **Add** are disabled once 256 bytes have been scanned.

Note Text over 35 letters may be difficult to read even within limit.

Scan during Text Entry Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **[Menu]** → Press **[Scan]** → Select **[2] Text Scanner** → Press **[OK]** → Perform from Step 2 on P.15-40

Battery Saving

Power Saving

- Use Power Saving to reduce transmission signal strength.
- When Power Saving is active, other parties may not be able to hear you at the beginning of a call.
- Power Saving is active by default.

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 1 ► Battery Saving ► Power Saving

- 1 Choose **[1] On** and press **[OK]**
 - To cancel Power Saving, choose **[2] Off** → Press **[OK]**

Panel Saving

Use Panel Saving to place handset in hibernation mode after a period of inactivity. This will extend Battery Time. Period of inactivity can be specified between 2 and 20 minutes. Handset may not enter Panel Saving mode depending on its status, such as during calls or when using Vodafone live!.

Setting Panel Saving

Handset enters Panel Saving mode after five minutes of inactivity by default.

Index Menu ► Functions ► Settings 1 ► Battery Saving ► Panel Saving ► On/Off

- 1 Choose **[1] On** and press **[OK]**
 - To cancel Panel Saving, select **[2] Off (Light Low)** or **[3] Off (Light Off)** → Press **[OK]** (Omit the next step.)

- 2 Enter time (02 - 20 minutes) and press **[OK]**

Panel Saving Mode

- After a period of inactivity, Display shuts down automatically.
 - Pressing a key or receiving a call cancels Panel Saving mode (cancel Panel Saving mode first for Keypad operations).
 - If handset is closed (clamshell closed) in Panel Saving mode, the sound for **Power On** in Sound Effects settings (see **P.8-6**) rings. Open handset to cancel Panel Saving mode.

Tip Set shorter time to extend Battery Time.

Flash Small Light (Orange)

Small Light does not flash in Panel Saving mode by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 1* ▶ *Battery Saving* ▶ *Panel Saving* ▶ *LED Indicator*

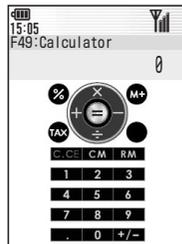
- 1 Select **LED Indicator On** and press **OK**
 ■ To cancel, select **LED Indicator Off** ▶ Press **OK**

Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic, percentage, and tax calculation.

Key Assignments:

| | | | |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|--|
| + (Add) | | RM (Recall Memory) | |
| - (Subtract) | | M+ (Add Memory) | |
| x (Multiply) | | . (Decimal) | |
| ÷ (Divide) | | +/- (Switch) | |
| = (Equal) | | % (Percent) | |
| C+CE (Clear) | | TAX (Tax) | |
| CM (Clear Memory) | | | |



Tax rate is **5%** by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2*

- 1 Select **Calculator** and press **OK**
 - Use Keypad to enter digits, and the above keys for calculation.
 - Alternatively, in Standby, enter any number, then press **OK** to open Calculator.
 - To change tax rate, enter rate (01 - 99%) ▶ Press **Long Press**
- 2 Press **End** to end

Saved Information

- Copy calculation results or numbers saved in Memory to text entry windows.
 - In a text entry window, press **Menu** ▶ Press **Saved Information** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **Calculator** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Perform Step 7 on P.4-17**

Tip

- Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls.
- Press **Clear Memory** to clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Spending Memo

Use Spending Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses.

- Enter up to 31 entries (up to 30,999,969 yen in total, 999,999 yen per entry).
- Spending Memo cannot be opened during a call.

Entry Enter monetary figure

Enter amount ▶ Press **Enter Amount** ▶ **Select a category** ▶ Press **OK**

- The entry date and time is automatically saved.
- If Clock is unset (see **P.1-28**), entry date and time will be saved as --/-- --:--.

Totals Check entries

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Spending Memo*

Select **Totals** ▶ Press **OK**

- Use **Up** to scroll through entries.
- To edit entry item name or change entry amount ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **New Item** or **Change Total** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Edit ▶ Press **OK**

Delete Delete entries

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Spending Memo* ▶ *Totals*

Select an entry ▶ Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete Item** or **Delete All** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **OK**

New Item

Rename categories

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Spending Memo* ▶ *New Item*

Select a category ▶ Press ● ▶ Edit ▶ Press ●

- Enter up to 10 single-byte characters.
- Clear the name and press ●. Default name returns.

Pen Light

Use handset as a flashlight.

Illuminate

Illuminate Pen Light

In Standby, double-press (M)

To turn off, press (C), (M), (S), (S), (L) or (R)

Pen Light Settings

Change Lighting Time and color

Default Lighting Time: 1 Minute, Color: Lychee (white)

Index Menu ▶ *Briefcase* ▶ *Pen Light* ▶ *Pen Light Settings*

Lighting Time

Select **Lighting Time** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select time ▶ Press ●

Color

Select **Color** ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a color ▶ Press ●

Select a color and press (Light) to check the color.

Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.
- Pen light cannot be used when:
 - Mobile camera is active
 - Key Guard is set
 - Keypad Lock is set
 - During Calls
 - Receiving mail
 - Recording on Voice Recorder
 - SMAF file is active
 - Calling/Sending
 - Stopwatch is active
 - Kitchen Timer is active
 - Playing melodies

Tip

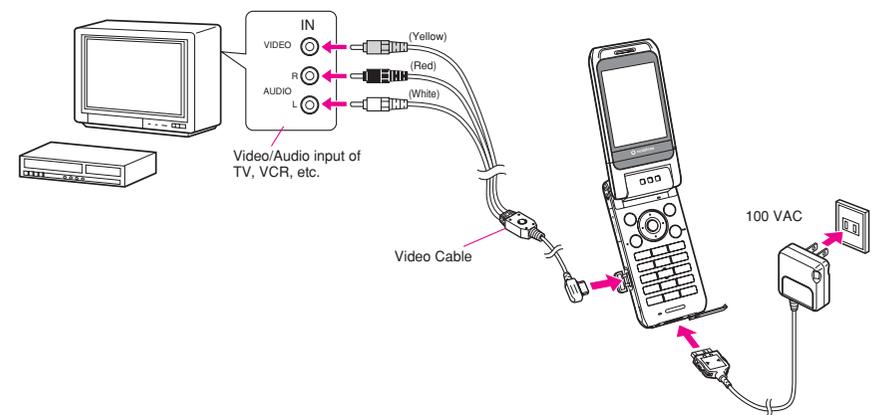
- Pen Light goes off and Display Backlight illuminates for incoming calls, messages, etc.
- Backlight illuminates after Lighting Time when a V-Application is active and **Backlight** in V-Appli Settings (see (P.12-3)) is **Always Active**.
- When handset is closed, opening handset turns off Pen Light.
- Select shorter Lighting Time to extend Battery Time.

Viewing Images on Other Devices

Connect handset to TV, VCR, etc. to view images and compatible V-Applications (see (P.11-4)) saved on handset or Memory Card, or display functions using MC Sensor (see P.1-14).

- Use the supplied Video Cable to connect to other devices.
- Using non-specified cables may cause malfunctions or damage.
- Some images and sounds do not play on other devices.
- Camera mode files and V-Applications do not appear on handset Display while viewing on other devices.
- Not available when handset is closed (clamshell closed).

Connecting to Other Devices



Activating Video Out

Connect handset to TV, VCR, etc. before activating Video Out.
Video Out is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings*

1 Select **Video Out** and press **Enter**

- ▶ To toggle display size, select **Display Size** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select **Original Size** or **Enlarge** ▶ Press **Enter**
- ▶ To rotate images, select **Rotate Image** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select from **Use Current** to **270°** ▶ Press **Enter**

2 Choose **On** and press **Enter**

- Image appears on handset at the same time.
- ▶ To cancel Video Out, choose **Off** ▶ Press **Enter**

Note

- Observe the following when connecting TV, VCR, etc. and handset:
 - Turn off the device before connecting Video Cable.
 - Connect Video Cable only to the video/audio inputs of the device and Video Out Connector of V501SH
 - Plug in Video Cable firmly. To disconnect, grasp the plug and pull gently.
 - Do not pull, twist or bend Video Cable to avoid damaging the cable and handset Video Out Connector
- While Video Out is in use, control the volume on the connected device. Turn down the volume before disconnecting from handset.
- Images may be noisy or distorted depending on the device. Images may be cropped vertically when enlarged.
- Video Out is canceled if LCD Remote/Mic, Optical Conversion Cable, etc. is connected to Video Out Connector.
- Unsaved still images or video images cannot be exported.
- Web information cannot be exported.

Tip

- Battery drains faster when Video Out is in use.
- While playing Video Camera mode video on the connected device, press **End Call**. Video Out is temporarily canceled and the video plays on handset from the beginning.
- Phone Book entries, Phone Book Entry List, Data Folder image list and Mail Box windows cannot be exported when an invalid image is included.

Slide Show

When using Slide Show (see **P.12-21**) with Video Out **On**, still images appear sequentially on the connected device at the same time. Slide Show Wipe (see **P.12-21**) is disabled on the device.

LCD Remote/Mic

Initiating Calls

Use Call Button on LCD Audio Remote Control with Microphone (optional accessory) to call the number saved in Memory Number 000 (see **P.5-5**).

1 Connect Remote to handset

2 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double beep sounds

- The number is dialed.

3 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds

- Call ends. Alternatively, press **End Call** to disconnect call.
- Closing handset does not end the call.

Note

- If Memory Number 000 is a Secret Mode entry, activate Secret Mode to call it (see **P.14-6**).
- Cancel Keypad Lock and Phone Book Lock to place calls (see **P.14-2 - 14-3**).
- Do not wrap cord around handset or Antenna. This may cause malfunction. Noise interference occurs if cord is close to Antenna.
- Plug in Remote firmly. If not, sounds may not be heard.

Answering Calls

1 Connect Remote to handset

Ring Tone sounds from headphones only or from both headphones and handset speaker depending on the setting (see **P.15-48**).

2 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds to answer a call

3 Press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds

- Call ends. Alternatively, press **End Call** to disconnect call.
- Closing handset does not end the call.

Ringer Out

When headphones are connected to handset, Ring Tone sounds from headphones and handset speaker.

To disable speaker, follow these steps.

Earphone/Speaker is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Ringer Out**

1 Select **1 Earphone** and press ●

To use headphones and speaker, select **2 Earphone/Speaker** ▶ Press ●



Even if **Earphone** is selected, Ring Tone sounds from speaker when headphones are not connected.

Fax & PC Transmissions

Fax Transmissions

Use handset for fax transmissions via data/fax card

Connect a data/fax card

- **FAX COM.** appears during G3 FAX transmissions.

PC Transmissions

Use handset for PC transmissions via data/fax card

Connect a data/fax card

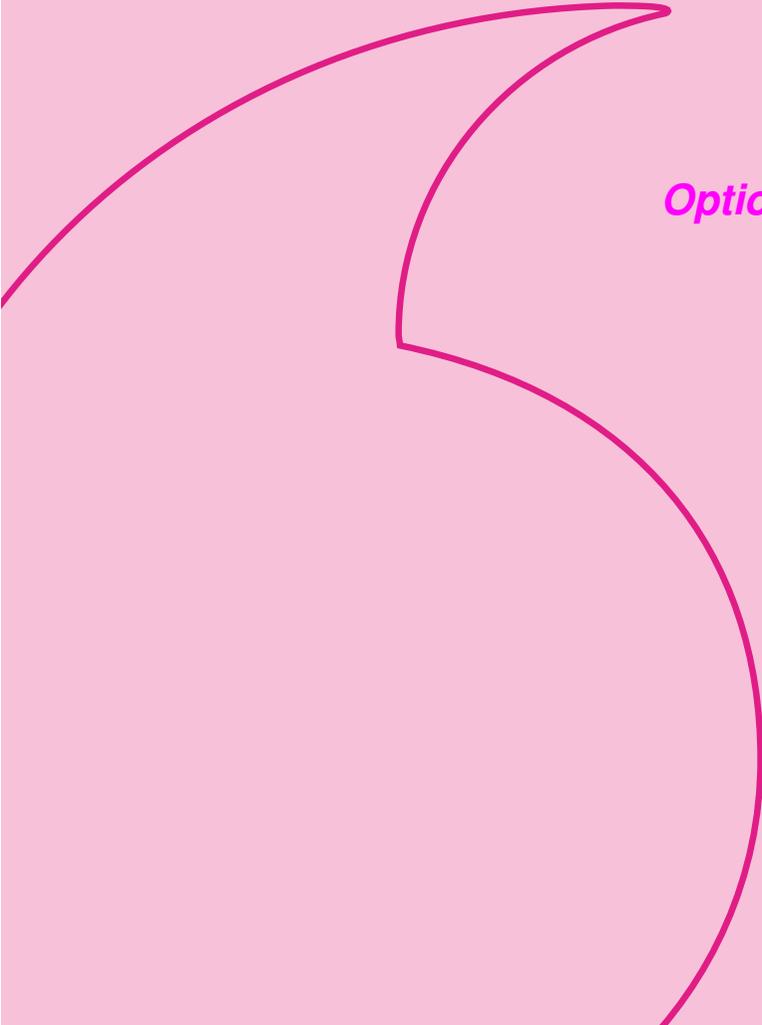
- **MODEM COM.** appears during PC transmissions.



Use handset for fax or PC transmissions only when signal conditions are stable.



- Sign-in window may differ by data/fax card.
- Handset supports 9,600 bps high-speed data transmissions.
- To connect data/fax cards to fax machines or PCs, see the manuals for the device.



Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

- When handset is out-of-range or outside your subscription area, access Optional Services from a touch-tone landline.
- For details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.17-21).

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Call Forwarding | When you know you will be unable to receive calls to your handset, use Call Forwarding to automatically transfer calls to another phone number (see P.16-3). |
| Voice Mail | Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail. Retrieve caller messages from handset or any touch-tone phone, anytime. Voice Mail indicator appears on handset after message is recorded (see P.16-4). |
| Call Waiting | Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (see P.16-6). |
| 3 Way Calling | Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Create a conference call by adding another party to an existing conversation (see P.16-7). |
| Caller ID | Use Caller ID to identify callers before answering. Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls. When no Caller ID is sent, the reason appears. |

Call Forwarding

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail.

Set Fwd Number Save a forwarding number

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Call Forwarding* ▶ *Set Fwd Number*

Enter a phone number ▶ **Press** ●

Saved number appears following **Connecting to Network...**

- Include the area code for landline phone numbers.



Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:

- **1** (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- **0120** (Toll-free numbers)
- **0990** (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

Start Fwd Initiate Call Forwarding

■ Save a forwarding number beforehand.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Call Forwarding* ▶ *Start Fwd*

Select 1 Call (handset rings/vibrates before forwarding calls) or

2 No Call (calls are forwarded immediately) ▶ Press ●

テンソウサービス ON (Call Forwarding On) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

- **2 No Call** is currently available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

Cancel Secretary Cancel Call Forwarding

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Cancel Secretary*

Choose 1 Yes ▶ Press ●

ヒショサービス OFF (Secretary Service Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Check Secretary Check Call Forwarding status

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Check Secretary*

Choose 1 Yes ▶ Press ●

Service status appears.

Incoming Calls while Call Forwarding is Active

■ To answer calls, press ☺ while handset is ringing/vibrating.

- Calls are forwarded immediately when **No Call** is set. (Available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.)

Voice Mail

- For details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.17-21).
- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding.

Voice Mail

Initiate Voice Mail

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Voice Mail

Select **1** **Call (handset rings/vibrates before forwarding calls) or**
2 **No Call (calls are forwarded immediately)** ▶ Press **●**

ルスパンサーサービス ON (Voice Mail On) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

- **2** **No Call** is currently available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

Incoming Calls while Voice Mail is Active

- To answer calls, press **☺** while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - Calls are forwarded immediately when **No Call** is set. (Available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas, and when used in those areas.)
- **☺** appears on handset after message is recorded.

When Voice Mail is Canceled (Kanto Koshin, Tokai and Kansai)

- While handset is ringing/vibrating, press **●****☺** to forward the call. (This function is for one time only. Voice Mail remains canceled.)
- When the call is not successfully forwarded, **Unavailable** appears and Incoming Call Notice returns.
- When Side Key Settings (see P.15-3) is set to **5** **Forward Voice Mail**, calls can be forwarded by pressing Side Key for 1+ seconds (with clamshell closed) while handset is ringing/vibrating.

Cancel Secretary

Cancel Voice Mail

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Cancel Secretary

Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **●**

ヒショサービス OFF (Secretary Service Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Check Secretary

Check Voice Mail status

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Check Secretary

Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **●**

Service status appears.

Play Voice Mail

Check Voice Mail messages

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Play Voice Mail

Choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **●** ▶ Press **☺**

- Follow the guidance for further operations after handset connects to Voice Mail Center.
 - Press **☺** when finished.
 - To change Voice Center number, choose **1** **Yes** ▶ Press **●** ▶ Press **☺** ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press **●** ▶ Press **☺** to dial
 - Default: **1416**



Tip ☺ disappears after messages are checked, unless they are checked from a touch-tone landline.

Ring Time

This function is not available for subscribers in Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas.

Choose **Call** for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail and select Ring Time from 5 to 30 seconds (by 5 seconds).

- This function cannot be set from landlines or while handset is out-of-range or outside your subscription area.
- This function is disabled when **No Call** is set. (**No Call** is available only for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.)

Ring Time

Set Ring Time for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail

Default: 20 Seconds

Index Menu ▶ Functions ▶ Services ▶ Ring Time

Select Ring Time ▶ Press **●**

トウロク (Saved) appears following **Connecting to Network...**



Adjust Ring Time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding or Voice Mail together with Message Recorder (see P.15-4).

Example: Ring time for Call Forwarding or Voice Mail: 10 seconds
Ring time for Message Recorder: 9 seconds

In this example, Message Recorder responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.) If Message Recorder memory is full, Voice Mail will activate.

Call Waiting

Call Waiting On/Off Activate or cancel Call Waiting

■ Subscribers in Hokkaido, Hokuriku, Kyushu, Okinawa, Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas cannot set this service from handsets (service itself is available).

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Call Waiting*

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ▶ Press **●**

ワリコミコール ON (Call Waiting On) or **ワリコミコール OFF** (Call Waiting Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Confirm Service Check Call Waiting status

■ Subscribers in Hokkaido, Hokuriku, Kyushu, Okinawa, Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas cannot check the status from handsets (service itself is available).

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Services* ▶ *Confirm Service*

Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **●**

ワリコミコール ON (Call Waiting On) or **ワリコミコール OFF** (Call Waiting Off) appears following **Connecting to Network...**

Incoming Calls Put Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press **⏸**

Press **⏸** to switch between two lines.



Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece and **Incoming Call** appears.

Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai Areas

■ When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is active, unanswered incoming calls are transferred to Voice Mail or the forwarding number. Call Waiting is disabled if **No Call** is selected, then all calls are transferred directly.

Ending a Call while Someone is on Hold

■ When **⏸** is pressed, a beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **⏸** or **⏹** to talk with the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

■ A beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **⏸** or **⏹** to talk with the party on hold.

3 Way Calling

Open Another Line Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ▶ Press **⏸**

Line 2 is open. Line 1 is put on hold.

• Phone Book, Redial, Call History and Notepad Memory are available.

Switch Line Switch between two open lines

During a call, press **⏸**

The line switches. The other line is put on hold.

• Press **⏸** to toggle between two lines.

Ending a Call while Someone is on Hold

■ When **⏸** is pressed, a beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **⏸** or **⏹** to talk with the party on hold.

Line 1 Ends while Line 2 is on Hold

■ A beep sounds and **Caller on Hold** appears. Press **⏸** or **⏹** to talk with the party on hold.

Break Away (while Switching Lines) Original call ends
Line 1 and Line 2 remain connected

■ Available for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

While switching between two lines, press **●** ▶ Select **6 Break Away**
▶ Press **●** ▶ Choose **1 Yes** ▶ Press **●**

テンソウカンリョウ (Break Away completed) appears. You are disconnected, but Line 1 and 2 remain connected. (If you made the call, you are charged for the remaining call.)

• Press **⏸** to return to Standby.

3 Way Calling Use two lines simultaneously

Press **●** while switching between two lines ▶ Select **5 3 Way Calling**
▶ Press **●**

• You cannot switch lines (see above) once shifted to 3 Way Calling.

Break Away
(from 2 Open Lines)

Original call ends
Line 1 and Line 2 remain connected

■ Available for subscribers in Kanto, Koshin, Tokai and Kansai areas.

Press **●** during 3 Way Calls → Select **4 Break Away** → Press **●** →
Choose **Yes** → Press **●**

テソウカンリョウ (Break Away completed) appears. You are disconnected, but Line 1 and 2 remain connected. (If you made the call, you are charged for the remaining call.)

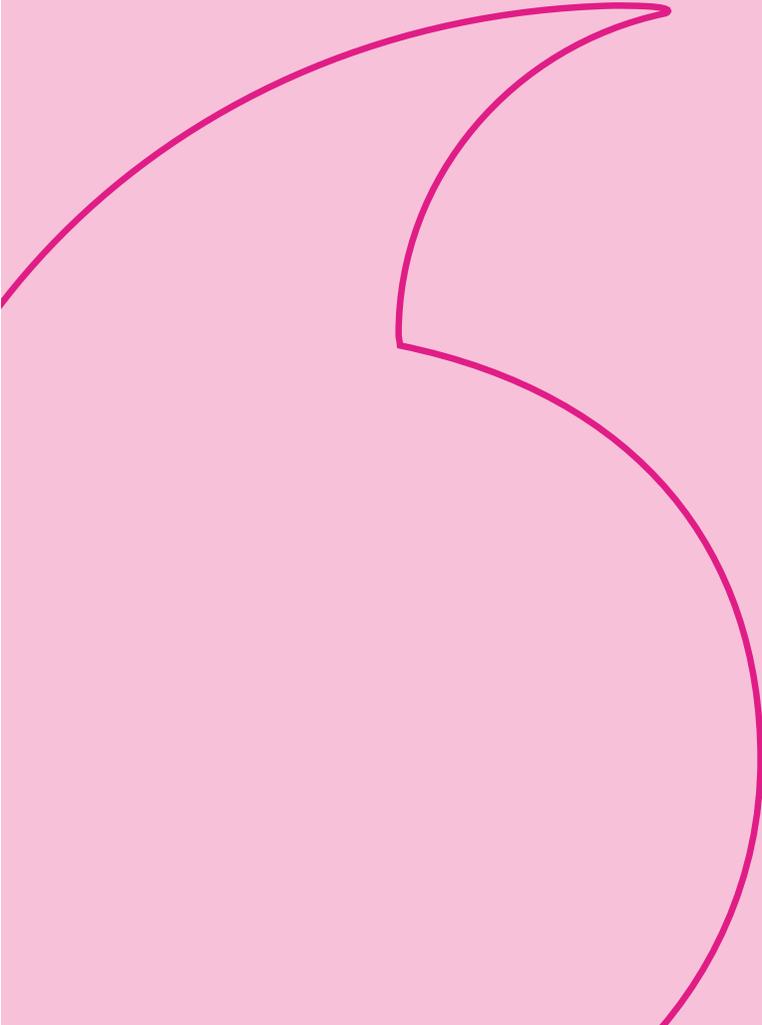
• Press **Ⓜ** to return to Standby.

Ending a Call during 3 Way Calls

■ Both lines are disconnected.

Line 1 Ends during 3 Way Calls

■ Line 2 remains connected.



Appendix

Function List

Settings for items with gray background are affected by Reset.

¹ Also available during calls.

² Currently not available in Hokkaido, Hokuriku, Kyushu and Okinawa areas.

³ Currently not available in Tohoku, Niigata, Chugoku and Shikoku areas.

⁴ Available only when switching between two open lines. **Break Away** is currently not available in Hokkaido, Tohoku, Niigata, Hokuriku, Chugoku, Shikoku, Kyushu and Okinawa areas.

| Functions Menu | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| 0. My Number ¹ | Open handset phone number |
| 1. Sounds | Call Functions, Volume, Sound Effects, etc. |
| 2. Privacy | Manage handset security with Keypad Lock, Auto Key Lock, etc. |
| 3. Settings 1 | Display settings such as Light Settings, Group Settings and Side Key Settings |
| 4. Settings 2 | Display settings including User Dictionary and Manner Settings |
| 5. Clock | Alarm, Clock Display, etc. |
| 6. Charges | Call Charge, Total Talk Time, etc. |
| 7. Services | Activate Optional Services such as Voice Mail and Call Forwarding |
| 8. Vodafone live! | Access Mail, Web, Station, V-Applications and Data Folder |
| Entry Search | Search Phone Book entries (see P.5-12) |
| Save Entry | Add entries to Phone Book (see P.5-4) |
| Redial | Place calls from Redial (see P.2-4) |
| Call History | Open records of received calls (see P.2-16) |
| Notepad Memory | Show numbers saved during a call (see P.2-15) |

1. Sounds

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|-------------------------|--|--|
| 0. Call Functions | Refer to the table on P.8-2 . Delayed Ringer: Off, Close to End Call: On, Anykey Answer: On | P.8-2, P.2-12, P.2-3, P.2-6 |
| 1. Volume ¹ | Level 5 | P.2-13 |
| 3. Sound Effects | Refer to the table in "Sound Effects" | P.8-6 |
| 5. Ringer Out | Earphone/Speaker | P.15-48 |
| 6. Speaker ¹ | Off | P.8-22 |
| 7. Original Tones | - | P.8-9 |
| 8. Instrument Effects | - | P.8-17 |
| 9. Tone Octave | - | P.8-22 |

2. Privacy

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|-----------------------------|---------|---------------|
| 0. Keypad Lock | Off | P.14-2 |
| 1. Auto Key Lock | Off | P.14-3 |
| 2. Secret Mode ¹ | Off | P.14-6 |
| 3. Phone Book Lock | Off | P.14-3 |
| 4. Restrict Dial | Off | P.14-3 |
| 5. Accept Call | Off | P.14-5 |
| 6. Reject Call | All Off | P.14-5 |
| 7. Reset All | - | P.14-7 |
| 8. Change Code | - | P.14-2 |
| 9. Reset Defaults | - | P.14-7 |

3. Settings 1

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| 0. Guide ¹ | - | P.1-35 |
| 1. Memory | - | P.5-8, P.6-30, P.12-3 |
| 2. Off-Line Mode | Off | P.3-6 |
| 3. Battery Saving | Power Saving: On, Panel Saving On/Off: On (5 minutes), LED Indicator: Off | P.15-41 |
| 4. Light Settings | Backlight: On (15 seconds), Keypad Light: On (15 seconds), In-Car Backlight: Off, Brightness: Level 4 | P.7-12 |
| 5. 言語選択 (Language) | 日本語 (Japanese) | P.7-14 |
| 6. Sub Display | Sub Display On/Off: On, Backlight Settings On (15 seconds), Adjust Contrast: Contrast 5, Recipient Display: On | P.7-13 |
| 7. Group Settings | - | P.5-16 |
| 8. Signal Alert | Off | P.15-2 |
| 9. Side Key Settings | Incoming Calls: Off (M), (S), (◀) and (▶) Message Recorder (C) Standby (B): Off | P.15-3 |

4. Settings 2

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|---------------------|--|--|
| 0. Display Settings | Wallpaper: Off, Display Images: All Off, Power On Message: Off, Font Settings: All Standard, Letter Pad: Off, Video Out: Off, Index Menu Display: 3D-1, Viewer Display: Orientation 1, Dialing Display: 2D | P.7-2, P.7-5, P.7-14, P.7-7, P.4-17, P.15-46, P.7-6, P.7-15 |
| 1. Display Patterns | Standby Indicator: On, Battery Level: Icon 1, Signal Strength: Icon 1, Menu Background: Background 1, Frames: Menu Frame 1, Menu Design: Menu Design 1, Cursor: Cursor 1, Guide Keys: Pattern 1, Title/Status Bars: Color Scheme 1, Floating Windows: Pattern 1, Pull Up Menus: Pattern 1 | P.7-11 |

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|-------------------------------|--|---------------|
| 2. Spending Memo ¹ | - | P.15-43 |
| 3. User Dictionary | - | P.4-15 |
| 4. Message Recorder | Recorder Settings, Play, Outgoing Message, Volume Level, In-Car Recorder, Answer Time | P.15-4 |
| 5. Info Menu Settings | Incoming Light: All Off, Time Out Setting: Time out Off | P.2-19 |
| 6. Manner Settings | Message Recorder: On, Ring Tone Level: All Silent, Vibration: All On, LED Indicator: Small Light, Whisper Mode: On, Sound Volume: Silent, Alarm Volume: Silent, Alarm Vibration: On, V-Appli Volume: Silent, V-Appli Vibration: On | P.3-4 |
| 7. MC Settings | M-key Settings: Off, -key Settings: Off, Viewer Setting: Cancel MC Sensor | P.15-22 |
| 8. Animation | Screen Animation: Off, Standby Animation: On, Vodafone live!: All On | P.7-15 - 7-16 |
| 9. Calculator | - | P.15-42 |

5. Clock

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|--------------------------------|---------|----------|
| 0. Alarm | - | P.15-7 |
| 1. Auto Power On | Off | P.15-11 |
| 2. Auto Power Off | Off | P.15-12 |
| 3. Clock Display | Large 1 | P.7-3 |
| 5. Stopwatch | - | P.15-30 |
| 6. Kitchen Timer | - | P.15-31 |
| 9. Clock Settings ¹ | - | P.1-28 |

6. Charges

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| 0. Total Charges | 0 Yen | P.2-21 |
| 1. Call Charge | 0 Yen | P.2-21 |
| 2. Total Talk Time | 0 hours 0 minutes | P.2-20 |
| 3. Call Time | 0 minutes 0 seconds | P.2-20 |
| 4. Instant Display | Off | P.2-20 - 2-21 |

7. Services

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| 0. Ring Time ³ | 20 Seconds | P.16-5 |
| 1. Call Forwarding | - | P.16-3 |
| 2. Voice Mail | Call (Voice Mail active) | P.16-4 |
| 3. Cancel Secretary | - | P.16-3 - 16-4 |
| 4. Check Secretary | - | P.16-3 - 16-4 |
| 5. Call Waiting ^{2, 3} | - | P.16-6 |
| 6. Confirm Service ^{2, 3} | - | P.16-6 |
| 7. Play Voice Mail | - | P.16-5 |
| 8. 3 Way Calling ⁴ | - | P.16-7 |
| 9. Setup Preset | International Call: 0046010 | P.2-5 |

8. Vodafone live!

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. Mail | - | Vodafone live! |
| 2. Web | - | Vodafone live! |
| 3. Station | - | Vodafone live! |
| 4. V-Appli | - | Vodafone live! |
| 5. Data Folder | File View (List) | P.12-8 |
| 6. Network Settings | - | Vodafone live! |

Other Settings Affected by Reset

| Function | Default | Refer to |
|---|---|----------|
| Manner Mode | Canceled | P.3-3 |
| Message Recorder | Canceled | P.15-4 |
| Phone Book Search Method | Memory No. Search | P.5-12 |
| Encode | Phone Book, Mail, Schedule: All Off | P.11-11 |
| Pen Light | Lighting Time: 1 Minute, Color: Lychee | P.15-44 |
| Schedule View | Day Detail/Stamps | P.15-19 |
| Scan Code/Text Scanner Set Display Size | Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100% | P.15-34 |
| User Shortcut: Keypad (Long Press)/Motion Pattern | Entry Search: /-, Auto Reply: /-, Calculator: /-, Alarm: /-, Call Functions: /-, Display Settings: /-, Inbox: /Up & Up (), 2-Touch Mail: /Left & Left (), V-Appli Library: /- | P.15-27 |
| Camera | Auto Save: Off | P.6-26 |

Troubleshooting

| Problem | Possible Cause | Solution |
|--|--|--|
| Handset does not turn on | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is pressed for 1+ seconds? Is battery low or dead? Is battery installed? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press for 1+ seconds. Charge battery or install a charged battery. Install battery properly. |
| OUT appears and cannot make calls from handset | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is handset out-of-range? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. |
| Keypad does not respond | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Key Guard active? (appears) Is Keypad Lock active? (appears) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Key Guard (see P.1-27). Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.14-2). |
| Cannot enter numbers from handset Keypad | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Key Guard active? (appears) Is Keypad Lock active? (appears) Is Restrict Dial On? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Key Guard (see P.1-27). Cancel Keypad Lock (see P.14-2). Cancel Restrict Dial (see P.14-3). |
| Cannot place calls from Phone Book | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the number saved as Secret Mode entry? Is Phone Book Lock active? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate Secret Mode (see P.14-6). Cancel Phone Book Lock (see P.14-3). |
| Beep continues after dialing and call cannot be connected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you dial the number including the area code or first 0? Is handset out-of-range? (OUT appears) Is handset off-line? (appears) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dial the number including the area code or 0. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Cancel Off-Line Mode (see P.3-6). |
| Calls are interrupted or cut | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is signal weak? Is battery low or dead? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Charge battery or install a charged battery. |
| Hear noise while talking on the phone | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This may happen when signal is weak or unstable. | - |
| Display flickers | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Display may flicker under fluorescent lights. | - |
| Display is dark when Backlight is off | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Panel construction characteristic; not a malfunction. | - |
| Sound does not come from handset speaker | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Manner Mode set? (appears) Is Video Out set to On? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Manner Mode (see P.3-3). Set Video Out to Off. |

| Problem | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|---|--|
| Cannot charge battery | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Rapid Charger connected correctly to handset or Desktop Holder? Is Rapid Charger plugged in firmly? Is battery installed? Is handset in Desktop Holder correctly? Are handset, battery, Charger Terminals & Connection Terminal (Desktop Holder) and External Device Connector clean? Battery may not be charged if temperature is not within 5°C - 35°C. Battery has run out or is defective. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plug in again. Plug in again. Install battery properly. Insert correctly. Clean with a cotton swab. Handle within ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C. Replace battery with a new one. |
| Charging time is shorter | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Charging time shortens when battery is not empty. | - |
| Handset or accessories are hot | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rapid Charger or Desktop Holder may heat up while charging. Handset may also heat up if used for long periods. This is normal if they are not extremely hot. | - |
| Battery runs out quickly | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Battery runs out faster depending on the environment (temperatures, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to "Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)" and "Extend Battery Time" (see P.1-18 - 1-19). |
| Functions using MC Sensor (MC Cursor, MC Shortcut, Shake Counter, Shake Sound, Compass and Full Auto) do not work correctly. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is MC Sensor adjusted properly? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust MC Sensor (see P.15-22). |

Tip For repairs and after-sales services, contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance (see **P.17-21**).

Table with 4 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit, First Three Digits, Last Digit. Contains vertical columns of numbers and Chinese characters.

Table with 4 columns: First Three Digits, Last Digit, First Three Digits, Last Digit. Contains vertical columns of numbers and Chinese characters.

■ Rapid Charger

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Power Source | 100 VAC, 50/60 Hz |
| Power Consumption | 8 VA |
| Output Voltage/Current | 5.6 VDC/500 mA |
| Charging Temperature | 5°C - 35°C |
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | Approximately 48 x 17 x 46 mm (without protruding parts, cord) |
| Cord Length | Approximately 1.5 m |

■ Battery

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Voltage | 3.7 V |
| Battery Type | Lithium-ion |
| Capacity | 750 mAh |
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | Approximately 35.5 x 4.9 x 46.0 mm (without protruding parts) |

Index

Numbers/Symbols

- ☉-key Settings..... 15-22
- 3 Way Calling 16-7

A

- Accept Call 14-5
- Acquire Dictionary..... 4-15
- Action Item 15-15
- Add Date..... 6-40
- Adjust MC Sensor..... 15-22
- Alarm 15-7
- Animation Tool 12-11, 12-17
- Answer Time (Message Recorder).... 15-4
- Anykey Answer..... 2-6
- Assign ☉ Function 15-22
- Attach 1/4 Size 6-37, 12-9
- Attach 240 x 320 (Camera mode image)..6-38
- Attach Full Image..... 6-37, 12-9
- Attach Screen 12-9
- Attach Split Mail..... 6-37, 12-9
- Attach Thumbnail (Camera mode image).6-38
- Auto Bracket 6-16
- Auto Key Lock 14-3
- Auto Power Off 15-12
- Auto Power On..... 15-11
- Auto Protect (Schedule)..... 15-18
- Auto Reply..... 5-11
- Auto Reset..... 6-27
- Auto Save 6-26
- Autorun..... 11-12

B

- Backlight 7-12
- battery..... 1-17
- Battery Level (Display Patterns) 7-11
- Battery Saving 15-41
- Battery Strength 1-19 - 1-20
- Bit Rate..... 9-10
- Bookmark (E-Book)..... 12-42
- Break Away 16-7
- Brightness (Display)..... 7-13

- Brightness (mobile camera)..... 6-24

C

- Calculator..... 15-42
- Calendar..... 7-4
- Calendar (creating) 6-42
- Call Charge 2-21
- Call Forwarding 16-3
- Call Functions 8-2
- Call History 2-16
- Call in Progress..... 2-16
- Call Time 2-20
- Call Waiting..... 16-6
- Caller ID (sending/blocking)..... 2-2
- calls (ending)..... 2-2
- calls (placing) 2-2, 2-8
- Camera mode 6-8, 6-10
- Cancel Secretary 16-3, 16-4
- Center Access Code 1-36
- Centered..... 7-2
- Chaku-Uta 12-34
- Change Format (images) 12-28
- Change to Vnote..... 4-20
- Character Code (entering)..... 4-9
- Character Code (list)..... 17-9
- Check Secretary 16-3, 16-4
- clamshell closed 1-11, 2-11
- clamshell open 1-11
- Clock Display..... 7-3
- Clock Settings 1-28
- Close to End Call..... 2-3
- Combine Split Mail 12-33
- Compass 15-23
- Composite..... 12-29
- Confirm Service (Call Waiting)..... 16-6
- Continuous Mode..... 15-26
- Copy (text) 4-17
- Count..... 15-24
- Count Down..... 15-24
- Create QR Code..... 15-37
- Cursor (Display Patterns)..... 7-11
- cursor 1-28

| | |
|--------------------|-------|
| Custom Screen..... | 7-8 |
| Cut (images)..... | 12-23 |
| Cut (text)..... | 4-17 |

D

| | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Data Folder..... | 12-3 |
| Delayed Ringer..... | 2-12 |
| Delete Back..... | 6-33 |
| Delete Front..... | 6-33 |
| Delete Posterior/Previous..... | 4-17 |
| Desktop Holder..... | 1-24 |
| Dialing Display..... | 7-15 |
| Display..... | 1-8 |
| Display Images..... | 7-5 |
| Display Patterns..... | 7-11 |
| DPOF..... | 6-39 |

E

| | |
|----------------------|------------|
| E-Animation..... | 12-14 |
| Earpiece Volume..... | 2-13 |
| E-Book..... | 12-40 |
| Edit..... | 6-31, 10-8 |
| Effects..... | 12-25 |
| Emoticons..... | 4-8 |
| English..... | 7-14 |
| Enlarge Display..... | 7-2 |

F

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Face Arrange..... | 12-26 |
| fast forward/reverse..... | 6-29, 9-13, 10-6, 12-35 |
| FAX transmissions..... | 15-48 |
| File Cabinet..... | 12-3 |
| Floating Window..... | 7-11 |
| Font Settings..... | 7-7 |
| Format Card..... | 11-6 |
| Forward Voice Mail..... | 2-11, 16-4 |
| Frame (saved images)..... | 12-28 |
| Frame (Sha-mail mode)..... | 6-14 |
| Frame In/Out..... | 6-35 |
| Frames (Display Patterns)..... | 7-11 |
| Free Text..... | 12-24 |
| Function List..... | 17-2 |
| Functions Menu..... | 1-30 |

G

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Group Ring Tone (Phone Book)..... | 5-16 |
| Group Search (Phone Book)..... | 5-13 |
| Group Settings (Phone Book)..... | 5-16 |
| Guide..... | 1-35 |
| Guide Keys..... | 7-11 |

H

| | |
|---|------|
| handset codes..... | 1-36 |
| handset phone number (opening My Number)..... | 2-22 |
| Handy Features..... | 1-30 |
| Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics Conversion..... | 4-13 |
| hold (incoming calls)..... | 2-9 |

I

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Image Quality..... | 6-25 |
| Image Size (mobile camera)..... | 6-25 |
| images (reducing size)..... | 12-23 |
| Inbox Auto Sort..... | 5-10 |
| In-Car Backlight..... | 7-13 |
| In-Car Charger..... | 1-25 |
| In-Car Recorder..... | 15-4 |
| incoming calls..... | 2-6 |
| incoming calls (answering)..... | 2-6 |
| incoming calls (Call Waiting)..... | 16-6 |
| incoming calls (rejecting)..... | 2-9 |
| Incoming Notice..... | 5-10 |
| Incoming Settings (Music Player)..... | 9-15 |
| Incoming Tone..... | 10-8, 12-34, 12-35 |
| Index Menu..... | 1-29 |
| Index Menu Display..... | 7-6 |
| Index Print..... | 6-40 |
| Information Menu..... | 2-17 |
| Infrared..... | 13-2 |
| Input Method..... | 4-10 |
| Instrument Effects..... | 8-17 |
| International Call..... | 2-5 |

J

| | |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Jump to Link (E-Book)..... | 12-43 |
|----------------------------|-------|

K

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| Katakana Search (Phone Book)..... | 5-13 |
| key assignments (text entry)..... | 4-3 |
| Key Guard..... | 1-27 |
| Key Ops Guide (mobile camera)..... | 6-27 |
| Keypad Lock..... | 14-2 |
| Kitchen Timer..... | 15-31 |

L

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| Language..... | 7-14 |
| LCD Remote/Mic..... | 15-47 |
| LED Indicator (for sounds)..... | 8-5 |
| Light Settings..... | 7-12 |
| List (Data Folder files)..... | 12-4, 12-8 |
| List File Names..... | 12-4, 12-8 |
| Local Contents..... | 11-12 |

M

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| Macro Mode Prompt..... | 6-5 |
| mail address (Phone Book)..... | 5-3 |
| Mail Folder (Phone Book)..... | 5-10 |
| Manner Mode..... | 3-3 |
| MC Cursor..... | 1-33 |
| MC Settings..... | 15-22 |
| MC Shortcut..... | 15-28 |
| MC Shortcut Tone..... | 8-6 |
| Memory Card (opening files)..... | 11-6 - 11-7 |
| Memory No. Search..... | 5-13 |
| Memory Status..... | 6-30, 11-6 |
| menu..... | 1-29 |
| Menu Background..... | 7-11 |
| Menu Design..... | 7-11 |
| Merge Panorama..... | 12-31 |
| Message Recorder..... | 2-10, 15-4 |
| Mic Level (Voice Recorder)..... | 10-4 |
| Mic Settings (mobile camera)..... | 6-25 |
| Missed Call..... | 2-16 |
| M-key Settings..... | 15-22 |
| MNG File Conversion..... | 12-13 |
| mobile camera..... | 6-2 |
| Mobile Light..... | 6-24 |
| Monitor Level..... | 9-9 |
| Motion Camera mode..... | 6-18, 6-20 |
| Motion Control..... | 1-14 |

| | |
|--------------------------|------------|
| motion pattern..... | 15-29 |
| Movie Sha-mail mode..... | 6-18, 6-20 |
| Moving Photo Frame..... | 12-29 |
| Multi Key..... | 1-6 |
| Multi Selector..... | i |
| Music Player..... | 9-2 |
| My Voice Memo..... | 15-6 |

N

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| New Memo/Note..... | 4-18 - 4-19 |
| Notepad Memory..... | 2-15 |
| Number of Copies..... | 6-40 |

O

| | |
|---|------|
| Off-Line Mode..... | 3-6 |
| One Hiragana Predictive Entry..... | 4-14 |
| One Hiragana Word Call..... | 4-14 |
| One-Hiragana Conversion..... | 4-12 |
| Original Size (Camera mode image)..... | 6-28 |
| Original Tones..... | 8-9 |
| Original Voice..... | 8-8 |
| out-of-range..... | 17-8 |
| Overlap mode..... | 6-16 |
| Owner Profile..... | 2-22 |

P

| | |
|--|-------|
| Pager Code (entering)..... | 4-10 |
| Pager Code (list)..... | 4-11 |
| Panel Saving..... | 15-41 |
| Paste..... | 4-17 |
| PC transmissions..... | 15-48 |
| Pen Light..... | 15-44 |
| Personal Data..... | 5-4 |
| Personal Ring Tone..... | 5-10 |
| Phone Book..... | 5-3 |
| Phone Book (deleting entries)..... | 5-15 |
| Phone Book (editing)..... | 5-15 |
| Phone Book (Memory No.)..... | 5-5 |
| Phone Book (Memory Status)..... | 5-8 |
| Phone Book (saving)..... | 5-3 |
| Phone Book (searching)..... | 5-12 |
| Phone Book Entry List..... | 5-12 |
| Phone Book Entry List with images..... | 5-14 |
| Phone Book Lock..... | 14-3 |

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Phonetic Conversion..... | 4-12 |
| Photo (Phone Book) | 5-6 |
| Pictographs | 4-7 |
| Picture Call/Mail | 5-7 |
| Picture Effect..... | 12-22 |
| Play List | 9-15 |
| Play Setting | 9-14, 10-7, 12-35 |
| Play Voice Mail..... | 16-5 |
| Postcard..... | 6-41 |
| Power On Message | 7-14 |
| power on/off | 1-26 |
| Power On/Off (Sound Effects) | 8-6 |
| Power Saving | 15-41 |
| Predictive (conversion) | 4-5 |
| Previous Usage (conversion) | 4-5 |
| Property | 9-15, 12-10 |
| Pull Up Menus | 7-11 |
| Push Tones..... | 15-2 |

Q

| | |
|------------------------|-----------|
| Quick Conversion | 4-13 |
| Quick Operation | 1-34 |
| Quick Shortcut | 15-30 |
| Quick Silent | 2-7, 2-11 |

R

| | |
|---|-------|
| Rapid Charger | 1-23 |
| Recording Mode (Voice Recorder) ... | 10-4 |
| Redial | 2-4 |
| Reject Call..... | 14-5 |
| Reset (information)..... | 2-19 |
| Reset All..... | 14-7 |
| Reset Defaults | 14-7 |
| Reset Learning | 4-14 |
| Restrict Dial..... | 14-3 |
| Ring Time..... | 8-5 |
| Ring Time (Call Forwarding & Voice Mail) | 16-5 |
| Ringer Out | 15-48 |
| Rotate (Picture Effect) | 12-28 |
| Rotate Thumb (Camera mode image) | 6-12 |

S

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Sampling Frequency..... | 9-5 |
| Save As Thumb (Camera mode image).... | 6-12 |

| | |
|--|-----------|
| Save Dictionary..... | 4-16 |
| Save to..... | 6-26 |
| Scan Code | 15-33 |
| Schedule..... | 15-13 |
| Screen Animation | 7-16 |
| Search by Reading (Phone Book)..... | 5-13 |
| Secret Mode | 14-6 |
| Security Code | 1-36 |
| Select 2 points | 6-32 |
| Select Mode (mobile camera)..... | 6-26 |
| Self Portrait position | 1-12 |
| Self Timer | 6-13 |
| Send All Push Tones..... | 15-2 |
| Send With Code | 2-5 |
| Sensitivity Level | 15-25 |
| Sent Auto Sort | 5-10 |
| Set Burst Mode | 6-16 |
| Set IR Password | 13-3 |
| Set LED to Sound | 8-7 |
| Shake Counter | 15-24 |
| Shake Sound..... | 15-25 |
| Sha-mail mode | 6-8, 6-10 |
| Shoot by Scene..... | 6-25 |
| Show Indicators..... | 7-11 |
| Show Thumbnails (Camera mode image) | 6-28 |
| Show/Hide Indicators (Video Camera) | 6-23 |
| Shutter Click | 6-23 |
| Side Key Settings | 15-3 |
| Side Keys | i |
| Signal Alert..... | 15-2 |
| Signal Strength (Display Patterns) ... | 7-11 |
| signal strength indicator | 1-8 |
| Simple Animation | 12-11 |
| Single Play Mode | 15-26 |
| Slide Show | 12-21 |
| Small Light | 1-6 |
| Snooze | 15-8 |
| Soft Key | 1-32 |
| Sound Effect (Music Player)..... | 9-14 |
| Sound Effects | 8-6 |
| Sound Volume | 8-7 |
| Speaker..... | 8-22 |
| Speaker Phone..... | 8-22 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Specify DPOF Prints..... | 6-39 |
| Speed Dial | 5-14 |
| Spending Memo..... | 15-43 |
| Split Data | 10-7 |
| Split Image 240 x 320 (120 x 160).... | 12-30 |
| Standby | 1-26 |
| Standby Animation | 7-15 |
| Still Image (from Motion Camera video).. | 6-32 |
| Stopwatch | 15-30 |
| Sub Display | 1-10, 7-13 |
| SVG files..... | 12-39 |
| Switch Line (3 Way Calling)..... | 16-7 |
| Symbols..... | 4-7 |
| Synchro Recording | 9-9 |
| Synchronize | 11-12 |

T

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| Telop Edit | 6-34 |
| text (deleting) | 4-16 |
| text (editing)..... | 4-16 |
| text (entering)..... | 4-4 |
| text (entry modes) | 4-2 |
| Text Memo..... | 4-18 |
| Text Scanner | 15-39 |
| Texture Panel..... | 1-15 |
| Time Out Setting..... | 2-19, 15-30 |
| Title/Status Bars | 7-11 |
| Toggle Mask..... | 12-43 |
| Toggle Preview | 6-23 |
| Tone Octave | 8-22 |
| Total Charges..... | 2-21 |
| Total Talk Time | 2-20 |
| Track Bookmarks | 9-6 |
| Track Break Level..... | 9-10 |
| Track Info Editing | 9-16 |
| Train..... | 9-14, 10-7 |
| Transfer All (Memory Card) | 11-10 |
| transferring files (Infrared) | 13-4 - 13-6 |

U

| | |
|-----------------------|-------|
| User Dictionary | 4-15 |
| User Shortcut..... | 15-27 |

V

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| V-Appli Vibration | 3-5 |
| vFiles | 12-36 |
| Vibration..... | 8-4 |
| Vibration Pattern | 8-4 |
| Video Camera mode..... | 6-18, 6-20 |
| Video Out | 15-46 |
| Viewer Display..... | 7-15 |
| Viewer position..... | 1-12 |
| Viewer Setting | 15-23 |
| Vodafone live! Animation | 7-16 |
| Voice Folder..... | 10-5 |
| Voice Mail..... | 16-4 |
| Voice Memo | 15-6 |
| Voice Recorder | 10-2 |

W

| | |
|-------------------|-----|
| Wallpaper | 7-2 |
| Whisper Mode..... | 3-5 |

Z

| | |
|-----------|-----|
| zoom..... | 6-7 |
|-----------|-----|

Warranty & After-Sales Services

Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase V501SH.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

After-Sales Services

See P.17-6 "Troubleshooting" before contacting us for repair. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact Vodafone Customer Center, Customer Assistance (see P.17-21) of your subscription area and provide detailed description.

- During the warranty term, the repair is performed under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty term, repairs are performed if possible upon your request at your expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest **Vodafone shop** or **Vodafone Customer Center, General Information** (see P.17-21). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

Note

- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- Vodafone is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Please keep a separate record of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

If you have questions about Vodafone handsets or services, please call **General Information**. For repairs, please call **Customer Assistance**.

Vodafone Customer Centers

From a Vodafone handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

Call these numbers toll free from landlines

| Subscription Area | Service Center | Phone Number |
|--|---------------------|----------------|
| Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui | General Information | ☎ 0088-240-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-240-113 |
| Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka | General Information | ☎ 0088-241-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-241-113 |
| Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama | General Information | ☎ 0088-242-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-242-113 |
| Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane | General Information | ☎ 0088-259-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-259-113 |
| Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi | General Information | ☎ 0088-247-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-247-113 |
| Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa | General Information | ☎ 0088-250-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-250-113 |

V501SH Instruction Manual

Basic Operations

August 2005, First Edition

Vodafone K.K.

For additional information, please visit a Vodafone shop.

Model: V501SH

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handset, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always be sure to erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the V501SH.

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual has been produced for V501SH Vodafone live!
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible Vodafone services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

V501SH transmits at 1.5 GHz and is compatible with the Vodafone K.K. network.

This product is exclusively for use in Japan.

Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (see P.16-16) concerning unclear or missing information.

Symbols

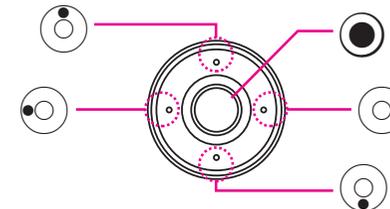
Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc.

In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.

Basic Multi Selector Operations

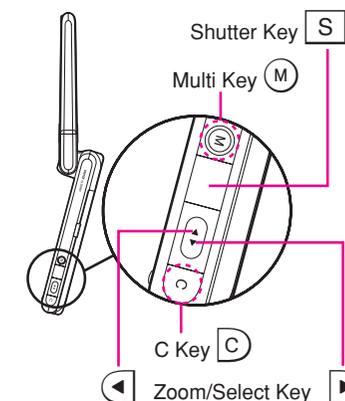
- : Press or
- : Press or
- : Press , , or



Side Keys

Use Side Keys when Display is in Viewer position (see [Basic P.1-12](#)). In this manual, Side Keys are indicated as shown to the right.

"S" is not inscribed on the actual Shutter Key.



Note

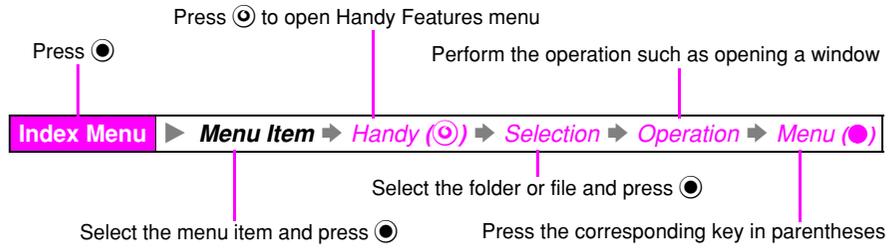
- In this manual, most operations are described with handset open (clamshell open: see [Basic P.1-11](#)).
- Sample screen shots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

Page References

When **Basic** appears next to a page reference, indicated pages are in Basic Operations Manual. When only a page reference appears, indicated pages are in Vodafone live! Manual.

Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Index Menu are abbreviated as follows:



Contents

| | |
|----------------|----|
| Symbols..... | i |
| Contents | iv |

Vodafone live! Overview

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|------------|
| 1 Vodafone live! Overview | Vodafone live! Basics..... | 1-2 |
| | ■ Vodafone live! Services | 1-2 |
| | ■ Network Setup | 1-4 |
| | ■ Handling Incoming Calls | 1-4 |
| | Customizing Handset Address..... | 1-5 |
| | Memory Status | 1-5 |
| | Disabling Vodafone live!..... | 1-6 |

Mail

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 2 Incoming Text Messages | Opening New Messages | 2-4 |
| | ■ Inbox..... | 2-6 |
| | ■ Retrieving Super Mail..... | 2-8 |
| | Sky Melody | 2-10 |
| | ■ Requesting Melody Files | 2-10 |
| ■ Saving to Data Folder..... | 2-10 | |
| 3 Sending Text Messages | Creating Text Messages | 3-2 |
| | ■ Overview | 3-2 |
| | ■ Creating & Sending a Message..... | 3-3 |
| | ■ Attaching Images & Sounds | 3-8 |
| | ■ Saving to Outbox..... | 3-11 |
| | Option Settings | 3-11 |
| | ● PIN | 3-11 |
| | ● Confirm Delivery..... | 3-11 |
| | ● Privacy Level..... | 3-12 |
| | ● Set Priority..... | 3-12 |
| | ● Polling | 3-12 |
| | ● Recipient Type | 3-12 |
| | ● Priority Setting..... | 3-13 |
| | ● Reply Address..... | 3-13 |
| | Save as Auto Send..... | 3-13 |
| | 2-Touch Mail | 3-14 |
| | ■ Add Address..... | 3-14 |
| ■ Creating & Sending | 3-15 | |
| Greeting | 3-16 | |

4 Mail Box

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Checking Messages | 4-2 |
| Using Received Messages..... | 4-7 |
| ■ Replying to Messages..... | 4-7 |
| ■ Forwarding Messages..... | 4-7 |
| ■ Resending Messages | 4-8 |
| ■ Linked Info | 4-8 |
| ■ Protecting Messages | 4-10 |
| ■ Deleting Messages | 4-11 |
| Chat Mail Log | 4-13 |
| ■ Saving Members | 4-13 |
| ■ Opening Chat Mail Log | 4-14 |
| Mail Folders..... | 4-15 |
| ■ Mail Box Layout | 4-15 |
| ■ Folder Name | 4-15 |
| ■ Secret Mode..... | 4-16 |
| ■ Letter Pad | 4-17 |
| ■ Moving Messages | 4-17 |
| ■ Sorting to Folders Automatically | 4-18 |
| Confirm Delivery & Cancel Delivery..... | 4-21 |
| Sending from Outbox | 4-21 |
| ■ Sending a Message | 4-21 |
| ■ Send Continuously..... | 4-22 |
| Attachments | 4-23 |
| ■ Saving Attachments to Data Folder | 4-23 |
| ■ Wallpaper & Display Images..... | 4-24 |
| ■ Other Functions | 4-25 |
| ● Scan Code | 4-25 |
| ● Image Auto Open..... | 4-25 |
| ● Sound Auto Play | 4-25 |
| Mail Box/Message Menu | 4-26 |
| ■ Mail Box Menu | 4-26 |
| ● Show Address..... | 4-26 |
| ● Auto Sort..... | 4-26 |
| ● List | 4-26 |
| ● Create QR Codes | 4-26 |
| ● Scroll Unit (for Mail Box) | 4-27 |
| ● Show as Unread/Read..... | 4-27 |
| ● Report Spam..... | 4-27 |
| ■ Message Menu | 4-27 |
| ● Copy | 4-27 |
| ● Set Display Size..... | 4-28 |
| ● Go to | 4-28 |
| ● Scroll Unit (for Text)..... | 4-28 |
| ● Character Encoding | 4-28 |

| | | |
|----------|------------------------|--|
| 5 | Server Mail | Unretrieved List.....5-2 <input type="checkbox"/> Acquire Mail List5-2 <input type="checkbox"/> Retrieving Selected Messages5-3 <input type="checkbox"/> Deleting Unretrieved List Messages5-4 Server Mail5-4 <input type="checkbox"/> Forwarding Server Mail5-4 <input type="checkbox"/> Deleting Server Mail5-5 |
| | 6 Mail Settings | Auto Reply6-2 <input type="checkbox"/> Activating Auto Reply6-2 Basic Settings6-4 <input type="radio"/> Mail Notice6-4 <input type="radio"/> Confirm Delivery6-4 <input type="radio"/> Auto Send6-4 <input type="radio"/> Custom Fixed Text (Japanese Only)6-4 <input type="radio"/> Report Setting6-5 <input type="radio"/> Reply with Original6-5 Super Mail Settings6-6 <input type="checkbox"/> Auto Retrieve6-6 <input type="checkbox"/> Additional Settings6-7 <input type="radio"/> Save & Send Image6-7 <input type="radio"/> Sender Name6-7 <input type="radio"/> Recipient Name6-7 <input type="radio"/> Reply Address6-8 <input type="radio"/> Signature6-8 Sky Mail Settings6-8 <input type="checkbox"/> PIN Filter6-8 <input type="checkbox"/> Address Filter6-9 <input type="checkbox"/> Additional Settings6-10 <input type="radio"/> Set Priority6-10 <input type="radio"/> Sender6-10 Super Mail Group6-11 <input type="checkbox"/> Creating Mail Groups6-11 <input type="checkbox"/> Deleting Groups/Members6-12 BBS6-13 <input type="radio"/> BBS6-13 <input type="radio"/> Saving Messages6-13 Reset & Changing Center Address6-14 <input type="radio"/> Reset6-14 <input type="radio"/> Deleting Sent & Received Messages6-14 <input type="radio"/> Center Address6-14 |

| | | |
|------------|----------------------------|--|
| Web | | |
| 7 | Web Basics | Getting Started7-4 <input type="checkbox"/> Web Content7-4 <input type="checkbox"/> Saving Information7-5 Using Web7-6 <input type="checkbox"/> Opening Vodafone Web Menu7-6 <input type="checkbox"/> Entering URLs Directly7-7 Basic Operations7-8 Home7-10 <input type="checkbox"/> Designating7-10 <input type="checkbox"/> Accessing7-10 Auto Delivery Service7-11 <input type="checkbox"/> Received Information7-11 |
| | 8 Advanced Features | Favorites, Message Folder & Bookmarks8-2 <input type="checkbox"/> Saving Information & URLs8-2 <input type="checkbox"/> Opening Saved Info & Links8-3 <input type="checkbox"/> Editing & Deleting8-3 Using Linked Info8-4 Files within Information8-5 <input type="checkbox"/> Saving to Data Folder8-5 <input type="checkbox"/> Wallpaper & Display Images8-6 <input type="checkbox"/> Playing Sound Files8-7 <input type="checkbox"/> Other Files8-7 Downloading Chaku-Uta8-8 |
| 9 | Web Settings | Sub Menu Settings9-2 <input type="radio"/> Set Display Size9-2 <input type="radio"/> Search this Page9-2 <input type="radio"/> Scroll Unit (for Web Info)9-2 <input type="radio"/> Copy9-2 <input type="radio"/> Playback Volume9-3 <input type="radio"/> Character Encoding9-3 <input type="radio"/> Update9-3 <input type="radio"/> Reacquire9-3 <input type="radio"/> Text Memo9-3 <input type="radio"/> Property9-4 <input type="radio"/> Show Certification9-4 <input type="radio"/> Uploading Files9-4 Basic Settings9-4 <input type="radio"/> Text Only9-4 <input type="radio"/> Location Info9-4 <input type="radio"/> Link Limiter9-5 <input type="radio"/> Clear DNS Cache9-5 |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|--|
| 9 | Web Settings | Security 9-5 |
| | | ● Warning Message 9-5 |
| | | ● Show User ID 9-5 |
| | | ● Certification 9-5 |
| | | Reset & Changing Center Address 9-6 |
| | | ● Web Reset 9-6 |
| | | ● Clear Memory 9-6 |
| ● Clear Web Cache 9-6 | | |
| ● Center Address 9-6 | | |

V-Applications

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 10 | V-Application Basics | Getting Started 10-4 |
| | | ■ V-Appli Library 10-4 |
| | | Downloading V-Applications 10-5 |
| | | Starting V-Applications 10-6 |
| | | Exit, Pause & Resume 10-8 |
| | | ■ Exiting or Pausing V-Applications 10-8 |
| ■ Resuming V-Applications 10-8 | | |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| 11 | Using V-Applications | Managing V-Applications 11-2 |
| | | ■ Opening V-Application Properties 11-2 |
| | | ■ Deleting V-Applications 11-2 |
| | | Standby V-Application 11-3 |
| Video Out 11-4 | | |

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------|---|
| 12 | V-Application Settings | General Settings 12-2 |
| | | ● Incoming Settings 12-2 |
| | | ● Playback Volume 12-2 |
| | | ● Vibration 12-2 |
| | | ● Backlight 12-3 |
| | | ● Blink Control 12-3 |
| | | Application-based Settings 12-3 |
| | | ● Auto Connect 12-3 |
| | | ● Security Level 12-3 |
| | | ● Save Direct Key 12-4 |
| | | Reset & Changing Center Address 12-4 |
| | | ● Reset 12-4 |
| | | ● Clear Memory 12-4 |
| | | ● Server Address 12-4 |

Station (Japanese Only)

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 13 | Station Basics | Getting Started 13-4 |
| | | ■ Station Content 13-4 |
| | | ■ Subscription Status 13-4 |
| | | Checking Main List 13-5 |
| | | My List 13-6 |
| | | ■ Saving to My List 13-6 |
| ■ Editing My List 13-6 | | |
| ■ Received Information 13-7 | | |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 14 | Advanced Features | Saving Information 14-2 |
| | | ■ Saved Information 14-2 |
| | | ■ Checking Information 14-2 |
| | | ■ Deleting Selected Information 14-2 |
| | | Using Linked Info 14-3 |
| | | Files within Information 14-4 |
| | | ● To Data Folder 14-4 |
| | | ● Wallpaper & Display Images 14-4 |
| | | Weather Indicator 14-4 |
| | | ■ Activating Weather Indicator 14-4 |
| ■ Weather Forecast 14-5 | | |
| Location Info 14-6 | | |
| ■ Checking Location Info 14-6 | | |
| ■ Protecting Location Info 14-6 | | |

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|---|
| 15 | Station Settings | Sub Menu Settings 15-2 |
| | | ● Set Display Size 15-2 |
| | | ● Scroll Unit 15-2 |
| | | ● Text Memo 15-2 |
| | | ● Copy 15-2 |
| | | ● Property 15-2 |
| | | Basic Settings 15-3 |
| | | ● Update Frequency 15-3 |
| | | ● Save Info Number 15-3 |
| | | ● Image Link 15-3 |
| | | Reset & Changing Center Address 15-4 |
| | | ● Reset 15-4 |
| | | ● Clear Memory 15-4 |
| | | ● Center Address 15-4 |

Appendix

16 Appendix

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| Reset Settings | 16-2 |
| ■ Mail Settings | 16-2 |
| ■ Web Settings | 16-3 |
| ■ V-Application Settings | 16-3 |
| ■ Station Settings | 16-3 |
| Display Messages | 16-4 |
| ■ Mail | 16-4 |
| ■ Web | 16-5 |
| ■ V-Applications | 16-6 |
| ■ Station | 16-7 |
| Pictograph List | 16-8 |
| Memory List | 16-11 |
| Index | 16-12 |
| Customer Service | 16-16 |

Vodafone live!

Overview

Vodafone live! Basics

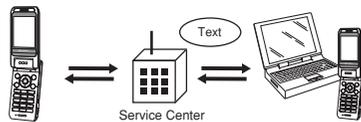
Vodafone live! Services

Use Vodafone live! services to exchange text and multimedia messages with compatible handsets, download sounds and images as well as V-Applications, browse the Mobile Internet or receive up-to-date area information via Station.

Mail

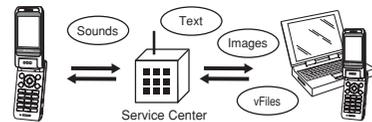
Sky Mail

Use this basic service to exchange short text (up to 128 alphanumeric) messages with Vodafone handsets, email-compatible mobiles, PCs and other similar devices via the Internet.



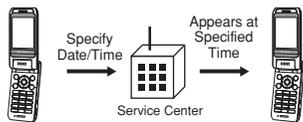
Super Mail

Exchange long text messages (of up to 12,000 alphanumeric) with other Super Mail-compatible Vodafone handsets, email-compatible mobiles, PCs, and other similar devices. Attach images/sounds to messages for multimedia messaging.



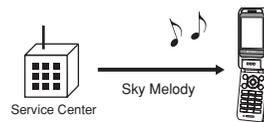
Greeting

Designate the date/time for the timely delivery of special salutations, like birthday or holiday congratulations, etc. to friends or family with compatible Vodafone handsets.



Sky Melody

Request the latest hits from Sky Melody Center to use as handset Ring Tones/Alarm Tones.



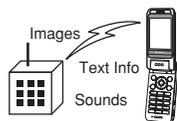
An additional contract is required to use Super Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.

Web

Use Web to access the Mobile Internet directly from handset. Browse for image or sound files as well as information.

Web Information

Access Vodafone live!-compatible Mobile Internet sites from Web menu to download files/info.



(Mobile) Internet

Enter Mobile Internet URLs to view specific sites/pages directly, or access Log List.



Auto Delivery Service

Where available, request automatic info updates from compatible Mobile Internet sites.



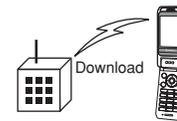
An additional contract is required to use Web service.

V-Applications

Download V-Applications, including games and 3D graphics.

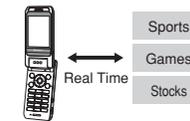
Web Downloads

Download V-Applications via Web (Vodafone Web).



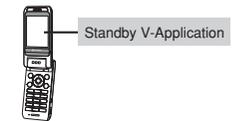
Network V-Applications

Enjoy Network games and access real time information.



Standby V-Application

Set a V-Application to activate when handset enters Standby.



- Download and use V501SH-compatible V-Applications.
- Separate subscriptions are required for V-Applications downloaded via Web.

Station

Use Station to access a variety of area-specific local information, periodically updated automatically.

Main List

Area information is updated automatically by location.



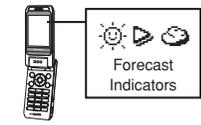
My List

Save area information in My List to receive update notices.



Weather Indicator

Set handset to show updated weather forecast for your area.



- Receive current location info automatically.
- Receive urgent information, such as emergency/disaster warnings, automatically.
- Separate subscription is required for fee-based information.

Tip

- For more information concerning Vodafone live! services, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).
- To disable individual Vodafone live! services, see P.1-6.

Network Setup

To use Vodafone live! services, first download network connection information from Vodafone live! Service Center. Handset initiates Network Setup when , , , , , or is pressed for the first time.

1 Press , , , , , or

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Network.

- Follow onscreen instructions to proceed.

- To cancel, choose **No** → Press

- After cancellation, press , , , , , or in Standby to reinitiate Network Setup.

Updating Network Information

■ Press → Select **Vodafone live!** → Press → Select **Network Settings** → Press → Select **Network Setup** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press → Follow onscreen instructions

Handling Incoming Calls

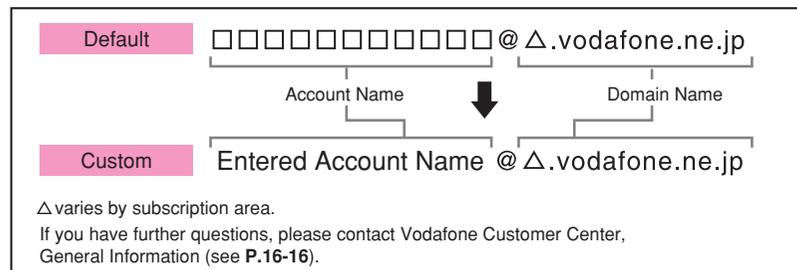
Adjust handset setting to handle incoming calls while handset is connected to the Network.

- When **Call Waiting Off** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls (they appear as rejected calls in Call History: see [Basic P.2-16](#)).
- **Incoming Call** is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ **Vodafone live!** ▶ **Network Settings** ▶ **Call Waiting**

1 Select **Incoming Call** or **Call Waiting Off** and press

Customizing Handset Address



- Handset must connect to the Network to customize handset address.
- Customizing handset mail address helps reduce spam.
- Web must be activated before handset address can be customized (see [P.1-6](#)).

1 Press , select **Mail Settings** and press

2 Select **Mail Address** and press

Handset connects to the Network.

- Follow onscreen instructions (Japanese only).

- For Web basic operations, see [P.7-8](#).

- Center Access Code: see [Basic P.1-36](#)

Memory Status

Save up to approximately 3,000 KB between Inbox (Mail), Favorites or Message Folder (Web), and Saved Information (Station).

Open Memory Status window to confirm Mail, Web and Station memory.

Index Menu ▶ **Functions** ▶ **Settings 1** ▶ **Memory**

1 Select **Memory Usage** and press

Disabling Vodafone live!

Disable any or all Vodafone live! services. Use this function to restrict access to or prevent unauthorized use of Vodafone live! services on your handset.

All services are active by default.

1 Press  * #

2 Enter Security Code

3 Select a service and press 

4 Choose  **Off** and press 

 To activate, choose  **On** → Press 

1

Vodafone live! Overview

Mail

MEMO



Incoming Text Messages

Opening New Messages

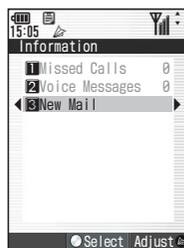
When handset is in Viewer position, use Side Keys to execute operations; see diagram on P.i and "Side Key Assignments (Viewer)" [Basic]P.1-13.

1 When mail arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens

■ (Super Mail) or (Sky Mail) appears according to message type.

2 Select **New Mail** and press **S** or **●**

Inbox opens (see P.2-6).



Information Menu

3 Select a message and press **S** or **●**

Message window opens (see P.2-7 "Message Contents").

• Press **[* <=>]** to see newer messages or **[# <=>]** for older ones (when messages are arranged by date).

■ To retrieve remaining portion of Super Mail messages, see P.2-8.

4 Press **C** twice or press **☺** to exit



Message Window

Note

There is no incoming message alert (Ring Tone, Vibration, Mobile/Small Light, indicators or Information Menu) for new messages when:

- The sender is not saved in Phone Book and **Hide Spam** is active
- The subject or sender is registered to Sort By Subject or Sort By Addresses as **Hide Message**

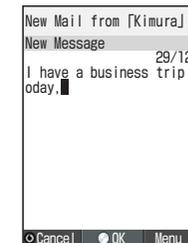
Tip

See [Basic]P.7-16 "Vodafone live! Animation" to disable incoming mail animation.

New Mail Notifications during Operations

When mail arrives while using handset functions, a notification such as **New Mail from (Sender's name)** appears.

- See P.6-4 "Mail Notice" to hide or edit notification.
- **New Mail** appears for:
 - Messages sorted to Secret Mode Mail Folders
 - Messages from senders saved as Secret Mode Phone Book entries (when handset is not in Secret Mode)
 - Messages with Privacy Level 3 or 4
- Names do not appear when Phone Book Lock (see [Basic]P.14-3) is active.
- To receive notification while V-Application is active, select **Show Message** in Incoming Settings (see P.12-2).
- Notification does not appear when:
 - A Greeting message arrived before the designated date/time
 - In Standby
 - The current window does not support notifications



New Mail Out of Standby

- When mail arrives during a call or while using handset functions, etc., Information Menu opens when handset returns to Standby.
- When Information Menu does not open, open Inbox (see P.4-2) to check the message.

Delivery Report

- When messages are sent with Confirm Delivery **On** (see P.3-11, P.6-4), handset receives a Delivery Report from the Center. Open Delivery Reports in the same manner as standard messages.

Ring Tone Volume

- While handset is ringing, press **☺** (up) or **☹** (down).
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see [Basic]P.8-2) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level (see [Basic]P.3-3).

Quick Silent

- Press **[文字]** to instantly mute incoming mail tone for that message only.

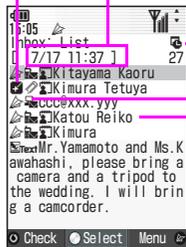
Inbox

Inbox Contents

To open Inbox while Information Menu (New Mail) appears, press **OK**; otherwise, open Mail and press **OK** twice. To select a different view for Mail Box, see "List" (P.4-26 "Mail Box/Message Menu").

2

Incoming Text Messages



Unread/Read

- Super Mail:
- Messages other than Super Mail:
- (If you subscribe to Super Mail, appears for e-mail messages.)
- Indicator color varies by message status:
 - Unread: Red
 - Protected: Yellow

Received Date & Time

Messages are arranged by:

- Date:
- Sender:
- Unread/Read:
- Protection:
- Attachments:

Message Number

Message Type (see P.2-7)

Sender

- Number or address appears. Name and appear if saved in Phone Book.
- For Super Mail, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears with except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server
- Sender color indicates Priority Level (High: red, Normal: black, Low: blue).
- Additional indicator may appear before sender (see P.2-7 for details).

Tip Incoming Mail... and received text appear for incoming linked messages.

Message Type

| | |
|--|---|
| | Sky Mail (mail from Vodafone handsets) |
| | E-mail (messages received via the Internet) |
| | Super Mail with attachments |
| | Super Mail Notice (Server Mail, initial portion included) |
| | Unretrieved List (Super Mail) |
| | BBS Notice |
| | Polling (BBS accessed) |
| | Greeting |
| | Unsaved Sky Melody |

Additional Indicators

| | | | |
|--|-----------|--|-------------------|
| | Replied | | Auto Reply sent |
| | Forwarded | | Auto Reply failed |

Only the indicator for the latest action appears.

Message Contents

Select a message and press **OK** to open it.



Sending Priority: see P.6-10

- : Low, : Normal, : High, : By Express
- (: Super Mail or Super Mail Notice)

Image Display Size

- 100%:
- 200%:

Received Date & Time

Message Number

Privacy Level (see P.3-12) or Priority Setting (see P.3-13)

- Lv2** appears for Sky Melodies.
- Nothing appears if Priority Setting is **Normal**.

Message Type

Message Text

Sender

- Number or address appears. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
- For Super Mail, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server

: Auto Reply Sent, : Auto Reply Failed (see P.6-2)

2

Incoming Text Messages

Retrieving Super Mail

The Center sends the initial portion of Super Mail messages when:

- The message is over 385 single-byte characters
- The sender's address is over 56 single-byte characters
- The subject is over 41 single-byte characters
- The message was sent to multiple recipients
- Files are attached to the message

✉ (Super Mail Notice) appears in Inbox when the remaining portion of Super Mail message is held at the Center.

Messages over 30 KB

■ **Exceeds Limit Cannot Receive All OK?** appears.

Choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** → Press **⏏**

- Choose **1 Yes** to receive up to 30 KB. To retrieve selected items, choose **2 No** (see Step 2-**3** and onward below).
- Unretrieved items are deleted from the Server.

Tip

- To retrieve complete Super Mail automatically, see **P.6-6** "Auto Retrieve."
- To use Unretrieved List to retrieve Super Mail messages, see **P.5-3**.

Retrieving a Selected Super Mail Message

Select message text or attached image/sound files to retrieve. (Unretrieved items are deleted from the Server.)

1 Open a message

- ⏏ **More** appears at the bottom of the message.
- Skip ahead to Step 3 when retrieving all items.

2 Retrieving Selected Items

1 Press **⏏** **Menu**

2 Select **Download Rest** and press **⏏**

List of contained items appear with size.

- Only checked items are retrieved.

3 Select an item to retrieve and press **⏏**

Box is checked.

- To uncheck, select an item with **☑** → Press **⏏**

4 Repeat Step **3**

- To clear all check marks at one time, press **⏏** **Menu** → Select **All Reset** → Press **⏏**



3 Press **⏏** **More**

Download starts. After the message is retrieved, Inbox opens. (Super Mail Notice disappears and the message is saved.)

- When there are unselected items, choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

Retrieving Multiple Super Mail Messages

1 Open Inbox.

2 Press **⏏** **Check**

Box is checked.

3 Repeat Step 2

- To uncheck, select a message with **☑** → Press **⏏** **Check**

- To clear all check marks at one time, press **⏏** **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press **⏏** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

4 Press **⏏** **Menu**

5 Select **More** and press **⏏**

6 Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏏**

Sky Melody

If Mail service is disabled, Sky Melody cannot be used. Activate Mail to use Sky Melody (see P.1-6).

Requesting Melody Files

- 1 Press , select  **Sky Melody** and press 
- 2 Press 
- 3 Follow voice prompts and select a melody
- 4 Press 
Sky Melody Center sends the melody.

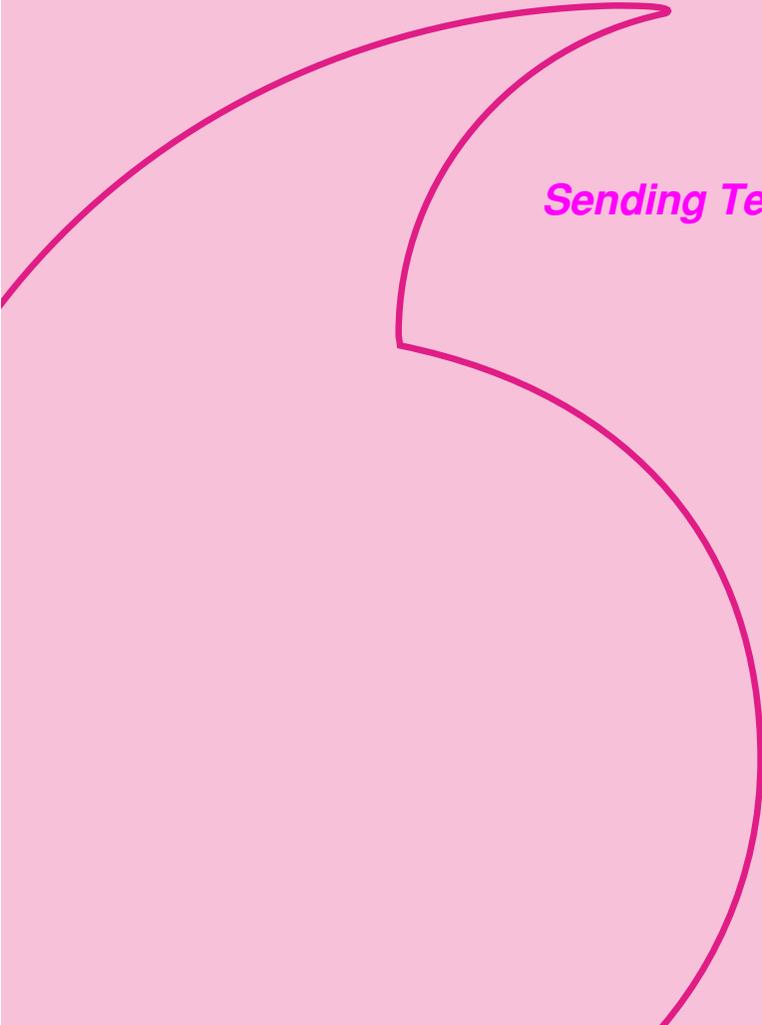
Changing Sky Melody Center Number

- Do not change the number unless instructed to do so. Sky Melody Center access will be disabled.
After Step 1 above, press  **Change** → Press  (Long Press) → Enter new number → Press 
- *1790 is set by default.

Saving to Data Folder

- 1 When Sky Melody arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens
 appears.
- 2 Select **New Mail** and press 
 -  **Sky Melody Center** appears.
- 3 Select the message and press 
Title appears and melody plays as set in Sound Volume.
- 4 Press  **Menu**
- 5 Select **To Data Folder** and press 
Melody is saved to Data Folder. Message is deleted automatically after Melody file is saved.
 - When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic P.12-45](#)).
 - To use as Ring Tone, see [Basic P.8-3](#).

Tip Sky Melody files cannot be modified or attached to Super Mail.

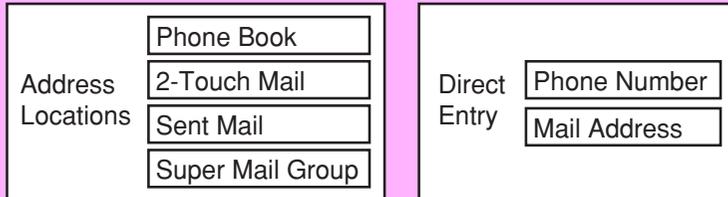


Sending Text Messages

Creating Text Messages

Overview

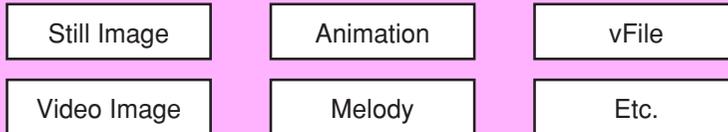
Enter Recipient (see P.3-4)



Enter Subject (Super Mail: see P.3-4)

Compose Message (see P.3-4)

Attach Files (Super Mail: see P.3-8 - 3-10)



Send Message

Incoming Calls during Message Creation

- New Message window returns after call ends.

Tip Undeliverable messages are stored at the Center for up to 72 hours, and delivered when recipient's handset connects to the Network.

Character Entry Limits

Character limits vary by Mail Type.

| | Character Entry Limits |
|-------------------|--|
| Sky Mail | 128 single-byte alphanumerics |
| Super Mail | Without attachment: 12,000 characters With attachment: 15,000 characters (Up to 30 KB including attachments) |
| Greeting | 112 single-byte alphanumerics |

Super Mail message text character limit differs by attachment size and recipient count.

Available Entry Items

Available entry items vary by Mail Type.

| | Recipient | Sender | Subject | Message | Date & Time | Attachments |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| Sky Mail | Available | N/A | N/A | Available | N/A | N/A |
| Super Mail | Available | N/A | Available | Available | N/A | Available |
| Greeting | Available | Available | N/A | Available | Available | N/A |

To send Super Mail messages, enter a recipient and either attach a file or enter a subject or message text.

Creating & Sending a Message

- Create Super Mail Groups beforehand to send the same message to multiple recipients at one time (see P.6-11).
- Save frequently used addresses to 2-Touch Mail.

- 1 Press **⏏**, select **1 Super Mail**, **2 Sky Mail** or **3 Greeting** and press **⏏**
Mail Composition window opens.



Mail Composition Window (Super Mail)

- 2 Select **To** and press **⏏**

3 Phone Book

- 1 Select **1** *Phone Book* and press **⊙**
- 2 Open an entry

■ To search Phone Book, see **[Basic] P.5-12 - 5-13.**

2-Touch Mail List

- 1 Select **2** *2-Touch Mail* and press **⊙**

■ 2-Touch Mail: see **P.3-14**

- 2 Select a recipient

Sent Mail

- 1 Select **3** *Sent Mail* and press **⊙**

■ Sent Mail: see **P.3-6**

- 2 Select a recipient

Direct Entry

- 1 Select **4** *Mobile Number* or **5** *Mail Address* and press **⊙**

- 2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address

■ To select from Phone Book, see Steps 1 - 3 on **[Basic] P.5-11.**

Sending to Group (Super Mail)

- 1 Select **6** *Group Folders* and press **⊙**

- 2 Select a Group

4 Press **⊙**

• For Sky Mail, skip ahead to Step 7.

5 Select **Ⓐ** *Title* and press **⊙**

• Enter up to 512 single-byte alphanumeric (510 single-byte katakana or 253 double-byte characters).

6 Enter subject and press **⊙**

7 Select **Ⓑ** *Text* and press **⊙**

New Message window opens.

8 Enter a message

■ Using Fixed Text: see **P.3-7**

■ To copy from Phone Book, see **[Basic] P.4-9.**

■ To copy from Text Memo, press **Ⓐ** *Menu* → Select **5** *Call Text Memo* → Press **⊙** → Select Text Memo → Press **⊙**

■ To read from barcode, see **[Basic] P.15-35** "Scan during Text Entry."

■ To use Text Scanner, see **[Basic] P.15-41** "Scan during Text Entry."

9 Press **⊙**

Mail Composition window returns.

■ Attaching Images & Sounds: see **P.3-8**

■ Saving to Outbox: see **P.3-11**

10 Press **Ⓐ** *Send*



Mail Composition Window
(Super Mail)



- Check approximate mail size in **Mail Memory** in Mail Composition window.
- Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.

When Mail Address is Entered

- Mail addresses count toward the message text character limit.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs are invalid in message text and subject. If pictographs are already entered, **Delete Pictograph OK?** appears.
 - Choose **1** *Yes* and press **⊙** to delete.
 - Choose **2** *No* and press **⊙** to return to Select Address or Select Group window.
- Entered single-byte katakana is changed to double-byte.

Sending from Phone Book Entries

- To select a recipient from Phone Book, perform Steps 1 - 3 on **[Basic] P.5-11** → Press **⊙** → Select **Send Mail (Phone)** or **Send Mail (E-mail)** → Press **⊙** → Select Mail Type → Press **⊙**

Save Auto Send for Failed Messages

- **Save As Auto Send?** appears when message delivery fails with Auto Send **On** (see **P.6-4**) and Save Auto Send **Off**.
 - To set Save Auto Send, choose **1** *Yes* → Press **⊙**
 - Save Auto Send is disabled for Auto Reply Mail.

Add Signature Manually (Super Mail)

- While entering message text with Signature **Off**, press **Ⓐ** *Menu* → Select **ⓧ** *Attach Signature* → Press **⊙** → Select a number → Press **⊙**

Entering Recipients (Super Mail)

- Enter up to five recipients. To add recipients, follow these steps.

After Step 4 on P.3-4, select **To** → Press **OK** → Select a number → Press **OK** → Enter a recipient (see Steps 3-4 on P.3-4)

- To enter more recipients, repeat the above steps from "Select a number."

Press **Set** to return to Mail Composition window.

- In Address list, **T** appears before recipient's name, number or address. Change the status to Cc (carbon copy) or Bcc (blind carbon copy) as follows:

Select a recipient → Press **Menu** → Select Cc or Bcc → Press **OK**

- Recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.

- To edit, open Address list and follow these steps.

Select a recipient → Press **Menu** → Select Change → Press **OK** → Edit address → Press **OK**

- To delete, open Address list and follow these steps.

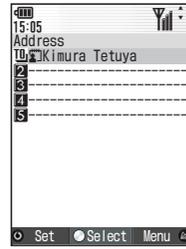
Select a recipient → Press **Menu** → Select Delete or Delete All → Press **OK**

- When Recipient Name (see P.6-7) is active and recipient is entered from Phone Book, Phone Book entry name appears in the recipient field of recipient's mail.

To edit the name for one time only, open Address list and follow these steps.

Select a recipient → Press **Menu** → Select Edit Comments → Press **OK** → Edit name → Press **OK**

- To delete name, delete all characters → Press **OK**



Address List

Sent Mail

- Last 9 sent mail records are saved.
- Recipients' names appear if saved in Phone Book. Names for Secret Mode Phone Book entries appear only when handset is in Secret Mode.
- Vodafone handset numbers appear with **053**, etc. Mail addresses appear with **053**.
- Aside from Secret Mode, changes to Phone Book entries are not reflected in Sent Mail.
- To delete records from Sent Mail, follow these steps.

After Step 3 (Sent Mail) on P.3-4, press **Menu** → Select Delete or Delete All → Press **OK** → Choose **Yes** → Press **OK**

Sending to Server (Sky Mail)

- Intranet integration is required to send messages to the Server.
- After Step 2 on P.3-3, select **Server** → Press **OK** → Enter Server Address (within 20 characters) → Press **OK** → Enter Sub Address (within five characters) → Press **OK**

Using Fixed Text (Japanese Only)

- Switch to Japanese display to use Preset Fixed Text, Editable Text or Custom Fixed Text (see P.6-4).
- Follow these steps after Step 7 on P.3-4. Mail Composition window returns after Fixed Text is entered.

1 Press **OK** **定型**

- Fixed Text cannot be inserted after entering characters.

2 Select a type and press **OK**

3 Select a message and press **OK**

- To select other Fixed Text, press **Left Arrow** → Select another message → Press **OK**
- To use Editable Fixed Text, select Editable Fixed Text → Press **OK** → Press **1** → Enter text → Press **OK**
 - Press **2** or **3** if any → Enter text → Press **OK**

4 Press **OK**



- Edit Preset Fixed Text after it is copied to Super Mail or e-mail messages.
- Character limit depends on message type and the number of parentheses.

Converting Mail Type

Change Mail Types while editing Sky Mail or Super Mail messages.

- The following are deleted when Super Mail is converted to Sky Mail:
 - Subject
 - Attachments
 - Recipients other than the first one
 - Message text exceeding Sky Mail character limit
- Follow these steps after Step 8 on P.3-4.

1 Press **Menu**

2 Select **Send As Super Mail** or **Convert Sky Mail** and press **OK**

3 Choose **Yes** and press **OK**

- When converting Sky Mail to Super Mail, entered address appears in **TO** field.

When a Sky Mail Message Exceeds the Character Limit

- File Exceeds Limit Change to Super Mail?** appears.
 - To convert Sky Mail to Super Mail, choose **Yes** → Press **OK**
 - The message above does not appear if you are using Fixed Text.

Attaching Images & Sounds

Attach images, sound files, vFiles or SVG files to Super Mail.

- Attach up to 20 files within 30 KB in total including message text.
- Split to four smaller images or reduce image size (see **Basic P.6-36**).
- For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.16-16**).

Attachable Files

| Type | Format | Extension |
|--------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| Still Images | JPEG | jpg |
| | PNG | png |
| Video Images | MPEG-4 | 3gp |
| Animations | MNG | mng |
| | E-Animation | nva |
| | JPEG Animation/PNG Animation | - |
| Melodies | SMAF | mmf |
| | SMD | smd |
| | Original Ring Tones | sjm |
| | | |
| Others | vCard | vcf |
| | vCalendar | vcs |
| | vMessage | vmg |
| | vBookmark | vbm |
| | vNote | vnt |
| | Dictionary files | sdj |
| | HTML files | html |
| | MML files | mml |
| | SVG files | svg |
| | EML files | eml |

Attaching Files from Data Folder

Follow these steps after Step 9 on **P.3-5**. Mail Composition window returns after the file is attached.

1 Select **ATT** and press **OK**

- If files are already attached, select a number → Press **OK**
- To change attached file, select a file → Press **OK** → Press **Change**

2 Select **Data Folder** and press **OK**

3 Select a folder and press **OK**

- Files cannot be attached if not selectable.
- To open images or play sounds, select a file → Press **Menu** → Select **Show** or **Play** → Press **OK**
- To switch to Memory Card, press **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **OK**

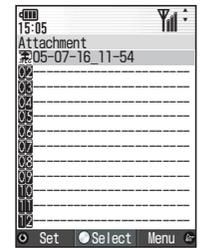
4 Select a file and press **OK**

- For files in Camera images folder, select **1 Attach Thumbnail** or **2 Attach 240 x 320** → Press **OK** (Thumbnails are small copies of images taken in Camera mode.)
- To attach a Burst Shot image, use **Left Arrow** to select an image → Press **OK**
- When attaching a sound file, select a format (see below) → Press **OK**

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 Original Melody | File format (SJM) remains the same |
| 2 Melody Format | Chords over 6 are deleted. Tone and loudness settings are ignored. |
| 3 SMAF (MA-2) Format | Chords over 17 are deleted, and tones of the following change to Piano: <input type="checkbox"/> Drum (FM) <input type="checkbox"/> Drum (WT) <input type="checkbox"/> Original (FM) <input type="checkbox"/> Original (WT) |
| 4 SMAF (MA-3) Format | Up to 32 chords can be sent |

Adding & Deleting Attachments

- To attach additional files, follow these steps.
After Step 4, select **ATT → Press **OK** → Select a number → Press **OK** → Perform Step 2 on P.3-8 to Step 4 above.**
 - Press **Set** to return to Mail Composition window.
- To delete attachments, follow these steps.
Open Attachment list and select a file → Press **Menu → Select **Delete** → Press **OK** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **OK****



Attachment List

Note

- Animation file size affects the number of files that can be attached.
- When converted from JPEG Animation, MNG files open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. To send MNG files to other packet-enabled handsets, convert from PNG Animation.
- E-Animation files or files created from Moving Photo Frame (.nva) open only on packet-enabled Vodafone handsets manufactured by Sharp. However, contained images or sounds may not open or play properly.
- Some sound files cannot be converted.
- Tone and loudness of sound files may change after conversion. Some files may be too large to attach after conversion.

Attaching Mail & Web Files

1 Select an image or sound file in mail or Web info and press **Ⓞ**

- Selected image is outlined.

2 Select **Ⓜ** Copy (image) or **Ⓜ** Copy (sound) and press **Ⓞ**

- Copied files are saved to Clipboard temporarily.
- Some images or sounds cannot be copied.



3 Press **Ⓞ**

4 In Super Mail Composition window, select **Ⓜ** ATT and press **Ⓞ**

5 Choose **Ⓜ** Clipboard and press **Ⓞ**

6 Select **Ⓜ** Attach and press **Ⓞ**

- Adding & Deleting Attachment: see P.3-9
- To open images or play sounds, select **Ⓜ** Open File → Press **Ⓞ**
 - To return, press **Ⓞ** Back (image) or **Ⓞ** Stop (sound)

7 Create and send the message

- Creating & Sending a Message: see P.3-3

Note

Depending on the file size of images or sounds, **File Exceeds Limit Cannot Attach** may appear and file is not attached.

Attaching Images Captured while Creating Message

Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.3-5. Mail Composition window returns after the image is attached.

1 Select **Ⓜ** ATT and press **Ⓞ**

- If files are already attached, select a number → Press **Ⓞ**
- To change attached file, select a file → Press **Ⓞ** → Press **Ⓜ** Change

2 Select **Ⓜ** Sha-mail Shoot and press **Ⓞ**

Camera is activated.

3 Capture image

- Capturing Still Images: see **Basic** P.6-10 - 6-11

4 Press **Ⓞ**

Image is attached.

- If Save & Send Image is **On** (see P.6-7), the captured image is automatically saved to Data Folder.

Saving to Outbox

- Save up to 200 KB.
- Follow these steps after Step 9 on P.3-5.

1 Press **Ⓞ** Save

2 Choose **Ⓜ** Yes and press **Ⓞ**

Outbox opens. Latest message comes first.

- When memory is low, Mail Composition window returns. Delete messages (see P.4-11) and try again.

3 Press **Ⓞ** to exit

Note

The order in which addresses (**To**, **Cc** and **Bcc**) or attachments appear may change when saving Super Mail.

Option Settings

- Sky Mail options are available only when sending to Vodafone handsets.
- These settings are valid for one message when set during message composition.
- Option Settings are not available when resending messages.

PIN

Set a matching PIN for recipients using PIN Filter (see P.6-8)

■ Available for Sky Mail and Greeting.

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Ⓜ** PIN → Press **Ⓞ** → Enter recipient's 4-digit PIN → Press **Ⓞ**

- To return to Mail Composition window, press **Ⓞ** Back.

Confirm Delivery

Request a Delivery Report (see P.2-4) to confirm message delivery

■ Available when sending to Vodafone handsets.
Default Off

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Confirm Delivery** → Press **Ⓞ** → Choose **Ⓜ** On or **Ⓜ** Off → Press **Ⓞ**

- To return to Mail Composition window, press **Ⓞ** Back.
- Confirm Delivery is disabled when sending Super Mail to multiple recipients.

Privacy Level

Restrict copying/forwarding the message, or require Security Code to open it

■ Available for Sky Mail and Greeting.
Default: Level 1

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **3 Privacy** → Press ● → Select from **1 Level 1** to **4 Level 4** → Press ●

■ To return to Mail Composition window, press Ⓞ **Back**.

| Privacy Level | Copy/Forward | Security Code |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| Low ↓ | 1 | Allowed |
| | 2 | Prohibited |
| High | 3 | Allowed |
| | 4 | Prohibited |

Set Priority

Set priority when sending mail

■ Available for Sky Mail.
Default: Normal

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **4 Set Priority** → Press ● → Select from **1 Low** to **4 By Express** → Press ●

■ To return to Mail Composition window, press Ⓞ **Back**.

Note

By Express messages are delivered faster for additional fees. Other levels indicate the importance of the message and do not affect delivery speed.

Polling

Activate Polling to receive BBS messages (see P.6-13)

■ Available for Sky Mail.
Default: Off (not to receive BBS messages)

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **5 Polling** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ●

■ To return to Mail Composition window, press Ⓞ **Back**.

Recipient Type

Select a recipient type

Under normal conditions, set Recipient Type to **None**

■ Available for Sky Mail.
Default: None

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **3 Recipient Type** → Press ● → Select from **1 None** to **3 Computer** → Press ●

■ To return to Mail Composition window, press Ⓞ **Back**.

• Select **Mobile Phone** to send to a Vodafone handset, or **Computer** to send to a PC connected to a Vodafone handset.

Priority Setting

Set message priority level

■ Available for Super Mail.
Default: Normal

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **2 Priority Setting** → Press ● → Select from **1 High** to **3 Low** → Press ●

■ To return to Mail Composition window, press Ⓞ **Back**.

• Priority Setting does not affect delivery speed.

Reply Address

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

■ Available for Super Mail.
Default: Off

Activating

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **3 Reply Address** → Press ● → Choose **1 On** → Press ● → Enter address → Press ●

■ To open Phone Book, press Ⓞ (TEL) in address entry window.

Canceling

In Mail Composition window, select **Option Settings** → Press ● → Select **3 Reply Address** → Press ● → Choose **2 Off** → Press ●

Note

• Replies are sent to the designated address only when the Reply function is used.
• This function may not work depending on the recipient's mail software.

Save as Auto Send

When Save Auto Send is active, the message is saved to Outbox and is sent automatically when signal returns.

- Activate Auto Send beforehand (see P.6-4).
- Save up to 10 messages.

1 In Mail Composition window, select **Save Auto Send** and press ●

2 Choose **1 On** and press ●

Auto appears in the right bottom corner.

■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press ●

3 Press Ⓞ **Auto**

Tip

- Auto Send attempts to send the message up to three times including the initial attempt.
- Auto Send Super Mail takes priority over Sky Mail.
- Auto Send failed deliveries are saved to Sent and Outbox.

When Auto Send is Activated

- Approximately 10 seconds after the signal returns, an Auto Send message is sent. When there is more than one, messages are sent in five second intervals.
- Consecutively saved Super Mail messages are sent in succession.
- **Sent** appears when Auto Send is complete. For unsent messages, press **⏻** to open Outbox.
 - ***✉** appears next to failed Auto Send messages.

2-Touch Mail

Add Address

Save up to nine frequently used addresses to 2-Touch Mail to send mail from Standby or add addresses to mail from 2-Touch Mail List (see **P.3-4**).

- 1** Press **⏻**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **⏻**
- 2** Select **4 2-Touch Mail** and press **⏻**
- 3** Select **1 Add Address** and press **⏻**
- 4** Select a number and press **⏻**
 - To change addresses, select a number → Press **⏻** → Edit address → Press **⏻**
 - To delete an entry, select a number → Press **⏻** **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press **⏻** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏻**
 - To delete all entries, press **⏻** **Menu** → Select **Delete All** → Press **⏻** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏻**
 - When selecting a number with no entry, press **⏻** **Menu** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏻** (All entries are deleted.)

5 Phone Book

- 1** Select **1 Phone Book** and press **⏻**
 - Changing Phone Book entries does not affect 2-Touch Mail Addresses.
- 2** Open an entry
 - To search Phone Book, see **Basic P.5-12 - 5-13**.

Direct Entry

- 1** Select **2 Mobile Number** or **3 E-Mail** and press **⏻**
- 2** Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address
 - To select from Phone Book, see Steps 1 - 3 on **Basic P.5-11**.

6 Press **⏻**

- An icon corresponding to the address type appears.
- Repeat Steps 4 - 6 for other entries.

7 Press **⏻** to exit

Adding to 2-Touch Mail while Creating Message

- When there is no entry in 2-Touch Mail, add an address from Mail Composition window.
 - Select **☑ To** → Press **⏻** → Select **2 2-Touch Mail** → Press **⏻** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏻** → Perform from Step 5

Creating & Sending

Use 2-Touch Mail to create and send messages from Standby. Save addresses in 2-Touch Mail (Mail Settings) beforehand (see **P.3-14**).

- 1** In Standby, press the assigned number (**1 - 9**) with Keypad (**1 ☎ *** - **9 WXYZ ***)
- 2** **Sending Super Mail**
 - 1** Press **⏻** **Super**
 - The address is entered automatically.

Sending Sky Mail

 - 1** Press **⏻** **Sky**
 - The address is entered automatically.
- 3** Create and send the message
 - Creating & Sending a Message: see **P.3-3**

Greeting

To friends or family, send messages that can be opened on the designated date and time.

- 1** Press , select **3 Greeting** and press 
Mail Composition window opens.
- 2** Select  **To** and press 
- 3** Enter a recipient's number and press 
 To enter a recipient, see Step 3 on **P.3-4**.
- 4** Select  **From** and press 
 - When Sender's name is set in Mail Settings (see **P.6-10**), the name is entered automatically.
 - Skip ahead to Step 6 when not entering a name.
- 5** Enter name and press 
 - Enter up to 12 single-byte alphanumerics (10 single-byte katakana or 3 double-byte characters).
- 6** Select  **Text** and press 
- 7** Enter message text and press 
- 8** Select  **Date** and press 
The current date and time appear.
- 9** Specify the date and time and press  (**Recipients cannot open Greeting messages until then.**)
 - Apply 24-hour clock format.
- 10** Press  **Send**

3

Sending Text Messages



Mail Box

Checking Messages

Received messages are saved to Inbox, sent ones to Sent and drafts to Outbox.

- or appears when there is unread mail in Inbox.
- Set Mail Box display layouts to **List** or **Folder** (see P.4-15).
- To pause the current operation and open Inbox, see [Basic]P.1-31 "Hot Switching (Mail)."

1 Press , select Mail Box and press

- To check the number of saved messages, select **1 Inbox**, **2 Sent** or **3 Outbox** → Press **Menu**
 - Press **Back** to return.
- To toggle layout, select **1 Inbox**, **2 Sent** or **3 Outbox** → Press **Menu** → Select **2 Mail Box Display** → Press
- Security Code is required when there is a Secret Mode Mail Folder.

2 Select **1 Inbox**, **2 Sent** or **3 Outbox** and press

- When Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder**, select a folder → Press

3 Select a message and press

- Message window opens (see P.4-6 "Message Contents").
- Press to see newer messages or for older ones (when messages are arranged by date).
 - For Outbox messages, Mail Composition window opens.
 - To edit Outbox messages, select an item → Press → Edit the message
 - To save edited messages, press **Save** → Select **1 Save as** or **2 Overwrite** → Press
 - If attached image is too large, it may not appear.
 - For Sky Melody messages, the title appears and melody plays.
 - To edit Sent messages, press **Menu** → Select **Edit** → Press → Select an item → Press → Edit the message
 - Use to scroll.
 - To open messages with Privacy Level 3 or 4, enter Security Code.

4 Press to exit

Save Auto Send for Outbox Messages

- For one message, press → Select Mail Box → Press → Select **3 Outbox** → Press → Select a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Save Auto Send** → Press
- For multiple messages, press → Select Mail Box → Press → Select **3 Outbox** → Press → Select a message and press **Check** (repeat for other messages) → Press **Menu** → Select **Save Auto Send** → Press
 - To uncheck, select a message with → Press **Check**
 - To clear all check marks, press **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press
- Save Auto Send is disabled for protected messages.

Tip

- To activate Display Backlight, press - , , , or .
- Greeting messages are saved in Inbox. Sender's name and message cannot be viewed until the specified date and time.

When Mail Box Layout is Set to Folder

Newly received messages are sorted to **Inbox Folder**, sent messages to **Sent Folder** and saved drafts to **Unsent Folder**. Messages are sorted to the specified Mail Folder if set in the sender or recipient's Phone Book Option Settings (see P.4-18 - 4-21).

Mail Box Contents

Select a Mail Box and press . Inbox, Sent or Outbox opens.

To select a different view for Mail Box, see "List" (P.4-26 "Mail Box/Message Menu").

Unread/Read (Inbox), Mail Type (Sent/Outbox)

Super Mail:

Messages other than Super Mail:

Saved as Auto Send: (Outbox)

(If you subscribe to Super Mail, appears for e-mail messages.)

• Indicator color varies by message status:

- Unread: Red
- Protected: Yellow
- Unread Delivery Report: Green

Received or Sent Date & Time

Messages are arranged by:

Date:

Sender or Recipient:

Unread/Read or Delivery Status:

Protection:

Attachments:

Message Number

Message Type (see P.4-5)

Sender or Recipient

- Number or address appears. Name and appear if saved in Phone Book.
- For Super Mail in Inbox, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears with except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server
- Recipient or sender color indicates Priority Level (High: red, Normal: black, Low: blue).
- Additional indicator may appear before sender or recipient (see P.4-5 for details).



Tip Incoming Mail... and received text appear for incoming linked messages.

Message Type

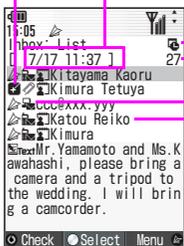
| | |
|--|---|
| | Sky Mail (mail to/from Vodafone handsets) |
| | E-mail (messages sent/received via the Internet) |
| | Super Mail with attachments |
| | Super Mail Notice (Server Mail, initial portion included) |
| | Unretrieved List (Super Mail) |
| | BBS Notice |
| | Polling (BBS accessed) |
| | Greeting |
| | Unsaved Sky Melody |

*Appears only in Inbox.

Additional Indicators

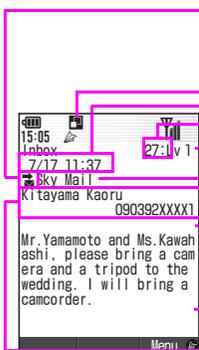
| | | | |
|--|-----------|--|-------------------|
| | Replied | | Auto Reply sent |
| | Forwarded | | Auto Reply failed |

- Only the indicator for the latest action appears.
- or does not appear for:
 - Failed deliveries
 - Messages sent from Outbox
 - Messages sent via V-Applications
 - Forwarded Server Mail
 - Resent Auto Send messages



Message Contents

Select a message and press to open it.



- Sending Priority:** see P.6-10
: Low, : Normal, : High, : By Express
: Super Mail or Super Mail Notice
- Image Display Size**
 100%: , 200%:
- Received or Sent Date & Time**
- Message Number**
- Privacy Level (see P.3-12) or Priority Setting (see P.3-13)**
 - Lv2 appears for Sky Melodies.
 - Nothing appears if Priority Setting is **Normal**.
- Message Type**
- Message Text**
- Sender or Recipient**
 - Number or address appears. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.
 - For Super Mail in Inbox, if the number or mail address is not saved in Phone Book, name designated by the sender appears except for:
 - Super Mail Notices
 - Super Mail messages not saved on the Server

: Auto Reply Sent, : Auto Reply Failed (see P.6-2)

Received, Sent, etc.: Delivery Status (Sent only)

Sent message delivery status (see below)

: **Report (Sent only)**

Delivery Report

Delivery Status Indicators

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Received | Message delivered* |
| Sent | Message delivered or sent to e-mail |
| × | Delivery failed, or was canceled (not saved at the Center) |
| ? | Message status unknown |

*Appears when confirming delivery from a message window (see P.4-21) or when sending messages with Confirm Delivery **On** (see P.3-11, P.6-4).

Using Received Messages

Replying to Messages

- 1** Open a message
- 2** Press **Menu**
- 3** Select **Return Mail** or **Reply to All** and press
 - Use Super Mail to send the same message to up to five recipients at one time.
 - Select **Reply to All** to send the same reply to all recipients (To/Cc). **Reply to All** may not appear for some messages.
- 4** Select **Mail Type, original message quote option** and press

Mail Composition window opens. Recipient is automatically entered.

 - For Super Mail, subject is entered prefaced with **Re:**.
- 5** Send the message
 - To create and send a message, see Step 5 (Step 7 for Sky Mail) and onward on P.3-4.

Tip

- If the sender has set Reply Address, designated address is entered in address field.
- If Reply with Original (see P.6-5) is active, original message is quoted.

Forwarding Messages

- Messages with Privacy Level 2 or 4 cannot be forwarded.
 - Super Mail is always forwarded as Super Mail.
- 1** Open a message
 - 2** Press **Menu**
 - 3** Select **Forward** and press

Mail Composition window opens.

 - For Super Mail, subject is automatically entered prefaced with **Fw:**.
 - 4** Select **To** and press
 - 5** Enter recipients and press
 - Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.
 - To enter recipients, see Step 3 on P.3-4.
 - When files cannot be attached, select **Understood** and press to send the message without the attachment.
 - 6** Press **Send**

Resending Messages

- 1 Open a sent message
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Resend** and press
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press

Linked Info

Saving Linked Info to Phone Book

Save linked phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs from message text and sender's address to Phone Book. Use text underlined with a dotted line within a message as indicated below:

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| Phone Number | Numbers, #, *, etc. between 10 and 24 digits, starting with 0. Numbers, #, *, etc. following TEL: (case insensitive). Example: TEL:090392XXXX1 (X is any number) |
| Mail Address | Single-byte alphanumeric and dots, etc., before and after @. Example: abc@□□□.co.jp (□ is any alphanumeric character) |

- 1 Open a message
- 2 **Saving Sender Address**
 - 1 Press **Menu**

Saving Linked Info

- 1 Select a phone number or mail address and press
- 3 Select **Add to Phone Book** and press
- 4 Select **New Entry** and press

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (see [Basic P.5-4 - 5-5](#)).

■ To save to an existing Phone Book entry, select **New Item** → Press → Open a Phone Book entry (perform Steps 1 - 3 on [Basic P.5-11](#)) → Press → Select an icon → Press → Press **Save** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

■ To save to Memory Card, see [Basic P.5-5](#).

Saving Address within Unretrieved List

- In **Inbox**, select **Unretrieved List** () → Press → Select a message → Press **Menu** → Perform Steps 3 - 4

Using Linked Info

Use numbers (**TEL:**), addresses or URLs (**http://** or **https://**) to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites. Available only when numbers, addresses and URLs are underlined with a dotted line.

- 1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press
- 2 Select **Inbox**, **Sent** or **Outbox** and press
■ When Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder**, select a folder → Press
- 3 Open a message containing a phone number, mail address or URL
- 4 Select a number, address or URL and press
- 5 **Phone Numbers**
 - 1 Select **Call** and press
Phone number appears.
 - 2 Press
The number is dialed.

Mail Addresses

- 1 Select **Send Mail** and press
- 2 Select **Send Super Mail** or **Send Sky Mail** and press
■ Creating & Sending a Message: see [P.3-3](#)

URLs

- 1 Select **Open Link** and press
URL appears.
- 2 Press again, select **Send** and press
Handset connects to the Network.
 - **High Security Protected** appears for URLs starting with **https://**.
To continue, select **OK** and press .■ For more about accessing Mobile Internet sites, see [P.7-7](#).

Protecting Messages

Protect important messages saved in Inbox, Sent or Outbox.

- Unretrieved List (Super Mail), unread Super Mail Notices and incoming linked messages are protected and will not be deleted automatically.
- Protect up to 980 KB in Sent. All messages in Inbox and Outbox can be protected.
- Protected messages are not deleted from Outbox even after they are sent.

1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 

2 Select ,  **Sent** or  **Outbox** and press 

■ When Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder**, select a folder → Press 

3 Select a message and press  **Check**

 appears.

- Neither Auto Send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.

■ To uncheck, select a message with  → Press  **Check**

4 Repeat Step 3 and select all the messages to protect

- Select up to 50 messages at one time.

■ To clear all check marks, press  **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press  → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

5 Press  **Menu**

6 Select **Protect Message** and press 

7 Choose  **On** and press 

Protected message indicators change to yellow.

■ To cancel protection, choose  **Off** → Press 

8 Press  to exit

Deleting Messages

Selecting Messages to Delete

1 Press , select  **Mail Box** and press 

2 Select ,  **Sent** or  **Outbox** and press 

■ When Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder**, select a folder → Press 

3 **Deleting a Message**

1 Select a message and press  **Menu**

- Neither Auto Send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.

2 Choose **Delete** and press 

Deleting Selected Messages

1 Select a message and press  **Check**

 appears.

- Neither Auto Send () messages nor failed Auto Send () messages can be selected.

■ To uncheck, select a message with  → Press  **Check**

2 Repeat Step 2 to select all messages to delete

- Select up to 50 messages at one time.

■ To clear all check marks, press  **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press  → Choose  **Yes** → Press 

3 Press  **Menu**

4 Select **Delete** and press 

4 Choose  **Yes** and press 

5 Press  to exit

Tip

Advance Mail (see **Basic P.15-10**) messages must be deleted one by one.

4

Mail Box

4

Mail Box

Delete All

- 1 Press **[Left Arrow]**, select **[0] Mail Box** and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Select **[1] Inbox**, **[2] Sent** or **[3] Outbox** and press **[Left Arrow]** **Menu**
When Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder**, select a folder → Press **[Left Arrow]** **Menu**
- 3 Select **[3] Delete All** and press **[Enter]**
- 4 Select **[1] Select All** or **[2] Read/Unprotected** (**[2] Unprotected** for Sent and Outbox) and press **[Enter]**
- 5 Enter Security Code
- 6 Choose **[1] Yes** and press **[Enter]**
- 7 Press **[End Call]** to exit



When Outbox is set to **[2] Unprotected**, Advance Mail (see **Basic P.15-10**), Auto Send and failed Auto Send messages are not deleted.

Auto Delete

When memory is full, handset cannot receive new messages. Activate Auto Delete Old to automatically delete oldest received messages to make room for new ones. Auto Delete Old is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press **[Left Arrow]**, select **[0] Mail Box** and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Select **[7] Mail Box Settings** and press **[Enter]**
- 3 Select **[5] Auto Delete Old** and press **[Enter]**
- 4 Choose **[1] On** and press **[Enter]**
To cancel, choose **[2] Off** → Press **[Enter]**
- 5 Press **[End Call]** to exit



When memory is full, oldest sent messages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones. To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see **P.4-10**).

Chat Mail Log

Use Chat Mail Log folders to organize messages exchanged between your handset and up to five addresses per folder. Sent and received messages appear by date, designated by sender.

Saving Members

- Save up to five members per group (Group 1 - Group 3).
- Same address can be entered in multiple groups.
- Enter up to 16 single-byte characters to customize a group name. If all members in a group are deleted, the group name returns to its default.

- 1 Press **[Left Arrow]**, select **[0] Mail Box** and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Select **[4] Chat Mail Log** and press **[Enter]**
 - Security Code is required when there is a Secret Mode Mail Folder.
 - To change group name, select a group → Press **[Left Arrow]** **Menu** → Select **Change Group Name** → Press **[Enter]** → Enter name → Press **[Enter]**
 - When adding members to an existing group, select a group → Press **[Left Arrow]** **Menu** → Select **Save Member** → Press **[Enter]** → Skip ahead to Step 5
- 3 Select a group and press **[Enter]**
- 4 Choose **[1] Yes** and press **[Enter]**
- 5 Select a number and press **[Enter]**
- 6 **Phone Book**
 - 1 Select **[1] Phone Book** and press **[Enter]**
 - Changes to Phone Book entries are not reflected in Chat Mail groups. Edit member addresses directly.
 - 2 Open an entry
 - To search Phone Book, see **Basic P.5-12 - 5-13**.

Direct Entry

- 1 Select **[2] Mobile Number** or **[3] Mail Address** and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address
 - To open Phone Book, see Steps 1 - 3 on **Basic P.5-11**.

Super Mail Groups

- 1 Select **[4] Group Folders** and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Select a Group
 - If one or more members are already saved, remaining entries are saved from the top of the Super Mail Group.

7 Press

- Repeat Steps 5 - 7 to add more members.
- To change group members, select a number → Press → Enter number or address → Press
- To delete a member, select a number → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
- To delete all members, press **Menu** → Select **Delete All** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

8 Press to exit

Note Changing members does not affect messages already saved in Chat Mail Log.

Opening Chat Mail Log

Received Sky Mail messages with Privacy Level 2 or higher, Super Mail messages in Unretrieved List and Greeting messages do not appear in group contents even if the address is saved.

1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press

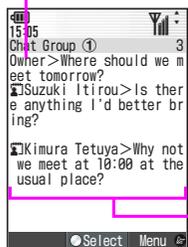
2 Select **Chat Mail Log** and press

- Security Code is required when there is a Secret Mode Mail Folder.
- To delete all messages, select a group → Press **Menu** → Select **Delete All Folders** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
 - Messages in Mail Box are not deleted.

3 Select a group and press

Group opens and contents appear (see below).

List Contents



Sender

- Number or address appears. Name and appear if saved in Phone Book.
- **Owner** appears for mail sent from handset if Owner Profile is blank. Owner Profile name appears when set (see **Basic P.2-22**).

Message Text

Chat Mail Log Menu

- While Chat Mail Log folder is open, press **Menu** to reply, forward, edit, etc.
- To open a message, select a message and press .

Tip

- Deleting a message from Inbox or Sent automatically deletes the same message in Chat Mail Log.
- Each group holds up to 100 messages. When full, oldest messages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

Mail Folders

Mail Box Layout

From Mail Box Settings, set Layout to **Folder** or **List** for Inbox, Sent and Outbox. **List** is set by default (Mail Folders are hidden).

1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press

2 Select **Mail Box Settings** and press

3 Select **Layout** and press

- Security Code is required when there is a Secret Mode Mail Folder.

4 Select **Inbox**, **Sent** or **Outbox** and press

5 Select **Folder** and press

- Follow the same steps to change Layout for each Mail Box.
- To hide folders, select **List** → Press

6 Press to exit

Folder Name

From Mail Box Settings, change Layout to **Folder** for Inbox, Sent or Outbox, then use Mail Folders to organize messages. In addition to Inbox Folder, Sent Folder and Unsent Folder, sort messages to one of nine Mail Folders in Inbox, Sent or Outbox. Change folder names to customize Mail Folders. **Inbox Folder**, **Sent Folder** and **Unsent Folder** cannot be renamed.

1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press

- 2 Select **7** *Mail Box Settings* and press ●
- 3 Select **3** *Set Folders* and press ●
- 4 Select **1** *Inbox*, **2** *Sent* or **3** *Outbox* and press ●
- 5 Select **1** *Folder Name* and press ●
Mail Folders appear.
- 6 Select a folder and press ●
- 7 Enter name
 - Enter up to 16 single-byte characters.
- 8 Press ●
 - Repeat Steps 6 - 8 to rename other folders.
- 9 Press **ESC** to exit

Secret Mode

Security Code is required to open a Secret Mode Mail Folder.

- Set Mail Box Layout to **Folder** to use Secret Mode.
- **Inbox Folder**, **Sent Folder** and **Unsent Folder** cannot be set to Secret Mode.

- 1 Press **HOME**, select **0** *Mail Box* and press ●
- 2 Select **7** *Mail Box Settings* and press ●
- 3 Select **3** *Set Folders* and press ●
- 4 Select **1** *Inbox*, **2** *Sent* or **3** *Outbox* and press ●
- 5 Select **2** *Secret Mode* and press ●
- 6 Enter Security Code
- 7 Select a folder and press ●
- 8 Choose **1** *On* and press ●
 - Repeat Steps 7 - 8 for other folders.
 - To cancel, choose **2** *Off* → Press ●
- 9 Press **ESC** to exit

Letter Pad

Set Letter Pad for each Mail Folder to use as background for Mail Box contents (when List view is Pattern 1), message contents, Mail Composition windows and New Message windows.

- Letter Pad set for Sent Folder appears for Mail Composition windows and New Message windows (after a recipient is entered) or Outbox contents.
- Letter Pad appears in Mail Composition window after a recipient is entered.
- Letter Pad is **Off** for all items by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Functions* ▶ *Settings 2* ▶ *Display Settings* ▶ *Letter Pad*

- 1 Select **1** *Inbox* or **2** *Sent* and press ●
- 2 Select a folder and press ●
- 3 Select from **1** *Letter Pad 1* to **5** *Letter Pad 5* and press ●
 - Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other folders.
 - **Custom Screen** can be selected when Custom Screen (see **Basic** P.7-10) is set.
 - To cancel, choose **4** *Off* → Press ●
- 4 Press **ESC** to exit



When Font Size for Menus & Lists (see **Basic** P.7-7 "Fonts") is **Large**, Letter Pad appears only for message contents.

Moving Messages

Set Mail Box Layout to **Folder** before attempting to move messages (see P.4-15). Unretrieved List (Super Mail) and incoming linked messages cannot be moved from **Inbox Folder**.

- 1 Press **HOME**, select **0** *Mail Box* and press ●
- 2 Select **1** *Inbox*, **2** *Sent* or **3** *Outbox* and press ●
 - When Mail Box Layout is set to **Folder**, select a folder → Press ●

- 3 Select a message and press **⊙** **Check**
 - ☑ appears.
 - Neither Auto Send (☐) messages nor failed Auto Send (✖) messages can be selected.
 - To uncheck, select a message with ☑ → Press **⊙** **Check**
- 4 Repeat Step 3
 - Select up to 50 messages at one time.
 - To clear all check marks, press **⌂** **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press **⊙** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⊙**
- 5 Press **⌂** **Menu**
- 6 Select **Move Mail Folder** and press **⊙**
- 7 Select a folder and press **⊙**
 - Repeat Steps 3 - 7 to move other messages.
- 8 Press **⊙** to exit

Sorting to Folders Automatically

Sorting by Phone Book Entry

Sort messages automatically by phone number or mail address. When a Phone Book entry contains multiple numbers/addresses, use **Set All** to apply settings to all entry items or **One Number/Address** to designate individual numbers/addresses.

- 1 Open a Phone Book entry
 - To search Phone Book, see **Basic**P.5-12 - 5-13.
- 2 Press **⊙**
- 3 Select **Edit** and press **⊙**
- 4 Select **Option settings** and press **⊙**
- 5 Select **4 Mail Folder** and press **⊙**
- 6 Select **1 Inbox Auto Sort** or **2 Sent Auto Sort** and press **⊙**



- 7 **All Numbers/Addresses**
 - 1 Choose **1 Set All** and press **⊙**

Individual Numbers/Addresses

- 1 Choose **2 One Number/Address** and press **⊙**
- 2 Select a Vodafone handset number or a mail address and press **⊙**
- 3 Choose **1 On** and press **⊙**

Canceling

- 1 Choose **3 Off** and press **⊙**

- 8 Select a folder and press **⊙**
 - When setting for One Number/Address, press **⊙** **Set**.
- 9 Press **⊙** **Set** twice
 - For more, see Step 6 and onward on **Basic**P.5-15.



- Sent messages are sorted by the first recipient address.
- Individual settings are replaced when **Set All** is selected and vice versa.

Sorting by Text String

Sort received messages automatically by specified text, phone number or mail address.

- Save up to 20 text strings and 30 entries for numbers/addresses.
- Messages are sorted when the specified text is in:
 - Subjects of Super Mail Notices or Super Mail messages not saved on the Server
 - Subjects of retrieved Super Mail messages (in the first 512 single-byte characters)
 - Sky Mail message text (except Fixed Text)
- Save part of number or address to apply to more than one sender.
- Mail addresses are case insensitive.

- 1 Press **⌂**, select **0 Mail Box** and press **⊙**
- 2 Select **7 Mail Box Settings** and press **⊙**
- 3 Select **6 Sort By Subject** or **7 Sort By Addresses** and press **⊙**
- 4 Enter Security Code
- 5 Select a number and press **⊙**
 - To edit saved text, select a number → Press **⊙** → Select **1 Show Message** or **2 Hide Message** → Press **⊙** → Edit text → Press **⊙** → Skip ahead to Step 8 on **P.4-20**
 - To cancel, select a number → Press **⊙** → Choose **3 Off** → Press **⊙**
 - To delete saved text, select a number → Press **⌂** **Delete** → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⊙**

6 Select **1Show Message or **2**Hide Message and press **⏏****

• Handset does not respond to messages sorted with *Hide Message*.

■ To cancel, choose **3**Off → Press **⏏**

7 Sort by Text String

1 Enter text and press **⏏**

• Enter up to 20 single-byte characters.

Sort by Number/Address

1 Select **1Mobile Number or **2**E-Mail and press **⏏****

2 Enter a Vodafone handset number or mail address and press **⏏**

■ To open Phone Book, perform Steps 1 - 3 on **Basic** P.5-11 → Press **⏏**

8 Select a folder and press **⏏**

• Repeat Steps 5 - 8 to save more text strings or numbers/addresses.

■ When Inbox Layout is set to *List*, choose **1**Yes or **2**No → Press **⏏**

9 Press **⏏ to exit**

Tip • Phone Book entry Auto Sort settings (see **P.4-18**) take priority over Sort By Subject and Sort By Addresses settings.
• Messages containing two or more specified text strings are sorted by the text in the foremost text string entry number.

Hide Spam

Designate a folder to sort messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book. Use Hide Spam to filter unsolicited messages (spam).

Hide Spam is *Off* by default.

1 Press **⏏, select **5**Mail Settings and press **⏏****

2 Select **7Hide Spam and press **⏏****

3 Enter Security Code

4 Choose **1On and press **⏏****

■ To cancel, choose **2**Off → Press **⏏** (Omit the next steps.)

5 Press **⏏ **Approved****

6 Select a folder and press **⏏**

■ When Inbox Layout is set to *List*, choose **1**Yes or **2**No → Press **⏏**

7 Press **⏏ to exit**

Note

• When Hide Spam is active, handset does not respond to messages from unsaved numbers or addresses.
• Non-delivery notifications are also sorted to a designated folder.

Tip

• Messages are not sorted when Phone Book Lock (see **Basic** P.14-3) is active.
• Sort By Addresses settings (see **P.4-18**) take priority over Hide Spam settings.
• Messages from numbers and addresses in Secret Mode Phone Book entries are not sorted by this function, even if handset is in Secret Mode.

Confirm Delivery & Cancel Delivery

Confirm delivery of Sky Mail and Greeting messages, or cancel Sky Mail delivery. Use Confirm Delivery and Cancel Delivery for messages sent to compatible Vodafone handsets.

1 Open a message

• Select a message with *Sent* or *?*.

2 Press **⏏ **Menu****

3 Select *Confirm Delivery* or *Cancel Delivery* and press **⏏**

4 Choose **1Yes and press **⏏****

• When complete, the Center sends a Delivery Report.

Sending from Outbox

Sending a Message

1 Press **⏏, select **0**Mail Box and press **⏏****

■ To check the number of saved messages, select **3**Outbox → Press **⏏** **Menu**
■ Press **⏏** **Back** to return.

2 Select **3Outbox and press **⏏****

• **⏏** appears for Auto Send messages, and **⏏** appears for failed Auto Send messages.

3 Select a message and press ●

Mail Composition window opens.

- For Auto Send (☐) messages, **Cancel Auto Send?** appears. Choose **1 Yes** → Press ●
- For failed Auto Send (☒) messages, **Re-save As Auto Send?** appears. Select **1 Save As Auto Send** or **2 Cancel** → Press ●
- To edit Outbox messages, select an item → Press ● → Edit the message
 - To save edited messages, press ● **Save** → Select **1 Save as** or **2 Overwrite** → Press ●

4 Press ● **Send**

Standby returns.

- Sent messages are deleted from Outbox. To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see **P.4-10**).

Tip When sent from Outbox, failed messages remain in both Outbox and Sent.

Send Continuously

Send Super Mail from Outbox continuously.

1 Press ●, select **1 Mail Box** and press ●

2 Select **3 Outbox** and press ●

3 Select a Super Mail message and press ● **Check**

☑ appears.

- Neither Auto Send (☐) messages nor failed Auto Send (☒) messages can be selected.
- To uncheck, select a message with ☑ → Press ● **Check**

4 Repeat Step 3

- Select up to 50 messages at one time.
- To clear all check marks, press ● **Menu** → Select **Reset Check(s)** → Press ● → Choose **1 Yes** → Press ●

5 Press ● **Menu**

6 Select **Send Continuously** and press ●

After messages are sent, Standby returns.

- Sent messages are deleted from Outbox. To prevent inadvertent deletion, protect important messages (see **P.4-10**).
- A confirmation appears for unsent messages. Choose **1 Yes** → Press ● (Other messages are sent.)

Attachments

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attachments (image, sound, vFile, etc.) to Data Folder.

1 Open a message with at least one attached file

2 Select a file and press ●

- Select an image in the message.
- Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.

3 Select **To Data Folder** and press ●

Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.

- For sound files, title and file name appear (when they are different). Select either → Press ●
- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **ESC** to return.
- To play sound, select **Play** → Press ●
 - To adjust volume, press ● (up) or ● (down) during playback.
- To change tone or loudness, select **Tone** or **Adjust Loudness** → Press ● (See **Basic P.8-13 - 8-14** for more.)

4 Press ●

- To select a folder, see **Basic P.12-6**.
- To switch to Memory Card, press ● **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press ●

5 Press ●

- When memory is full, delete files and try again (see **Basic P.12-45**).

Wallpaper & Display Images

Save images as Wallpaper or as Display Images to use them for Power On/Off, Alarm or incoming calls.

1 Open a message containing images

2 Select an image and press **⊙**

- Images can only be used when **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** appears.

3 Wallpaper

1 Select **Save As Wallpaper** and press **⊙**

The following display options appear.

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Centered | Image appears at the center in its original size |
| Tile | Duplicates of the image are arranged like tiles over Display |
| Full Screen | Image is enlarged to cover the full display area |
| Enlarge Display | Image is enlarged until the width or height reaches the edges of Display |

To open properties, select **Property** → Press **⊙**

- Press **⏪** to return.

For E-Animation (NEVA files) and images larger than Display, press **⊙**.
(Omit the next steps.)

2 Select an option and press **⊙**

3 Press **⊙**

- Existing image is replaced.

Display Images

1 Select **To Display Images** and press **⊙**

- E-Animation (NEVA files) and MNG/SVG files cannot be used for **Incoming Call** and **Alarm**.
- Maximum image size:

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Power On | W 240 x H 260 dots | Incoming Call | W 240 x H 80 dots |
| Power Off | W 240 x H 260 dots | Alarm | W 240 x H 100 dots |

To open properties, select **Property** → Press **⊙**

- Press **⏪** to return.

2 Select an item and press **⊙**

Image appears.

For E-Animation (NEVA files), press **⊙**. (Omit the next step.)

3 Use **⊙** to specify display area and press **⊙**

- Depending on size or type, display area cannot be specified for some images.
- Existing image is replaced.

Other Functions

Scan Code

Read barcodes directly from messages

Open a message with barcode (images) attached (see P.4-2) →

Select a barcode (image) → Press **⊙** → Select **Scan Code** → Press

⊙ → See **Basic P.15-34**

- Barcodes can only be scanned when **Scan Code** appears. Some codes may not be read. In this case, an error message appears.

Image Auto Open

Set handset to open attached image files automatically

Default: On

Press **⏪** → Select **Mail Box** → Press **⊙** → Select **Mail Box Settings** → Press **⊙** → Select **Auto Open** → Press **⊙** → Select **Image Auto Open** → Press **⊙** → Choose **On** or **Off** → Press **⊙**



Depending on file type, image may not open automatically, or may open when sound is played.

Sound Auto Play

Set handset to play attached sound files automatically

Default: Off

Press **⏪** → Select **Mail Box** → Press **⊙** → Select **Mail Box Settings** → Press **⊙** → Select **Auto Open** → Press **⊙** → Select **Sound Auto Play** → Press **⊙** → Choose **On** or **Off** → Press **⊙**



- When more than one sound file is attached, the first file plays.
- Press **⏪** to stop playback.
- Depending on file type, sound may not play automatically, or playback starts when an image is opened. E-Animation (NEVA file) sound may play automatically even if Sound Auto Play is **Off**.

Mail Box/Message Menu

Mail Box Menu

Show Address Check sender's address

Open a Mail Box and select a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Show Address** → Press → Select address → Press

- Show Address is not available for Outbox.

Auto Sort Rearrange the order of messages by date, sender, etc.

Open a Mail Box and press **Menu** → Select **Auto Sort** → Press → Select an item → Press

- Set for Inbox, Sent and Outbox independently.
- When arranged by **Sender** or **Recipient**, messages are listed by numbers, roman letters then kana.

List Select a view for Mail Box

Open a Mail Box and press **Menu** → Select **List** → Press → Select a pattern → Press

- Setting applies to Inbox, Sent and Outbox.

Create QR Codes Create QR Codes from messages

Open a Mail Box and select a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Create QR Code** → Press → Press **Create** → Press

- To select storage media, press **Menu** → Select **1 Save to** → Press → Select **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** → Press
- To attach to Super Mail, press **Menu** before saving → Select **2 Attachment** → Press → Complete Super Mail message (see P.3-3)
- Neither Auto Send (☑) messages nor failed Auto Send (☒) messages can be selected.
- QR Codes can only be created when **Create QR Code** appears.
- Subject or message text is mandatory.
- Depending on size or contents, not all message contents may be converted.

Scroll Unit (for Mail Box) Select from four options (Press and hold to scroll)

Default Continuation

Open a Mail Box and press **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press → Select an option → Press

- Setting applies to Inbox, Sent and Outbox.

Show as Unread/Read Toggle message status between unread and read

Available only for Inbox.

Open Inbox and select a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Show as Unread or Show as Read** → Press

- Some message status cannot be changed.

Report Spam Report sources of unsolicited messages, etc. as spam senders

Available only for Inbox.

Open Inbox and select a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Report Spam** → Press → Press **Send**

- Spam senders can only be reported when **Report Spam** appears.

Note For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Service, General Information (see P.16-16).

Tip

- Subject is automatically entered prefaced with **Fw:**.
- The following items are automatically entered into message text.
 - Sender's number or address
 - Received Date & Time
 - Original message text
- Attachments are deleted.
- To change the destination mail address, see P.6-5 "Report Setting."

Message Menu

Copy Copy message text

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Copy** → Press → Use to underline the first line of the text block → Press → Use to specify text → Press → Perform from Step 5 on **Basic** P.4-17

- To change the starting position, press .
- Text can only be saved when **Copy** appears.

Set Display Size

Change font and image size

Default Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Set Display Size** → Press **1** → Select **Font Size** or **Image Size** → Press **1** → Select a size → Press **1**

Tip

- Press **2** to toggle between 200% and 100%. (appears for 100% and for 200%.)
- The setting applies to both received and sent messages. It remains even after exiting Mail.
- To change Font Size from Font Settings menu, see **P.7-7**.

Go to

Jump cursor to the beginning or end of text

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Go to** → Press **1** → Select **Top Jump** or **Bottom Jump** → Press **1**

Scroll Unit (for Text)

Select from three scroll units

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press **1** → Select from **Full Screen** to **Line** → Press **1**

In Standby

Press **Menu** → Select **Mail Box** → Press **1** → Select **Mail Box Settings** → Press **1** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press **1** → Select a unit → Press **1**

Character Encoding

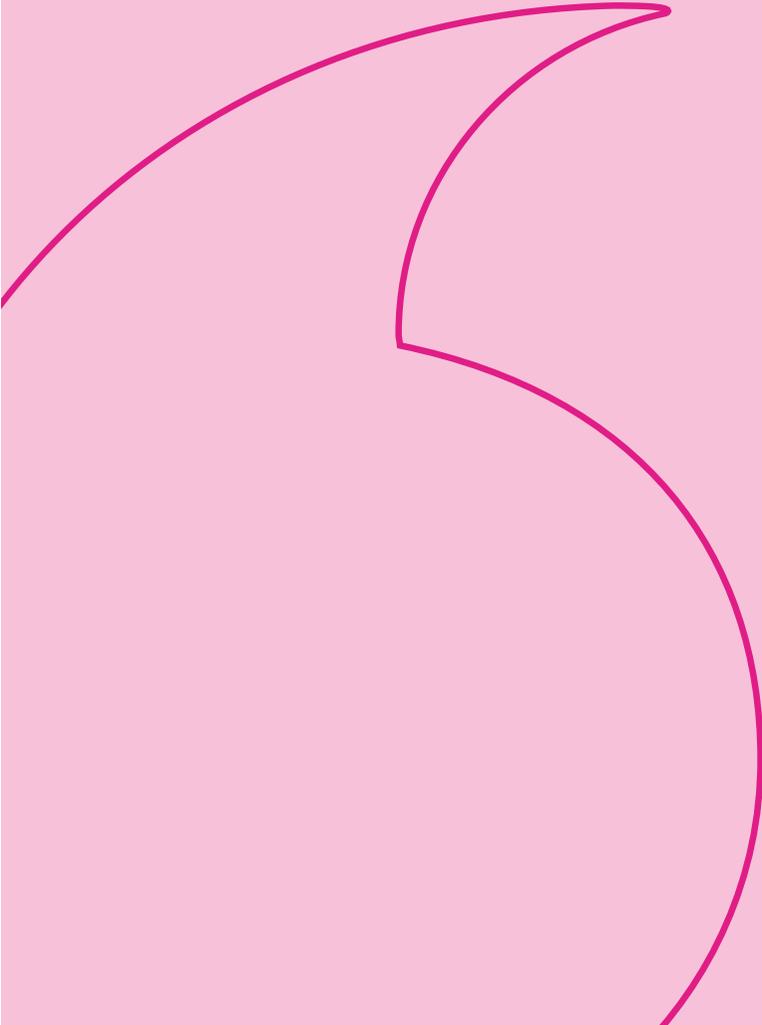
Change Character Encoding when text appears distorted

Available only for Super Mail.

Default Auto Recognition

Open a message and press **Menu** → Select **Character Encoding** → Press **1** → Select from **Auto Recognition** to **ISO-2022-JP** → Press **1**

- Use Auto Recognition whenever possible.
- The setting applies to the current message only.



Server Mail

Unretrieved List

Acquire Mail List

Retrieve a list of messages stored at the Center (Server Mail), then retrieve selected messages. appears next to Unretrieved List in Inbox.

- 1 Press , select **Mail Box** and press
- 2 Select **Mail Request** and press
 - To retrieve all Server Mail, select **Retrieve All** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
 - To delete all Server Mail, select **Delete All Mail** → Press → Enter Security Code → Choose **Yes** → Press
- 3 Select **Acquire Mail List** and press
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press

After Unretrieved List is retrieved, Inbox opens.

 - When Unretrieved List has already been retrieved, it is refreshed.
- 5 Press

Unretrieved List (containing sender's name, handset number or address of each Server Mail) appears.

 - For details, select a message → Press **Menu** → Select **Property** → Press
 - Press to return.
 - To forward, select a message → Perform from Step 2 in "Forwarding Server Mail" on P.5-4.

Server Status

- Press → Select **Mail Box** → Press → Select **Mail Request** → Press → Select **Server Mail Volume** → Press
 - To update Server Mail Volume, press **Update** → Choose **Yes** → Press

Tip *Server Message* appears in the list when there is more Server Mail. (Select *Server Message* and press to see notice from the Server.) To see the rest, retrieve or delete messages on the list and refresh Unretrieved List.

Retrieving Selected Messages

When more than one message is selected, some may not be retrieved.

- 1 **Open Unretrieved List**
 - To retrieve all messages, press **Menu** → Select **Retrieve all Mail** → Press
 - (Omit the next steps.)
- 2 **Select a message and press**

The box changes to .

 - If the message contains irretrievable files, appears red.
 - To uncheck, select a message with → Press
- 3 **Repeat Step 2**
- 4 Press **Menu**
- 5 **Select Next and press**

After messages are retrieved, Inbox opens.

 - Downloaded messages are deleted from Unretrieved List.

Retrieving Selected Items

Select message text or attached image/sound files to retrieve. (Unretrieved items are deleted from the Server.) Retrieve up to 30 KB, including handset numbers/mail addresses, message text, subject, and attachments.

- 1 **Open Unretrieved List**
- 2 **Select a message and press**

The box is checked.

 - If the message contains irretrievable files, appears red.
 - To uncheck, select a message with → Press
- 3 Press **Menu**
- 4 **Select *Select Contents* and press**

List of contained items appear with size.

 - Only checked items are retrieved.
- 5 **Select an item and press**
 - To clear all check marks at one time, press **Menu** → Select **All Reset** → Press
- 6 **Repeat Step 5**
- 7 Press **More**

After messages are retrieved, Inbox opens.

 - When there are unselected items, choose **Yes** → Press

Deleting Unretrieved List Messages

Deleted messages cannot be recovered.

1 Open Unretrieved List

2 Deleting Selected Messages

1 Select a message and press ●

The box is checked.

- If the message contains irretrievable files, ☑ appears red.

■ To uncheck, select a message with ☑ → Press ●

2 Repeat Step 1

3 Press ⏏ Menu

4 Select *Delete Item* and press ●

Deleting All Messages

1 Press ⏏ Menu

2 Select *Delete all Mail* and press ●

3 Enter Security Code

3 Select 1 *Delete* and press ●

- Unretrieved List is deleted from Inbox.

■ To cancel, select 2 *Cancel* → Press ●

4 Press ○

Server Mail

Forwarding Server Mail

Forward Server Mail directly to PCs, etc. Message text is forwarded as an attachment.

1 Open a message (Super Mail Notice)

- Select a Super Mail message with ✉.

2 Press ⏏ Menu

3 Select *Transfer Server Mail* and press ●

Subject is automatically entered prefaced with *Fw:*.

4 Select ☑ *To* and press ●

5 Enter recipients and press ●

- Enter message text or attach more files if necessary.

■ To enter recipients, see Step 3 on P.3-4.

■ To delete message from the Server after forwarding, select *Option Settings* → Press

● → Select 4 *Delete Server Mail* → Press ● → Choose 1 *Yes* → Press ● → Press

○ *Back*

6 Press ⏏ *Send*

Deleting Server Mail

Delete Server Mail directly without downloading it first.

1 Open a message (Super Mail Notice)

- Select a Super Mail message with ✉.

2 Press ⏏ Menu

3 Select *Delete Server Mail* and press ●



To delete Super Mail Notice only, select *Delete* and press ●.

4 Select 1 *Server Mail Only* or 2 *Notice and Mail* and press ●

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Server Mail Only | Super Mail Notices remain |
| Notice and Mail | Both Super Mail Notices and Server Mail are deleted |

5 Choose 1 *Yes* and press ●

6 Press ○ *Back*



Mail Settings

Auto Reply

- Reply automatically with a preset Sky Mail message when you are busy, away, etc.
- Specify recipient number or address from Option Settings in Phone Book entries (see **Basic P.5-9**).
 - Share Auto Reply message on BBS (see **P.6-13**).
 - Auto Reply is canceled when Reply Time elapses. (Count continues even while handset power is turned off.)
 - Default settings:
(Customize Title, Reply Text and Reply Time for each mode.)

| Title | Reply Text | Reply Time |
|---------------------------|---|------------|
| Bedtime Mode | Sorry, I have gone to bed and cannot check my mail. | 008 (Hour) |
| Meeting Mode | Sorry, I'm in a meeting now and can't check my mail | 001 (Hour) |
| Driving Mode | Sorry, I'm driving now and cannot check my mail. | 001 (Hour) |
| Travel Mode | Sorry, I'm abroad now and cannot check my mail. | 168 (Hour) |
| Original Text Mode | - | 001 (Hour) |

Activating Auto Reply

Auto Reply is not available while a V-Application is set for Standby.

- 1 Press , select **5 Mail Settings** and press
- 2 Select **4 Auto Reply** and press
- 3 Choose **1 On** and press
■ To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press (Omit the next steps.)
- 4 Press **Approved**
- 5 Select a mode and press
• Skip ahead to Step 7 when using the current setting.

6 Changing Titles

- 1 Select **1 Title** and press
- 2 Enter title and press
 - Enter up to 18 single-byte characters.

Editing Reply Text

- 1 Select **2 Reply Text** and press
- 2 Enter text and press
 - Enter up to 51 single-byte alphanumerics (22 double-byte characters).
 - Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.
 - Pictograph and single-byte katakana cannot be used.

Changing Reply Time

- 1 Select **3 Reply Time** and press
- 2 Enter time (001 - 168 hours) and press

- 7 Press **Set**
 appears.

When Auto Reply is Active

Handset automatically sends a reply (Sky Mail) to messages from numbers or addresses specified in Phone Book Option Settings (see **Basic P.5-9**).

- Replies are sent to the sender's number or address even if reply address is designated.
- **Auto Reply Msg** is automatically entered in Auto Reply messages.
- Auto Reply message is sent only once even if multiple messages are received from the same number/address (except when the previous Auto Reply to the sender failed).
- Auto Send is not effective for Auto Reply messages.

When Auto Reply Message is Sent

- Information Menu opens. To open details, follow these steps.
Select Auto Reply Sent → Press
 - To open Inbox, select **Open Inbox** → Press

Note

- A confirmation asking whether or not to cancel Auto Reply appears in the following cases. Choose **1 Yes** or **2 No** and press .
- Display position is changed from clamshell closed to clamshell open
 - is pressed in Standby

Basic Settings

Mail Notice

Select contents or cancel notices for messages received during handset use (see P.2-5)

Default: Name

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **5 Mail Notice** → Press **●** → Select from **1 Name** to **4 Off** → Press **●**

Confirm Delivery

Request a Delivery Report (see P.2-4) to confirm message delivery

Default: Off

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **4 Confirm Delivery** → Press **●** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **●**

Tip

- Delivery Report is available for:
 - Sky Mail messages sent to Vodafone handsets
 - Greeting messages
 - Super Mail messages sent to a single Vodafone handset
- To change settings for individual messages, see P.3-11.
- To check delivery status of Sky Mail or Greeting messages sent without Confirm Delivery, see P.4-21.

Auto Send

Outbox messages saved as Auto Send when handset is out-of-range are sent automatically when signal returns

Default: On

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **3 Auto Send** → Press **●** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **●**

Tip

Save Auto Send does not appear in Mail Composition window when Auto Send is **Off**.

Custom Fixed Text (Japanese Only)

Save phrases to Custom Fixed Text (No.118 to 127)

Saving Text

Press **☞** → Select **5 メール設定** → Press **●** → Select **0 ユーザー定型文** → Press **●** → Select a number → Press **●** → Enter text → Press **●** → Press **☞**

- Enter up to 128 single-byte alphanumeric (126 single-byte katakana or 61 double-byte characters).

Editing Text

Press **☞** → Select **5 メール設定** → Press **●** → Select **0 ユーザー定型文** → Press **●** → Select a number → Press **●** → Edit text → Press **●** → Press **☞**

To delete text, open an entry and press **削除** for 1+ seconds → Press **●** → Press **☞**

Note

When sending Sky Mail or Greeting messages using Custom Fixed Text to other Vodafone handsets, the recipient must have the same Custom Fixed Text saved under the same number to read the message.

Report Setting

Set an address for Report Spam (see P.4-27)

Default: stop@meiwaku.vodafone.jp

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **✕ Center Address** → Press **●** → Enter Security Code → Select **4 Report Setting** → Press **●** → Enter an address → Press **●**

- Do not change address unless instructed to do so. Access to the service will be disabled.

Note

For more information, contact Vodafone Customer Service, General Information (see P.16-16).

Reply with Original

Quote the original message text when replying

Default: Off

Activating Reply with Original

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **2 Super Mail** or **3 Sky Mail** → Press **●** → Select **Reply w/ Original** → Press **●** → Choose **1 On** → Press **●** → Enter quote header comment → Press **●**

- The quote header comment **--○○ さんは言いました--** can be changed.

Canceling Reply with Original

Press **☞** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **●** → Select **2 Super Mail** or **3 Sky Mail** → Press **●** → Select **Reply w/ Original** → Press **●** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **●**

Tip

- The quote header comment counts toward the character limit.
- To select whether to quote the original message or not for individual replies, see P.4-7.

Super Mail Settings

Auto Retrieve

Retrieve complete Super Mail manually or automatically.
Auto Retrieve is set to **Manual** by default.

- 1 Press **⏪**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **⏹**
- 2 Select **2 Super Mail** and press **⏹**
- 3 Select **1 Auto Retrieve** and press **⏹**
- 4 Select **1 Auto** or **2 Manual** and press **⏹**

Note Even when Auto Retrieve is active, Super Mail Notices may appear when signal is weak or message is over 30 KB. When short, complete message may be delivered automatically even if **Manual** is set.

Rejected Files

When Auto Retrieve (see above) is active, specify file types to reject. Rejected files are deleted from the Server.

- For applicable file types, refer to the table on **P.3-8**.
 - **Others** includes text files with a .txt extension.
 - Select **Unsupported Files** to reject files other than those mentioned above.
- Rejected Files is **Off** by default.

- 1 Press **⏪**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **⏹**
- 2 Select **2 Super Mail** and press **⏹**
- 3 Select **5 Rejected Files** and press **⏹**
- 4 Enter Security Code
- 5 Choose **1 On** and press **⏹**
To cancel, choose **2 Off** → Press **⏹**
- 6 Select a file type and press **⏹** **Check**
 appears for selected types.
To uncheck, select a type with → Press **⏹** **Check**
- 7 Repeat Step 6 for other types
- 8 Press **⏹**
- 9 Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏹**

Tip Retrieve selections in **Download Rest** (see **P.2-8**) and **Select Contents** (see **P.5-3**) take priority over Rejected Files setting.

Additional Settings

Save & Send Image Automatically save new Sha-mail images to Data Folder before attaching them to messages (see **Basic P.6-36**)

Default: On (save image)

- Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **4 2-Touch Mail** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Save & Send Image** → Press **⏹** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⏹**

Sender Name

Designate a name to appear in the sender field of recipient's mail

Default: Off

Activating

- Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏹** → Select **3 Sender Name** → Press **⏹** → Choose **1 On** → Press **⏹** → Enter name → Press **⏹**

- Save one entry only.
- Use up to 16 single-byte alphanumerics.

Canceling

- Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏹** → Select **3 Sender Name** → Press **⏹** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **⏹**

Tip • If set, Sender Name (i.e. **Harry Bear**) appears before mail address: **Harry Bear**<□□□□□□□□□□@△.vodafone.ne.jp>.
• Sender Name appearance may vary by mail software.

Recipient Name

Set Phone Book entry name to appear in the recipient field of recipient's mail

Default: Off

- Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏹** → Select **4 Recipient Name** → Press **⏹** → Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** → Press **⏹**

Note This function does not work with Secret Mode Phone Book entries.

Tip • If set, Recipient Name (i.e. **Teddy Bear**) appears before mail address: **Teddy Bear**<□□□□□□□□□□@△△△△△△△△.△△.△△>.
• Recipient Name appearance may vary by mail software.

Reply Address

Designate a different mail address for receiving replies

Default: Off

Activating

Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏪** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏪** → Select **3 Reply Address** → Press **⏪** → Choose **1 On** → Press **⏪** → Enter address → Press **⏪**

To open Phone Book, press **☺** (**TEL**) in address entry window.

To change the setting for individual messages, see **P.3-13**.

Canceling

Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏪** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏪** → Select **3 Reply Address** → Press **⏪** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **⏪**

Note

- Replies are sent to the designated address only when the Reply function is used.
- This function may not work depending on the recipient's mail software.

Signature

Save a name, etc. and set it to appear at the end of sent messages

Default: Off

Saving a Signature

Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏪** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏪** → Select **7 Signature** → Press **⏪** → Select **4 Save to List** → Press **⏪** → Select a number → Press **⏪** → Enter a signature → Press **⏪** → Press **☺**

Save up to 2 Signatures (100 single-byte characters each).

Activating/Canceling

Press **⏪** → Select **5 Mail Settings** → Press **⏪** → Select **2 Super Mail** → Press **⏪** → Select **7 Signature** → Press **⏪** → Select **1 Signature 1**, **2 Signature 2** or **3 Off** → Press **⏪**

Sky Mail Settings

PIN Filter

Set PIN to reject incoming messages without the matching PIN. Sender must include the same PIN to send mail to your handset. PIN Setting is effective only when PIN Filter is active.

- PIN Filter cannot be used for Super Mail messages.
- PIN Filter is **Off** for all types by default.

- Press **⏪**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **⏪**
- Select **3 Sky Mail** and press **⏪**
- Select **1 Security** and press **⏪**

4 Select **1 PIN Setting** and press **⏪**

5 Enter a 4-digit PIN and press **⏪**

6 Select **2 PIN Filter** and press **⏪**

7 Select a type and press **⏪**

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 Standard | Standard Sky Mail messages |
| 2 Concatenation | Two or more linked messages |
| 3 Polling | Location Info/Polling requests |
| 4 E-Mail | E-mail messages |

*E-mail under 128 bytes is also rejected.

8 Choose **1 On** and press **⏪**

- Repeat Steps 7 - 8 for other types.

To cancel PIN Filter, choose **2 Off** → Press **⏪**

9 Press **☺** to exit

Note

Senders of rejected mail are not notified.

Address Filter

Activate Address Filter to reject incoming mail from up to 10 numbers (digits only) or addresses saved in Reject List.

- This function does not filter Super Mail.
- Reject List is effective only when Address Filter is active.

Saving to Reject List

1 Press **⏪**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **⏪**

2 Select **3 Sky Mail** and press **⏪**

3 Select **1 Security** and press **⏪**

4 Select **3 Reject List** and press **⏪**

5 Select a number and press **⏪**

- Select ----- to add a new entry.

To edit entry, select an entry → Press **⏪** → Edit → Press **⏪**

To delete entry, select an entry → Press **⏪** → Press **☺** for 1+ seconds → Press **⏪**

6 Enter a phone number or mail address and press ●

- Enter up to 60 single-byte alphanumerics for mail addresses.
- Repeat Steps 5 - 6 to add more numbers/addresses.

7 Press ☰ to exit

Activating Address Filter

Address Filter is **Off** by default.

1 Press ⏪, select 5 Mail Settings and press ●

2 Select 3 Sky Mail and press ●

3 Select 1 Security and press ●

4 Select 4 Address Filter and press ●

5 Choose 1 On and press ●

- To cancel, choose 2 Off → Press ●

Additional Settings

6

Mail Settings

Set Priority

Set priority when sending mail

Default Normal

Press ⏪ → Select 5 Mail Settings → Press ● → Select 3 Sky Mail → Press ● → Select 2 Set Priority → Press ● → Select from 1 Low to 4 By Express → Press ●

- To change priority for individual messages, see P.3-12.



By Express messages are delivered faster for additional fees. Other levels indicate the importance of the message and do not affect delivery speed.

Sender

Save Sender name for Greeting

Press ⏪ → Select 5 Mail Settings → Press ● → Select 3 Sky Mail → Press ● → Select 3 Sender → Press ● → Enter name → Press ●

- To delete Sender mid-entry, press [2/2] for 1+ seconds → Press ●
- Enter up to 12 single-byte alphanumerics (10 single-byte katakana or 3 double-byte characters).
- Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.

Super Mail Group

Creating Mail Groups

Create up to 10 Mail Groups to send Super Mail to multiple recipients at one time.

- Save up to five members per Group.
- Duplicate phone numbers or addresses cannot be saved in the same Group.

1 Press ⏪, select 5 Mail Settings and press ●

2 Select 2 Super Mail and press ●

3 Select 2 Super Mail Group and press ●

Default Group names (スーパーグループ1 to スーパーグループ0) appear.

4 Select a number and press ●

- Deleting Groups/Members: see P.6-12

5 Press ●

6 Enter a Group name and press ●

Group name is set.

- Enter up to 14 single-byte characters.



To return to the default name, delete name entered here and press ●.

7 Select a number and press ●

- Select ----- to add a new entry.

8 Phone Book

1 Select 1 Phone Book and press ●

2 Open an entry and press ●

- To search Phone Book, see [Basic]P.5-12 - 5-13.

Direct Entry

1 Select 2 Mobile Number or 3 E-Mail and press ●

2 Enter recipient's Vodafone handset number or mail address and press ●

- To open Phone Book, perform Steps 1 - 3 on [Basic]P.5-11 → Press ●

9 Repeat Steps 7 - 8 to add members

- To create more Mail Groups, press ⏪ and repeat Steps 4 - 9.

10 Press ☰ to exit

6

Mail Settings

Deleting Groups/Members

1 Press **☰**, select **5 Mail Settings** and press **⏏**

2 Select **2 Super Mail** and press **⏏**

3 Select **2 Super Mail Group** and press **⏏**
• Skip ahead to Step 5 when deleting all Groups.

4 Select a Group

5 **Deleting Mail Groups**

1 Press **☰** **Menu**

■ When there is no member, choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏** (All Groups are deleted.)

2 Select **Delete One Group** or **Delete All** and press **⏏**

Deleting Members

1 Press **⏏**, select a member and press **☰** **Menu**

■ When selecting a number with no entry, choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏** (All members are deleted.)

2 Select **Delete** or **Delete All** and press **⏏**

6 Choose **1 Yes** and press **⏏**

• Repeat Steps 5 - 6 to delete other Groups/members.

7 Press **⏏** to exit

6

Mail Settings

BBS

Save and share BBS messages.

- Send Polling request (see P.3-12) to receive BBS messages (Sky Mail option setting).
- Save and share Location Info or Auto Reply message (see P.6-2).

BBS

Share messages & Location Info

Default Off

Activating BBS

Press **☰** → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press **⏏** → Select **6 BBS** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Settings** → Press **⏏** → Choose **1 On** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Message**, **2 Location Info** or **3 Link to Auto Reply** → Press **⏏**

■ **Enter Code** appears for **2 Location Info**. Enter Security Code → Choose **1 Yes** → Press **⏏**

- Select **3 Link to Auto Reply** to share Auto Reply message (see P.6-2).

Canceling BBS

Press **☰** → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press **⏏** → Select **6 BBS** → Press **⏏** → Select **1 Settings** → Press **⏏** → Choose **2 Off** → Press **⏏**

- Saved messages remain even after BBS is canceled. Reactivate BBS to use.
- Set PIN to restrict message access (see P.6-8).

Saving Messages

Save messages & Location Info

Saving Messages

Press **☰** → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press **⏏** → Select **6 BBS** → Press **⏏** → Select **2 New Message** → Press **⏏** → Enter message → Press **⏏**

■ To delete the message mid-entry, press **⏏** for 1+ seconds → Press **⏏**

- Activate BBS to share the message.
- **掲示板データなし** appears by default.
- Enter up to 128 single-byte alphanumeric (126 single-byte katakana or 61 double-byte characters).
 - Using both single and double-byte characters may reduce character entry limit.

Saving Location Info

Press **☰** → Select **0 Mail Box** → Press **⏏** → Select **6 BBS** → Press **⏏** → Select **3 Location Info** → Press **⏏** → Enter Security Code → The latest information appears → Press **⏏** **Back**

- To update opened Location Info, press **☰** **Update** → Press **⏏**
- Activate BBS to share the message.

6

Mail Settings

Polling

■ When BBS is accessed, handset receives a Polling message.

To open Polling messages, press **⏪** → Select **Ⓜ Mail Box** → Press **Ⓞ** →
Select **Ⓜ Inbox** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select a message with **Ⓜ** or **Ⓜ** → Press **Ⓞ**

- P Sky Mail appears when messages with **Ⓜ** are opened.

Reset & Changing Center Address

Reset

Reset Mail settings

Refer to P.16-2 for the settings affected by Reset

Press **⏪** → Select **Ⓜ Mail Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Ⓜ Reset** →
Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Security Code → Select **Ⓜ Reset** → Press **Ⓞ** →
Select **Ⓜ OK** or **Ⓜ Cancel** → Press **Ⓞ**

Deleting Sent & Received Messages

Delete mail messages at one time

Press **⏪** → Select **Ⓜ Mail Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Ⓜ Reset** →
Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Security Code → Select **Ⓜ Delete All** → Press **Ⓞ** →
Select **Ⓜ Select All** or **Ⓜ Read/Sent Only** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Ⓜ OK**
or **Ⓜ Cancel** → Press **Ⓞ**

- Messages are deleted as follows:

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Ⓜ Select All | Delete all Inbox, Sent and Outbox messages |
| Ⓜ Read/Sent Only | Delete all unprotected read Inbox and Sent messages |

Center Address

Set Mail Center Address

Default Short Message: ¥7033, Data Access: ¥7233000, Super Mail Line: ¥7043

Press **⏪** → Select **Ⓜ Mail Settings** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Ⓜ Center Address** → Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Security Code → Select from **Ⓜ Short Message** to **Ⓜ Super Mail Line** → Press **Ⓞ** → Enter Center Address → Press **Ⓞ**

Note

Do not change Center Address unless instructed to do so. Access to the service will be disabled.

Web

BROWSER BY

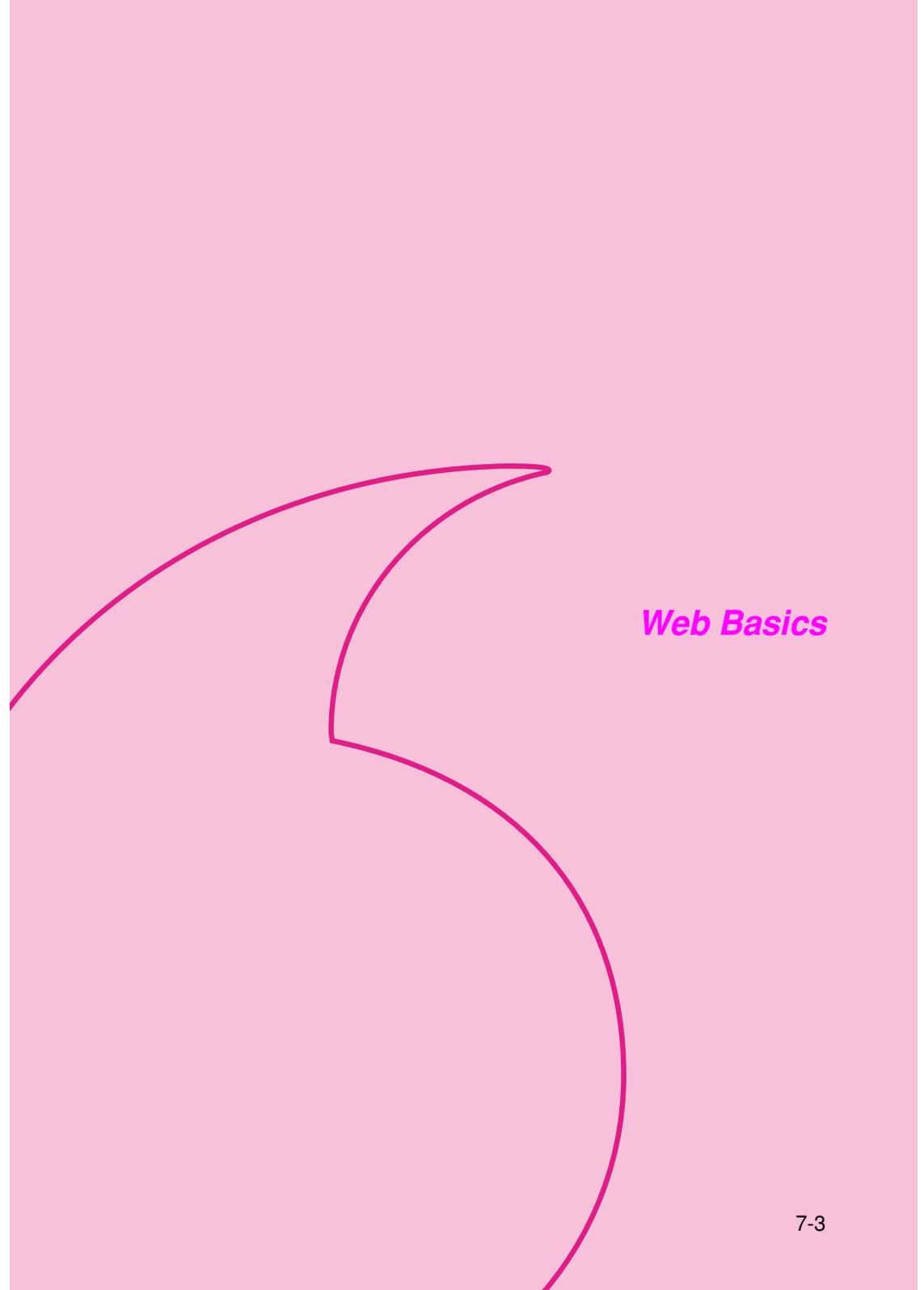


OPENWAVE



Browser software copyright © 2004 Openwave Systems Inc.
All rights reserved.

MEMO



Web Basics

Getting Started

Use Web (Vodafone Web) to access the Mobile Internet directly from handset. Browse for image or sound files as well as information.

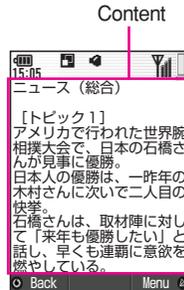
- An additional contract is required to use Web service.
- Address questions about Vodafone Web to Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).

Web Content

Web Info Content

Sample Web information page:

- Press **Back** to see the previous page. From that page, press **Menu** then **Next** to return to the initial page.
- For details, see P.7-8 "Basic Operations."



Note Standby returns after 20 minutes of inactivity.

Secure Information (SSL)

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (see P.9-5).

Disclaimer

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the information. Opening secure information constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. Vodafone, VeriSign Japan, Baltimore Technologies Japan and Entrust Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Saving Information

Web information is saved in Cache Memory and Message Folder. Cache Memory and Message Folder contents remain even after exiting Web or turning handset power off.

Cache Memory

Web information and Vodafone Web Menus are saved temporarily in Cache Memory. When full, oldest items are automatically deleted to make space for new ones. Previously opened information loads from Cache Memory.

Tip Some information may have an expiry date and be deleted from Cache Memory upon expiry.

Message Folder

Message Folder contents remain until deleted manually. Approximately 3,000 KB is shared between Inbox (Mail), Favorites or Message Folder (Web), and Saved Information (Station).

- Some types of information cannot be saved to Message Folder.
- To use Memory Card Message Folder, see **Basic P.11-6**.
- Memory Status: see P.1-5

Memory Status

■ Press **Function** → Press **Settings 1** → Press **Memory** → Press **Memory Usage** → Press **Memory Usage**

Using Web

Opening Vodafone Web Menu

Access Mobile Internet sites by selecting a topic from Vodafone Web Menu. Perform Network Setup before using Web (see P.1-4).

- 1 Press , select  Vodafone Web and press .**
Vodafone Web Menu opens.
 - Vodafone Web Menu content is subject to change.
- 2 Highlight a menu item and press .**
 - Handset remains connected to the Network even if it is closed (clamshell closed).
 - To disconnect, press .
- 3 Repeat Step 2 to open additional links**
 - Basic Operations: see P.7-8
- 4 Press  to exit Web**
 - To exit fee-based information, press  → Choose  → Press .

Using Log

- While using Web, use Log to return to a page previously viewed in the current session:
From any page, press  Menu → Press  Log → Select a title → Press .
 - Up to 20 log entries are saved. When Log memory is full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.
 - The log is cleared when Web access ends.

Opening Secure Information

- When accessing SSL/TLS encrypted information, **High Security Protected** appears. Select  OK → Press .
-  appears.
- To disable warning messages, see P.9-5.

When Authentication is Required

- Information may require authentication for access. If requested, enter user ID or password and press .

Tip

- Information and Vodafone Web Menus saved in Cache Memory may open without connecting to the Network.
- While information appears, press  for 1+ seconds to toggle Manner Mode **On** and **Off**.

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access Mobile Internet sites. Perform Network Setup before using Web (see P.1-4).

- 1 Press , select  Internet and press .**
- 2 Select  New and press .**
- 3 Enter URL**
 - To copy from Phone Book, press  Menu → Press  TEL → Open a Phone Book entry (see Steps 1 - 3 on [Basic P.5-11](#)) → Select an item → Press  twice
 - To read from barcode, press  Menu → Press  Scan → Select  Scan Code → Press  → Perform Steps 2 - 4 on [Basic P.15-33](#) → Press .
 - To use Text Scanner, press  Menu → Press  Scan → Select  Text Scanner → Press  → Perform Steps 2 - 6 on [Basic P.15-40](#)
- 4 Press .**
- 5 Select  Send and press .**
Handset connects to the Network.
 - To edit URL, select  Edit → Press  → Edit URL → Press  → Proceed to Step 5
- 6 Press  to exit**

Using Internet from Web Info

- Open information and press  Menu → Select **Internet** → Press  → Perform Steps 2 - 6
 - Phone Book is not available.

Note

Some sites may not be accessed. Images, layouts, etc. may not appear the same as on PCs.

Using URL Log

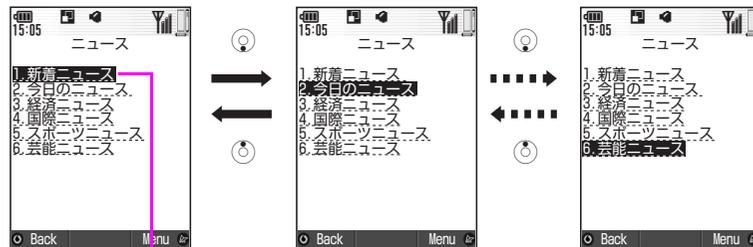
Access Mobile Internet sites using previously entered URLs. Up to 20 URLs are saved. When Log memory is full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

- 1 Press **○**, select **3** *Internet* and press **○**
- 2 Select **2** *Access Log List* and press **○**
 - Shortcut: Select a URL and press **ⓧ** *Send*.
- 3 Select a URL and press **○**
- 4 Select **1** *Send* and press **○**
 - To edit URL, select **2** *Edit* → Press **○** → Edit URL → Press **○**
 - To delete Log, select **3** *Delete* → Press **○** → Choose **1** *Yes* → Press **○**

Basic Operations

Moving Cursor

Move cursor to select items. Selectable items are underlined with a dotted line. Use **○** to scroll through items.

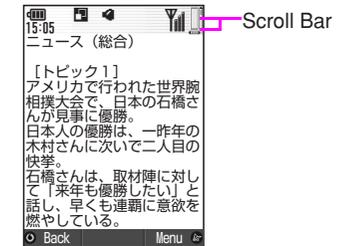


Cursor

Use **○** to move left and right when multiple items are listed in one row. Cursor does not appear when there are no selectable items.

Scrolling Pages

Scroll bar appears at the top. Orange bars indicate current position. Use **○** to scroll. Orange bars slide accordingly.



Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.

- Text Entry Field**
 - Highlight and press **○**. Text entry window opens. Enter text and press **○**.
- Check-box**
 - Highlight (check-box) and press **○**. The box changes to , indicating that the item is selected.
 - In addition to , may also appear as selection indicators.
- Menu List**
 - Highlight the field and press **○** to select an item.
- Command Button**
 - Use to send, reset, etc.
 - Highlight and press **○** to execute the indicated command.

Input Memory

- Entered text is saved to Input Memory, except Security Code and entries made in secure sites. Use saved text in other applications.
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Using Input Memory

- In a text entry window, press **ⓧ** *Menu* → Select **2** *Saved Information* → Press **○** → Select **2** *Input Memory* → Press **○** → Select an entry → Press **○**

Home

Designate a site as Home. Select **Home** from Web menu or while viewing other information to open site. Sharp's **Space Town** Mobile Internet site is set by default.

Designating

- 1 Open page to designate
- 2 Press **Menu**
 - A page can only be designated as Home when **Home** appears.
- 3 Select **Home** and press
- 4 Select **Home Setting** and press
- 5 **Designating Current Information**
 - 1 Select **Current Page** and press
 - Page can only be designated when **Current Page** appears.

Specifying URL

- 1 Select **Enter Address** and press
- 2 Enter URL and press

Resetting

- 1 Select **Home Reset** and press
- Home Setting returns to default.

Accessing

- 1 Press , select **Home** and press

To Jump to Home from Other Information

- Press **Menu** → Select **Home** → Press → Select **Move to Home** → Press

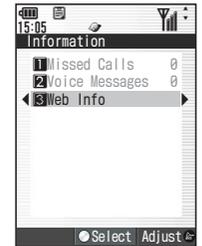
Auto Delivery Service

Register with Auto Delivery Service to receive update notifications and other information on handset. Use the notification to access the information provider or Mobile Internet sites to download more information. Register from Mobile Internet sites that support Auto Delivery Service.

Received Information

Delivered information is automatically saved to Message Folder.

- 1 When new information arrives, animation plays and Information Menu opens
 - appears.
- 2 Select **Web Info** and press
- 3 Select a title and press
 - Information appears (and is deleted from Unread Messages).
 - To check another unread information, press → Select a title → Press



Information Menu

Ring Tone Volume

- While handset is ringing, press (up) or (down).
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see [Basic P.8-2](#)) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level (see [Basic P.3-3](#)).

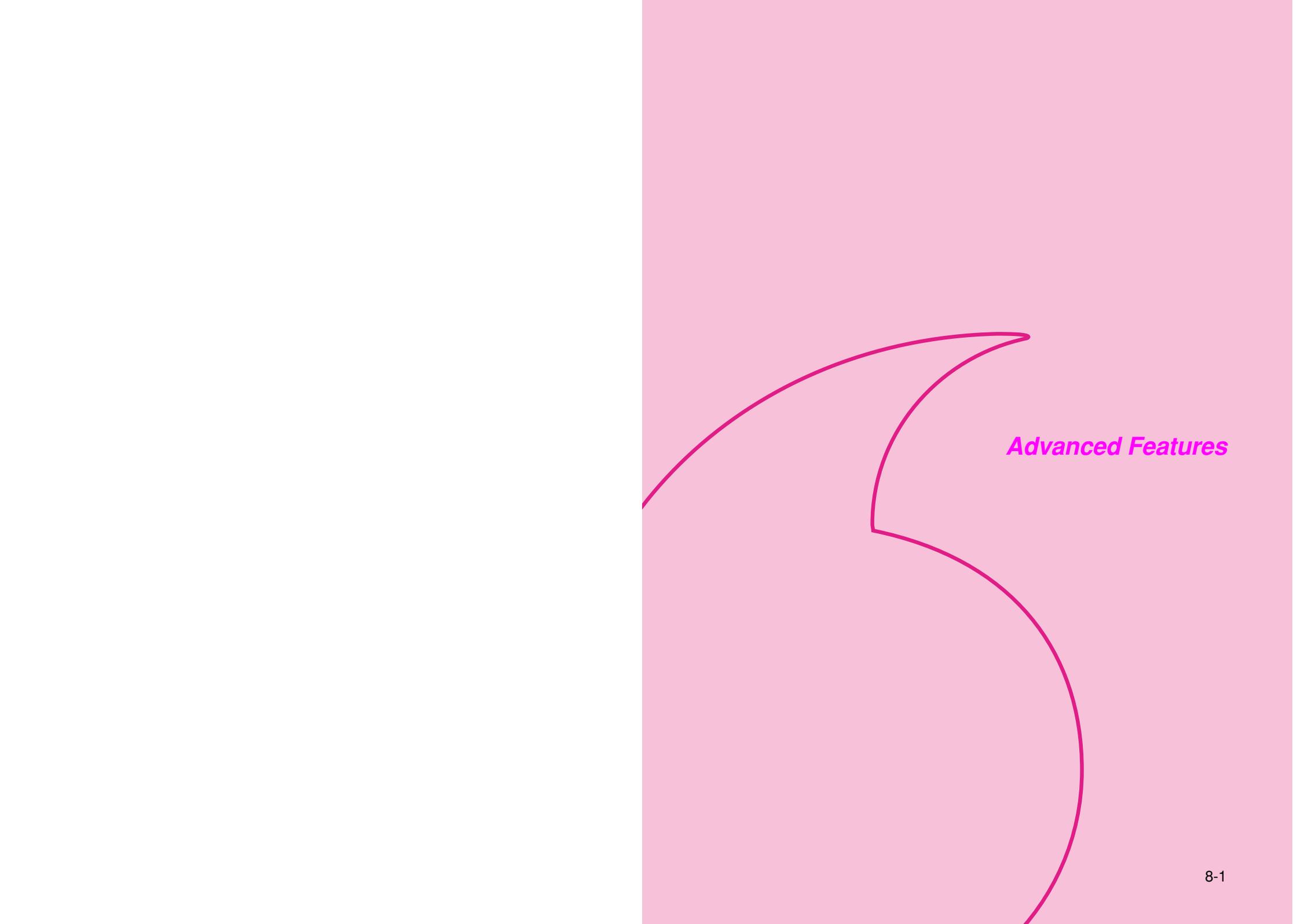
Quick Silent

- Press to instantly mute incoming information tone for that information only.

In Standby

- Press → Select **Unread Messages** → Press → Select a title → Press
 - Once read, information appears in Message Folder (see [P.8-3](#)).

Tip If information is received during an operation, Information Menu may not open.



Advanced Features

Favorites, Message Folder & Bookmarks

Save frequently used information/URLs to Favorites, Message Folder or Bookmarks.

| Function | Description | Storage Media | Moving Title |
|-----------------------|---|---------------------|--------------|
| Favorites | Save Mobile Internet site content. Handset does not connect to the Network to open saved information. | Handset | Available |
| Message Folder | Save links to Mobile Internet sites. Handset connects to the Network to access the site. | Handset/Memory Card | N/A |
| Bookmarks | Save links to Mobile Internet sites. Handset connects to the Network to access the site. | Handset/Memory Card | N/A |

- Save information of some interest to Message Folder and save frequently used information to Favorites.
- Sharp's **Space Town** Mobile Internet site (Japanese Only) is bookmarked by default. Visit **Space Town** for various downloads such as Wallpapers, games and Dictionary files.

Saving Information & URLs

- Save up to 30 links in Bookmarks.
- For Favorites and Message Folder memory, see P.16-11.

1 Open information

2 Press **Menu**

- Information can only be saved when **Save** appears.

3 Select **Save** and press

- Available destinations appear.

4 Select **1 Favorites**, **2 Message Folder** or **3 Bookmarks** and press

5 Enter or edit title and press

- For Favorites, omit the next step.
- To proceed without changing the title, press . (Title may not appear for Favorites.)

6 Select **1 Handset** or **2 Memory Card** and press



Data may be partially altered when:

- Bookmarks are transferred between handset and Memory Card
- Bookmarks (vFile) in Data Folder are transferred to handset or Memory Card

Opening Saved Info & Links

1 Press

2 **Favorites & Message Folder**

1 Select **3 Favorites** or **7 Message Folder** and press

- To rearrange the Favorites list, select a title → Press  **Menu** → Select **Move** → Press  → Use  to move the title → Press 
- To switch to Memory Card Message folder, press  **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press 

2 Select a title and press

- To remove information from Favorites, press  **Menu** → Select **Save** → Press  → Select **1 Cancel Favorite** → Press 
 - Information deleted from Favorites appears in Message Folder.

Bookmarks

1 Select **4 Bookmarks** and press

- To switch to Memory Card, press  **Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press 

2 Select a title and press **Send**

Scroll Unit (for Message Folder)

- Press  → Select **7 Message Folder** → Press  → Press  **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press  → Select a unit → Press 

Using Bookmarks from Web Info

- Press  **Menu** → Select **Bookmarks** → Press  → Select a title → Press  **Send**

Editing & Deleting

Editing Titles

1 Press

2 **Favorites & Message Folder**

1 Select **3 Favorites** or **7 Message Folder** and press

- 2 Select a title and press  **Menu**
- 3 Select **Change Title** and press 

Bookmarks

1 Select **4 Bookmarks** and press

- 2 Select a title and press 
- 3 Select **Edit** and press 

3 Edit title and press

Deleting Entries

- 1 Press **Ⓞ**
- 2 **Favorites & Message Folder**
 - 1 Select **3 Favorites** or **7 Message Folder** and press **Ⓞ**
 - 2 Select a title and press **↵ Menu**
 - Select any title when deleting all.
- 3 Select **Delete** or **Delete All** and press **Ⓞ**
 - To delete all, enter Security Code.
- 4 Choose **1 Yes** and press **Ⓞ**

Bookmarks

- 1 Select **4 Bookmarks** and press **Ⓞ**
- 2 Select a title and press **Ⓞ**
 - Select any title when deleting all.

Using Linked Info

Use numbers, addresses or URLs (<http://> or <https://>) to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites.

- Available only when numbers, addresses and URLs are underlined with a dotted line.
- Words may be substituted for the numbers, addresses and URLs.

- 1 Open information containing a phone number, mail address or URL
- 2 **Phone Numbers**

- 1 Highlight a number and press **Ⓞ**
- 2 Select **Dial** and press **Ⓞ**
 - The number is dialed.

Mail Addresses

- 1 Highlight an address and press **Ⓞ**
- 2 Select **Send** and press **Ⓞ**
- 3 Select **1 Send Super Mail** or **2 Send Sky Mail** and press **Ⓞ**
 - Creating & Sending a Message: see P.3-3

URLs

- 1 Highlight a URL and press **Ⓞ**
 - Handset connects to the Network.
 - **High Security Protected** appears for URLs starting with <https://>.
To continue, select **1 OK** and press **Ⓞ**.

Saving to Phone Book

- To save as new entry, open information and follow these steps.
Select a phone number or mail address → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Save** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **1 New Entry** → Press **Ⓞ** → See [Basic P.5-4 - 5-5](#) for more about Phone Book
- To save as new item, open information and follow these steps.
Select a phone number or mail address → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **Save** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select **2 New Item** → Press **Ⓞ** → Select an entry (see [Basic P.5-13](#)) → Press **Ⓞ** → See [Basic P.5-4 - 5-5](#) for more about Phone Book

Files within Information

Saving to Data Folder

Download and save image/sound/Dictionary files, vFiles, etc. from Mobile Internet sites to Data Folder. Some files may not be saved to Data Folder.

- 1 Open information
- 2 Select a file and press **Ⓞ**
 - Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.
- 3 Select **To Data Folder** and press **Ⓞ**
 - Title entry window opens. Edit title (file name) as necessary.
- 4 Press **Ⓞ**
 - To select a folder, see [Basic P.12-6](#).
 - To switch to Memory Card, press **↵ Menu** → Select **Memory Card** → Press **Ⓞ**
- 5 Press **Ⓞ**
 - When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic P.12-45](#)).



Linked Images

- From Menu, select **1 To Link Address** and press **Ⓞ** to jump to the linked site.

Wallpaper & Display Images

Save images as Wallpaper or as Display Images to use them for Power On/Off, Alarm or incoming calls.

- Some images may be too large to use as Wallpaper or Display Images.
- Image files saved as Wallpaper or Display Images are not saved to Data Folder.

1 Open information

2 Select an image and press ●

- Selected image is outlined.
- Images can only be used when **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** appears.



3 Wallpaper

1 Select **Save As Wallpaper** and press ●

The following display options appear.

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Centered | Image appears at the center in its original size |
| Tile | Duplicates of the image are arranged like tiles over Display |
| Full Screen | Image is enlarged to cover the full display area |
| Enlarge Display | Image is enlarged until the width or height reaches the edges of Display |

- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **戻る** to return.
- For E-Animation (NEVA files) and images larger than Display, the image appears → Press ● (Omit the next steps.)

2 Select an option and press ●

3 Press ●

- Existing image is replaced.

Display Images

1 Select **To Display Images** and press ●

- E-Animation (NEVA files) and MNG files cannot be used for **Incoming Call** and **Alarm**.
- Maximum image size:

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Power On | W 240 x H 260 dots | Incoming Call | W 240 x H 80 dots |
| Power Off | W 240 x H 260 dots | Alarm | W 240 x H 100 dots |

- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **戻る** to return.

2 Select an item and press ●

Image appears.

- For E-Animation (NEVA files), press ●. (Omit the next step.)

3 Use **Touch** to specify display area and press ●

- Depending on size or type, display area cannot be specified for some images.
- Existing image is replaced.

Playing Sound Files

1 Open information

2 Select a sound file and press ●

3 Select **Play** and press ●

The sound plays.

- Press **Back** to stop playback.
- To adjust volume, press **Up** (up) or **Down** (down) during playback.
- To change tone or loudness, select **Tone** or **Adjust Loudness** → Press ● (See **Basic P.8-13 - 8-14** for more.)
- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **戻る** to return.

Linked Sounds

- From Menu, select **To Link Address** and press ● to jump to the linked site.

Tip Some sound files play automatically. Press **文字** to stop.

Other Files

Dictionary Files

Refer to **Basic P.4-15** for the handling of Dictionary files.

1 Open information

2 Select a file and press ●

- **D** indicates Dictionary files.

3 Select **Show** and press ●

Title and version appear.

- To download and activate dictionary, select **Save Dictionary** → Press ● → Select a number → Press ●
 - To replace the current dictionary, choose **Yes** → Press ●
- To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●
 - Press **戻る** to return.

vFiles

Refer to [Basic](#)P.12-36 for the handling of vFiles.

1 Open information

2 Select a vFile and press ●

- Contents can only be viewed when **Show** appears.

3 Select **Show** and press ●

Contents appear.

■ To import vFiles, see Step 2 on [Basic](#)P.12-39.

■ To open properties, select **Property** → Press ●

■ Press [⏪](#) to return.

Downloading Chaku-Uta

Download and save Chaku-Uta from Mobile Internet sites to Data Folder.

- Download files of up to 200 KB each.
- Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

1 Open information

2 Select a Chaku-Uta file and press ●

Confirmation appears.

■ When a V-Application is paused (⏸), choose **Yes** → Press ●

■ When playing music, choose **Yes** → Press ●

3 Press ● **Yes**

When download is complete, Audio Menu opens.

■ To cancel download, press [⏪](#) **No**.

4 Select [2](#) **Handset** or [3](#) **Memory Card** and press ●

- Some files cannot be saved.

■ To play the song, select **Play** → Press ●

■ To stop playback, press ●

■ To open properties, select [4](#) **Property** → Press ●

■ Press ● **Back** to return.

5 Enter or edit title (file name) and press ●

- To proceed without changing the title, press ●

■ To select a folder, see [Basic](#)P.12-6.

6 Press ●

- When memory is full, delete files and try again (see [Basic](#)P.12-45).



Web Settings

Sub Menu Settings

Set Display Size

Change font and image size

Default Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Set Display Size** → Press → Select **1 Font Size** or **2 Image Size** → Press → Select a size → Press

Note

- Some images always appear at 100% depending on the original size.
- Select **100%** if information does not appear properly at **200%**.

Tip

- Press to toggle image size between 200% and 100%. (appears for 100% and for 200%.)
- To change Font Size from Font Settings menu, see [Basic P.7-7](#).

Search this Page

Search within, or jump to the beginning or end of information

New Search

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Search this Page** → Press → Select **1 Search** → Press → Enter text to search → Press

- Only the first text is highlighted if more than one is found.

To Search More by Same Text

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Search this Page** → Press → Select **2 Search Next** → Press

- Text is deleted upon exiting Web.

To Jump to the Beginning or End of Information

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Search this Page** → Press → Select **Top Jump** or **Bottom Jump** → Press

Scroll Unit (for Web Info)

Select from three scroll units

Default Line

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Scroll Unit** → Press → Select from **1 Full Screen** to **3 Line** → Press

Copy

Copy text

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Copy** → Press → Perform Steps 3 - 4 in "Copy/Cut & Paste" on [Basic P.4-17](#)

- Text can only be copied when **Copy** appears.

Playback Volume

Adjust volume for sound playback

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Playback Volume** → Press → Adjust level → Press

- Alternatively, use during playback.
- When the volume level is specified by information providers, you cannot increase the volume above the specified level.
- In Manner Mode (see [Basic P.3-3](#)), volume level is set in Manner Settings (see [Basic P.3-5](#)).

Character Encoding

Change encoding when text appears distorted

Default Auto Recognition

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Character Encoding** → Press → Select from **1 Auto Recognition** to **5 UTF-8** → Press

- Use Auto Recognition whenever possible.
- Character encoding cannot be changed for information opened from Message Folder or Favorites.
- The setting applies to the current information only.

Update

Update information

Mobile Internet Site Info

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Update** → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press

Favorites & Message Folder Info

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Update** → Press → Select from **1 Display Only** to **3 Cancel** → Press

- Select **1 Display Only** to open updated information without overwriting the memory. Select **2 Overwrite** to overwrite the memory.

Reacquire

Reload image or sound files when they did not appear due to Text Only mode setting or weak signal

Open information and select an icon for image or sound file → Press → Select **Reacquire** → Press

- Image and sound files cannot be reloaded for information opened from Message Folder or Favorites.

Text Memo

Copy text and save to Text Memo (see [Basic P.4-18](#))

Open information and press **Menu** → Select **Save** → Press → Select **Text Memo** → Press → Use to move cursor to the first character → Press → Use to specify text → Press → Choose **1 Yes** → Press

- To save to Memory Card, press after specifying text.
 - Press again to switch back to handset.
- Text can only be saved when **Text Memo** appears.

Property

Open information details

Open information and press **⏏** **Menu** → **Select Property** → **Press** **⏏**

Press **⏏** again to return to information.

Show Certification

Open Server Certification for SSL/TLS encrypted information

Open information with SSL/TLS encryption and press **⏏** **Menu** →
Select Show Certification → **Press** **⏏** → **Select an authority** → **Press** **⏏**

Press **⏏** twice to return to information.

Uploading Files

Upload images or other files in Data Folder to the Center via Mobile Internet sites

Open site and select **File** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select an image file (see Basic P.12-8)** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select Send** → **Press** **⏏**

- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
- Files are uploadable only via information that supports uploads.
- File names cannot be entered in title field.
- Copy protected files cannot be selected.

Basic Settings

Text Only

Select whether to download images and sounds on Mobile Internet sites automatically or to open text information only

Default: Images and sounds retrieved

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **1 Text Only**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Select an item not to retrieve** (**Acquire Image** or
 Acquire Music) → **Press** **⏏** (appears) → **Press** **⏏** **Set**

- Select an item with and press **⏏** to download (appears).

Location Info

Choose whether or not to send your Location Info upon request

Default: Confirm User

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **5 Location Info**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter Security Code** → **Select from** **1 Confirm User**
 to **3 Unsent** → **Press** **⏏**

- Handset automatically acquires current Location Info via Station service.
- Select **1 Confirm User** to open confirmation each time before sending Location Info.

Link LimiterDisable Mobile Internet access via **Internet**Default: Off, Link Limiter Code: 9999**Activating/Canceling**

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **6 Link Limiter**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter Link Limiter Code (4 digits)** → **Choose**
1 On or **2 Off** → **Press** **⏏**

- When Link Limiter is active, links within mail messages and scan results are also disabled.

Changing Link Limiter Code

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **6 Link Limiter**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter Link Limiter Code (4 digits)** → **Select** **3 Change Code**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter new code (4 digits)** → **Enter the same code again**

Clear DNS Cache

Clear Vodafone live! Server addresses stored on handset

Index Menu

Vodafone live! → Network Settings → Clear DNS Cache

Enter Security Code → **Select** **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → **Press** **⏏**

Security

Warning Message

Show or hide warning messages before entering and exiting SSL/TLS encrypted information

Default: On

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **4 Security**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter Security Code** → **Select** **1 Warning Message**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Choose** **1 On** or **2 Off** → **Press** **⏏**

Show User IDInformation may require User ID
Select whether or not to send User ID upon requestDefault: Off

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **4 Security**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter Security Code** → **Select** **2 Show User ID**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Choose** **1 On** or **2 Off** → **Press** **⏏**

- A unique User ID is assigned to each handset. It is different from the phone number.
- Show User ID turns **On** automatically after Network Setup (see P.1-4).

Certification

Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities (SSL/TLS Certificates) saved on handset

Press **⏏** → **Select** **3 Web Settings** → **Press** **⏏** → **Select** **4 Security**
 → **Press** **⏏** → **Enter Security Code** → **Select** **3 Certification** → **Press**
⏏ → **Select an authority** → **Press** **⏏**

To read the rest of the Certificate details, press **⏏** (press **⏏** to scroll up).

Reset & Changing Center Address

Web Reset

Reset Web settings
Refer to P.16-3 for the settings affected by Reset

Press **⏪** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Web Reset** → Press **⏹** → Enter Security Code → Select **1 Reset** → Press **⏹** → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **⏹**

Clear Memory

Delete all information acquired from Mobile Internet sites

Press **⏪** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Web Reset** → Press **⏹** → Enter Security Code → Select **2 Clear Memory** → Press **⏹** → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **⏹**

Tip

- All files in the following locations will be deleted:
 - Cache
 - Favorites
 - Internet (URL log)
 - Message Folder (including unread messages)
- Bookmarks return to default (only *Space Town* is saved).

Clear Web Cache

Clear data in cache memory (see P.7-5)

Press **⏪** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **2 Web Reset** → Press **⏹** → Enter Security Code → Select **3 Clear Web Cache** → Press **⏹** → Select **1 OK** or **2 Cancel** → Press **⏹**

Center Address

Set Web Center Address

Default: *7223000

Press **⏪** → Select **3 Web Settings** → Press **⏹** → Select **3 Center Address** → Press **⏹** → Enter Security Code → Enter Center Address → Press **⏹**

Note

Do not change Center Address unless instructed to do so. Access to the service will be disabled.

V-Applications

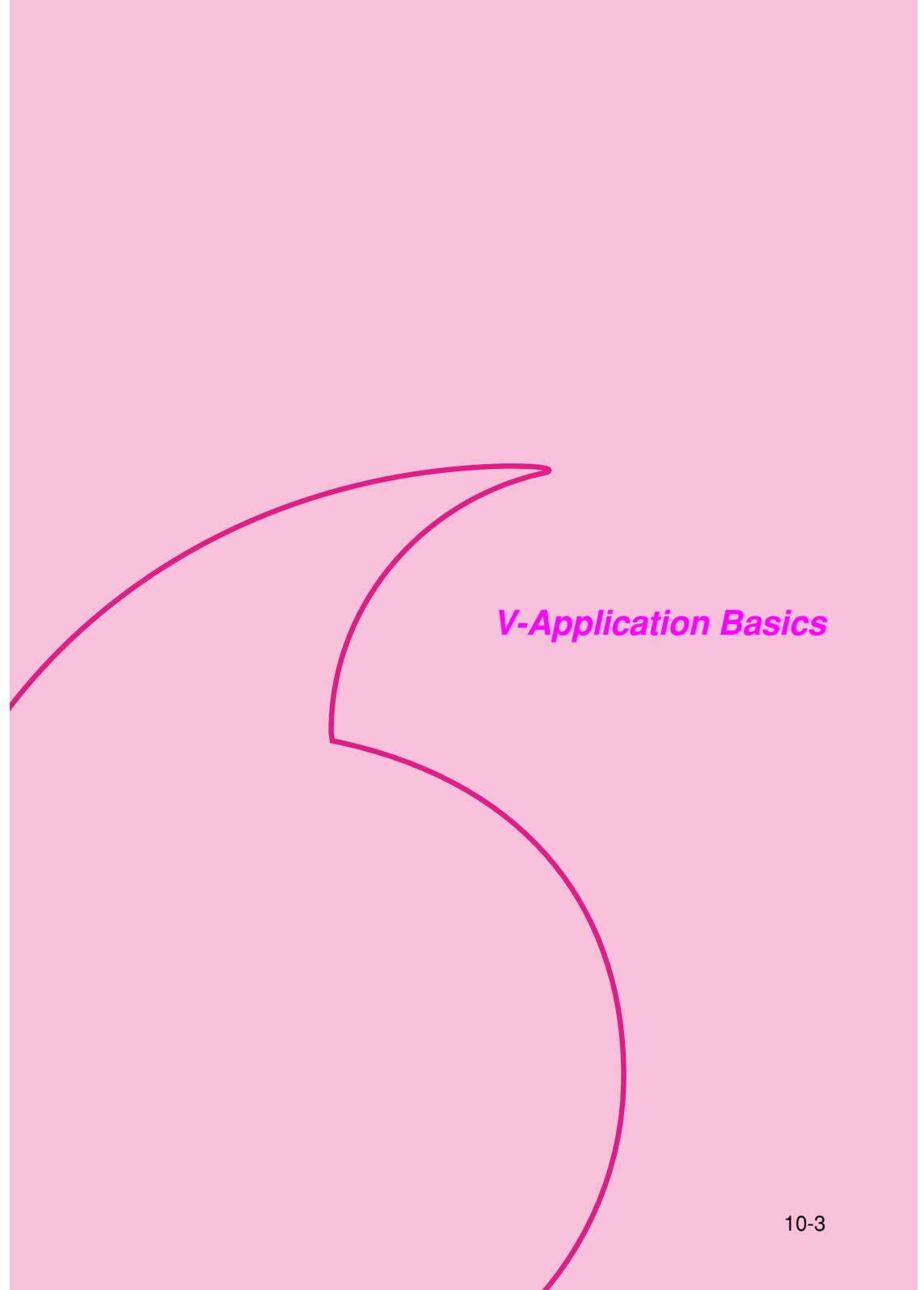


This product is equipped with JBlend designed to accelerate the performance of Java Application.

Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 1997-2005 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

MEMO



V-Application Basics

Getting Started

Download V-Applications, including games and 3D graphics.
Separate subscriptions are required for V-Applications downloaded via Web.

V-Appli Library

Open V-Appli Library to access saved V-Applications.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ➔ *V-Appli*

1 Select **V-Appli Library** and press **Enter**



Preloaded V-Applications

V501SH contains seven default V-Applications: **ピボサルバナナ体験版**, **野球フリフリ体験版**, **振るゴルフ体験版**, **HOD体験版**, **ケータイポストベットプラス**, **V-kara player 2** and **カスタムスクリーンギャラリー**.
涙そうそう is saved in Data Folder (Melodies) for **V-kara player 2**.

| Title | Artist Name | Lyricist | Composer | On Display |
|-----------|----------------|----------------|----------|------------|
| Nada Soso | Rimi Natsukawa | Ryoko Moriyama | BEGIN | 涙そうそう |

License: T-0560014

Network V-Applications

Network V-Applications require a network connection. Before downloading an application, check its properties for network connection information (see **P.10-6**).

- Before using a Network V-Application, a message appears indicating that a network connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.12-3**.
- For connection fees, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see **P.16-16**).

Remote Control

Use handset to remotely control a TV, VCR, etc. (A compatible V-Application is required.)

- appears for compatible V-Applications.
- Align infrared port (right) with infrared port of target device.
- Maximum usage distance is approximately 3 meters (with a fully charged battery).
- Remote control operation may not be possible depending on ambient light level, obstacles, etc.



Keitai Karaoke V-kara

Enjoy Karaoke singing with a scoring system using a compatible V-Application such as the preloaded **V-kara player 2**.

Note

- Howling may occur depending on the output volume. Keep handset away from a TV or decrease microphone/playback volume.
- Use headphones with Analog Conversion Cable or LCD Remote/Mic to play music without bothering others.

Downloading V-Applications

- Some V-Applications can be downloaded to Memory Cards.
- Make sure signal is strong.

1 Open a Mobile Internet site offering V-Applications

2 Select a V-Application and press **Enter**

After **Analyzing V-Appli Data...**, properties (see **P.10-6**) appear.

When a V-Application is paused () , choose **Yes** ➔ Press **Enter**

3 Press **Enter** **Yes**

Download starts.

- Download may take time.
- To return to the site, press **Back** **No**.

4 V-Application is automatically saved after download (see sample screen shot shown to the right)

- When you download a new version of V-Application set for Standby, a confirmation appears and Standby V-Application may be canceled.

5 Press **Enter** **Yes**

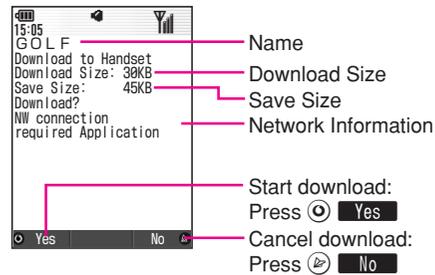
V-Appli Library opens.

- To return to the site, press **Back** **No**.
- Starting V-Applications: see **P.10-6**



Properties

V-Application properties appear before download. Check information and start.



Starting V-Applications

- V-Applications may not operate properly if Analog Conversion Cable is connected.
- Operate V-Applications with handset open (clamshell open).

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *V-Appli*

1 Select **V-Appli Library** and press **[Enter]**

Last used V-Application appears first in the list (except for V-Application started from Standby).

- When a V-Application is paused (⏸), choose **[1] Yes** ► Press **[Enter]**
- To switch to Memory Card, press **[Left]** **Menu** ► Select **Memory Card** ► Press **[Enter]**

2 Select a V-Application and press **[Enter]**

V-Application starts (✔ appears).

- For operations, refer to the source Mobile Internet site, etc.
- If the V-Application cannot be used, V-Appli Library returns.
- For V-Applications compatible with Karaoke, a confirmation appears. Press **[Enter]** to start the V-Application.
- When the V-Application can be set for Standby, choose **[1] Yes** or **[2] No** ► Press **[Enter]**
 - When **[1] Yes** is selected with Auto Reply activated, a confirmation to cancel Auto Reply appears. Choose **[1] Yes** and press **[Enter]** to start the V-Application.

Starting Network V-Applications

- After Step 2 on P.10-6, select **[1] Connect** or **[2] Stay Off-line** ► Press **[Enter]** ► **V-Application starts**
 - When **[1] Connect** is selected in Off-Line Mode (see **Basic P.3-6**), **Establish Network Connection?** appears. Choose **[1] Yes** and press **[Enter]** to start the V-Application.
- Some Network V-Applications require Security Level setting (see P.12-3).

Opening Java™ License Information

- Press **[Enter]** ► Select **Vodafone live!** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[4] V-Appli** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[2] V-Appli Settings** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[3] Other Settings** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[3] Copyright** ► Press **[Enter]**

Memory Status

- Press **[Enter]** ► Select **Functions** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[3] Settings 1** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[1] Memory** ► Press **[Enter]** ► Select **[3] File Cabinet** ► Press **[Enter]**

- Tip**
- When receiving calls, mail, etc., a running V-Application pauses. To set it to remain active, see P.12-2.
 - While using a V-Application, press **[*]** for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Mode.

V-Applications on Memory Card

Synchronize Memory Cards used on other Vodafone handsets, PCs and other devices to update V-Appli Library.

- Perform Network Setup before using Web (see P.1-4).
- Update V-Appli Library to avoid application malfunction.
- It may take some time to update V-Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *V-Appli* ► *V-Appli Settings* ► *Synchronize*

1 Choose **[1] Yes** and press **[Enter]**

- Note** V-Applications saved to Memory Cards from your V501SH are exclusively for use on your handset or a newly purchased Vodafone handset.

Exit, Pause & Resume

Exiting or Pausing V-Applications

1 Press while using a V-Application

 In Viewer position, press  for 1+ seconds.

2 *Exiting V-Application*

1 Select *End* and press

V-Appli Library returns ( disappears).

Pausing V-Application

1 Select *Pause* and press

Standby returns ( appears).

• V-Application resumes from where it was paused.

Resuming V-Applications

1 While a V-Application is paused, press in Standby.

•  appears while a V-Application is paused.

2 Select *Resume* and press

 To end the V-Application, select  *End* → Press 

 To open Index Menu and keep the V-Application paused, select  *Cancel* → Press 

Opening V-Appli Library while V-Application is Paused

■ When *V-Appli Paused Exit?* appears, choose *Yes* → Press

• Paused V-Application ends.



Using V-Applications

Managing V-Applications

Opening V-Application Properties

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Library

1 Select a V-Application and press **Menu**

2 Select **Property** and press

■ To read the rest, press . (Press to scroll back.)

■ To return to V-Appli Library, press twice.

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Vendor | Name of the distributor (or supplier/manufacturer) |
| Save Size | Downloaded file size |
| Recorded | Capacity for recording scores |
| StandbyDisp | Compatibility with Standby V-Application (see P.11-3) |
| Video Out | Compatibility with video output (see P.11-4) |

Deleting V-Applications

1 Select a V-Application and press **Menu**

2 Select **Delete** and press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

- Preloaded V-Applications can be deleted.
- If **Enter Code** appears, enter Security Code.
- If the V-Application is set for Standby (see P.11-3), **Application set for Standby V-Appli Cannot Delete** appears and Menu returns. To proceed, cancel the setting and try again.

Standby V-Application

Set a V-Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

- Only one V-Application can be set at a time, and some do not run in Standby.
- V-Applications on Memory Card cannot be set for Standby.
- Standby V-Appli is **Off** by default.

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Settings

1 Select **Standby V-Appli** and press

■ To set start time, select **Set Time** ► Press ► Select **Start Time** ► Press ► Enter time (01 - 10 Seconds) ► Press

■ To set idle time after which V-Application pauses, select **Set Time** ► Press ► Select **Transition Time** ► Press ► Select time ► Press

2 Select **Set Application** and press

■ For network connection setting, select **Network Connection** ► Press ► Select **Connect** or **Stay Off-line** ► Press (**Connect** is set by default.)

3 Select **On/Off** and press

4 Choose **On** and press

■ When a V-Application is paused () , choose **Yes** ► Press

■ When Auto Reply is active, choose **Yes** ► Press

■ To cancel Standby V-Application, choose **Off** ► Press (Omit the next steps.)

5 Select a V-Application and press

• If **Security Level will be set to Low Set?** appears, choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

6 Press to exit

Note

- If handset (with Memory Card inserted) is connected to any of the following devices, V-Application does not start from Standby.
 - Analog Conversion Cable
 - LCD Remote/Mic
 - Headphones
 V-Application started from Standby ends if you connect any of the above to handset (with Memory Card inserted).
- V-Applications may not start when an external device (hands free kit, etc.) is connected to handset.
- V-Application set for Standby that also responds to incoming communications may take priority over incoming settings set in Call Functions.

Video Out

Connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. with the supplied Video Cable to view V-Applications on the target device.

- Video Out function applies only to V-Applications which support video output. Check **Video Out** in properties (see **P.11-2**).
- Before performing the steps below, connect handset to a device with the supplied Video Cable (see **Basic P.15-45**).

11

Using V-Applications

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *V-Appli Library*

1 Select a V-Application and press

- Network/security-related dialogs may appear for some V-Applications. Follow onscreen prompts to start the V-Application (may only be available in Japanese).

2 Press

The V-Application appears on the device.

- Press  to toggle between the device and handset Display.
 - To toggle display size, see **Basic P.15-46**.

Note

- For eye safety, avoid playing V-Applications on an external device for long periods.
- V-Applications started from Standby do not support Video Out.



V-Application Settings

General Settings

Incoming Settings

Select a handset response to incoming calls, etc. while a V-Application is active

Default: Pause Application

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Settings ► Incoming Settings

Select from **1 Incoming Call** to **5 Alarm** ► Press **●** ► Select a handset response ► Press **●**

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Pause Application | V-Applications pause for incoming calls, mail, etc. |
| Show Message | A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, 090392XXXX1 appears. Press ☺ to answer the call or read the message. |

- For V-Applications started from Standby, a message appears regardless of the setting. However, when Chaku-Uta is set for Ring Tone, the V-Application pauses and Chaku-Uta plays regardless of the setting.
- V-Application compatible with Karaoke pauses regardless of the setting.

Playback Volume

Adjust the volume of V-Application sounds

Default: Level 3

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Settings ► Volume/Vibration ► Playback Volume

Use **☺** to adjust volume ► Press **●**

- In Manner Mode, vibration set in Manner Settings (see **Basic P.3-5**) applies.

Vibration

When activated, handset vibrates while compatible V-Applications play

Default: On

Index Menu ► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Settings ► Volume/Vibration ► Vibration

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press **●**

- In Manner Mode, vibration set in Manner Settings applies.

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for V-Applications

Default: Link to Backlight

Index Menu

► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Settings ► Backlight ► On/Off

Select from **1 Always Active** to **3 Link to Backlight** ► Press **●**

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Always Active | Backlight remains on while V-Applications are running |
| Always Inactive | Backlight does not turn on while V-Applications are running |
| Link to Backlight | Backlight turns on or off depending on Light Settings (see Basic P.7-13) |

Blink Control

When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible V-Applications play

Default: On

Index Menu

► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Settings ► Backlight ► Blink Control

Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press **●**

Application-based Settings

Auto Connect

Show or hide confirmation for network connection

Index Menu

► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Library

Select a V-Application ► Press **☺** **Menu** ► Select **Auto Connect** ► Press **●** ► Choose **1 On** or **2 Off** ► Press **●**

- **On**: Network V-Applications start without a confirmation.
- This setting is also available for V-Applications on Memory Card.
- **Auto Connect** may not appear for some V-Applications.

Security Level

Set a security level for V-Application use

Index Menu

► Vodafone live! ► V-Appli ► V-Appli Library

Select a V-Application ► Press **☺** **Menu** ► Select **Security Level** ► Press **●** ► Select **1 High** or **2 Low** ► Press **●**

- This setting is also available for V-Applications on Memory Card.
- **Security Level** may not appear for some V-Applications.

Save Direct Key Save a V-Application to User Shortcut (see **Basic P.15-29**)

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *Save Direct Key*

Saving to User Shortcut

Select **1** *Save* ▶ Press **●** ▶ Select a V-Application ▶ Press **●**

Deleting from User Shortcut

Select **2** *Cancel* ▶ Press **●**

Reset & Changing Center Address

Reset

Reset V-Application settings
Refer to **P.16-3** for the settings affected by Reset

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *V-Appli Settings* ▶ *Other Settings* ▶
Reset V-Appli

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **1** *Reset* ▶ Press **●** ▶ Select **1** *OK* or
2 *Cancel* ▶ Press **●**

Clear Memory

Restore V-Appli Library to default setting

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *V-Appli Settings* ▶ *Other Settings* ▶
Reset V-Appli

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **2** *Clear Memory* ▶ Press **●** ▶ Select
1 *OK* or **2** *Cancel* ▶ Press **●**

- Preloaded V-Applications are restored.

Note

All V-Application settings will be canceled after **Clear Memory**.

Server Address

Set V-Application Center Address

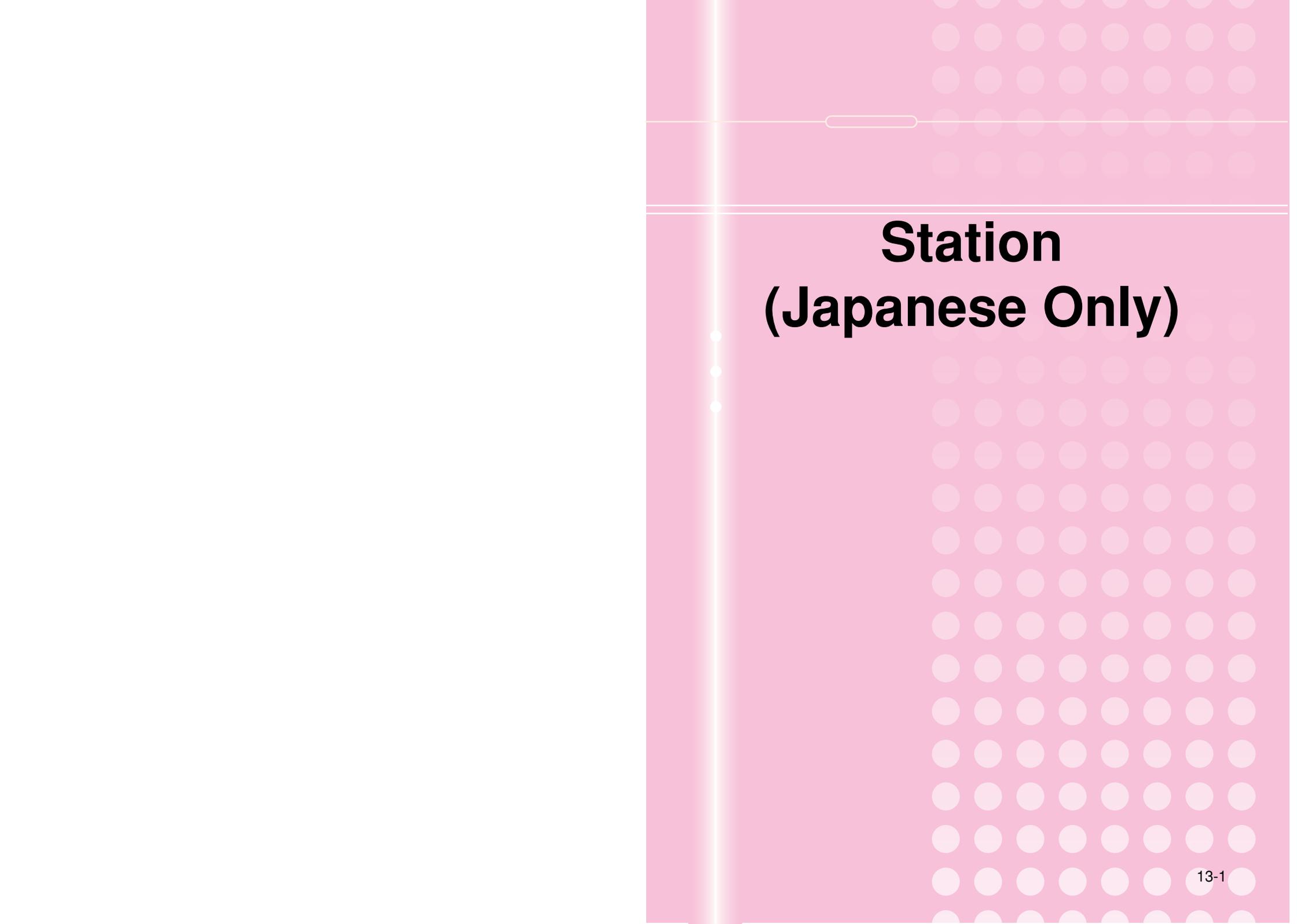
Default *7263000

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *V-Appli* ▶ *V-Appli Settings* ▶ *Other Settings* ▶
Server Address

Enter Security Code ▶ Enter Center Address ▶ Press **●**

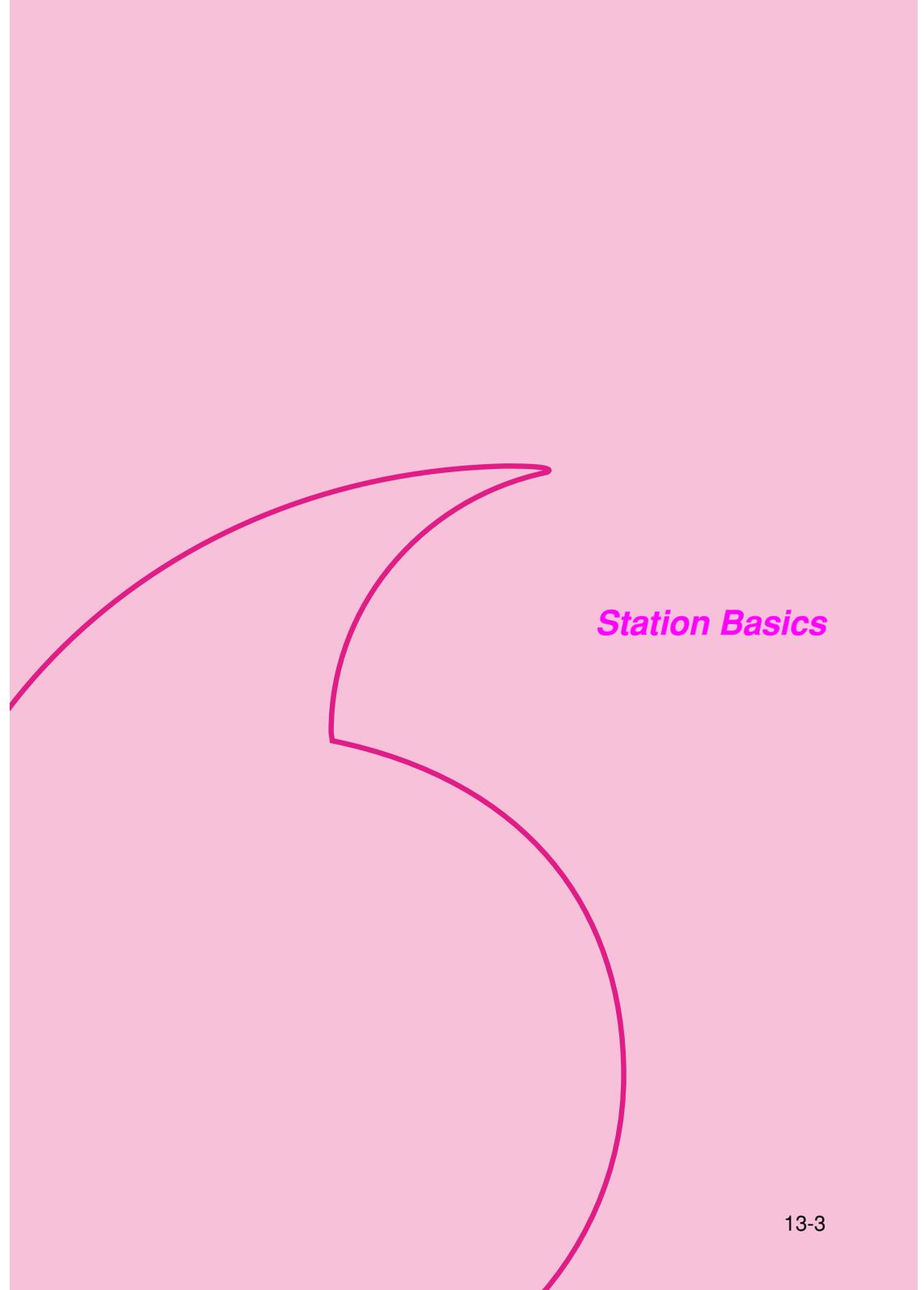
Note

Do not change Center Address unless instructed to do so. Access to the service will be disabled.



Station (Japanese Only)

MEMO



Station Basics

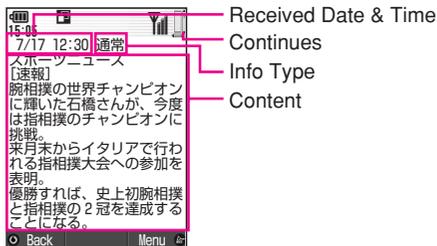
Getting Started

Use Station to access a variety of area-specific local information, periodically updated automatically. An additional contract is required to use Station service.

Station Content

Station Info Content

Sample Station information page:
Use or to scroll information.



Subscription Status

Request confirmation after subscribing to or unsubscribing from fee-based information. To subscribe to fee-based information, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station*

1 Select **Confirm Request** and press

Original subscription status appears.

- : Subscribed
- : Not subscribed

2 Press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Confirm Request Accepted appears.

- Standby returns after the request is sent. Wait for a reply from the Service Center.

When Reply from Service Center Arrives

- Information Menu opens.

To see the reply, select **Station Info** ► Press ► Select **Station Notification** ► Press

- Press to exit. (Reply will be deleted.)

- Alternatively, in Station, open **New Information** to check the reply (see P.13-7 "In Standby").

Checking Main List

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station*

1 Select **Main List** and press

- If Main List is empty, choose **Yes** ► Press

2 Select an item and press

- Subscription is required for viewing fee-based information.
- Station Info Content: see P.13-4



If title list appears, select a title and press to open information.

3 Press to exit Station

Updating Main List

- Main List is updated automatically when:

- Specified hours pass (see P.15-3)
- Handset receives different area information
- An update time for titles in My List is reached

- To update Main List manually, follow these steps.

Press ► Select **Vodafone live!** ► Press ► Select **Station** ► Press ► Select **Update List** ► Press

- Standby returns (待ち). When Main List is updated, **Complete** appears.
- Updates may not be received depending on signal strength.

My List

Saving to My List

Save items to **My List** to receive periodic updates. The information is updated automatically.

- Save up to 20 items.
- **Urgent Information** is saved automatically.

From Main List Information

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Main List* ▶ *Open information*

- 1 Press **Menu**
 - Information can only be saved when **Save** appears.
- 2 Select **Save** and press
- 3 Select **My List** and press
 - If the item is already in My List, **My List** does not appear.

From Item or Title List

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Main List*

- 1 Select an item or title
- 2 Press **Menu**
- 3 Select **Save to My List** and press
 - If the selected item has more than one title, handset saves as many as possible.
 - If the item is already in My List, **Save to My List** does not appear.

Editing My List

Moving Saved Titles

Urgent Information cannot be moved.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *My List*

- 1 Select a title and press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Move** and press
- 3 Use to move cursor to target location and press

The title is moved.

Deleting Titles

- Urgent Information cannot be deleted.
- Deleting a title automatically deletes all information saved under the title.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *My List*

- 1 Select a title and press **Menu**
- 2 Select **Delete** and press

Delete? appears.

 - Check the number of information items.
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press

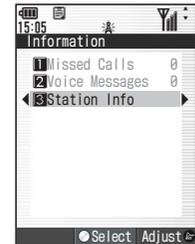
Received Information

Unread Information

- 1 When information in My List is updated, animation plays and **Information Menu** opens
 - appears in red.
- 2 Select **Station Info** and press
- 3 Select a title and press

Information appears and is deleted from New Information.

To read another information in New Information, press:



Information Menu

Ring Tone Volume

- While handset is ringing, press (up) or (down).
 - Ring Tone Level setting (see [Basic P.8-2](#)) changes accordingly.
 - Cancel Manner Mode to adjust the level (see [Basic P.3-3](#)).

Quick Silent

- Press to instantly mute incoming information tone for that information only.

In Standby

- Press ▶ Select *Vodafone live!* ▶ Press ▶ Select **3 Station** ▶ Press ▶ Select **New Information** ▶ Press ▶ Select a title ▶ Press

Tip

- Information may appear automatically without a notice.
- For Urgent Information, **Urgent Information** appears even when it arrives with other information.
- If information is received during an operation, Information Menu may not open.
- Depending on information type, Ring Tone may not sound or other tone may sound.

Read Information

My List holds up to 100 information items. Urgent Information is saved to My List.

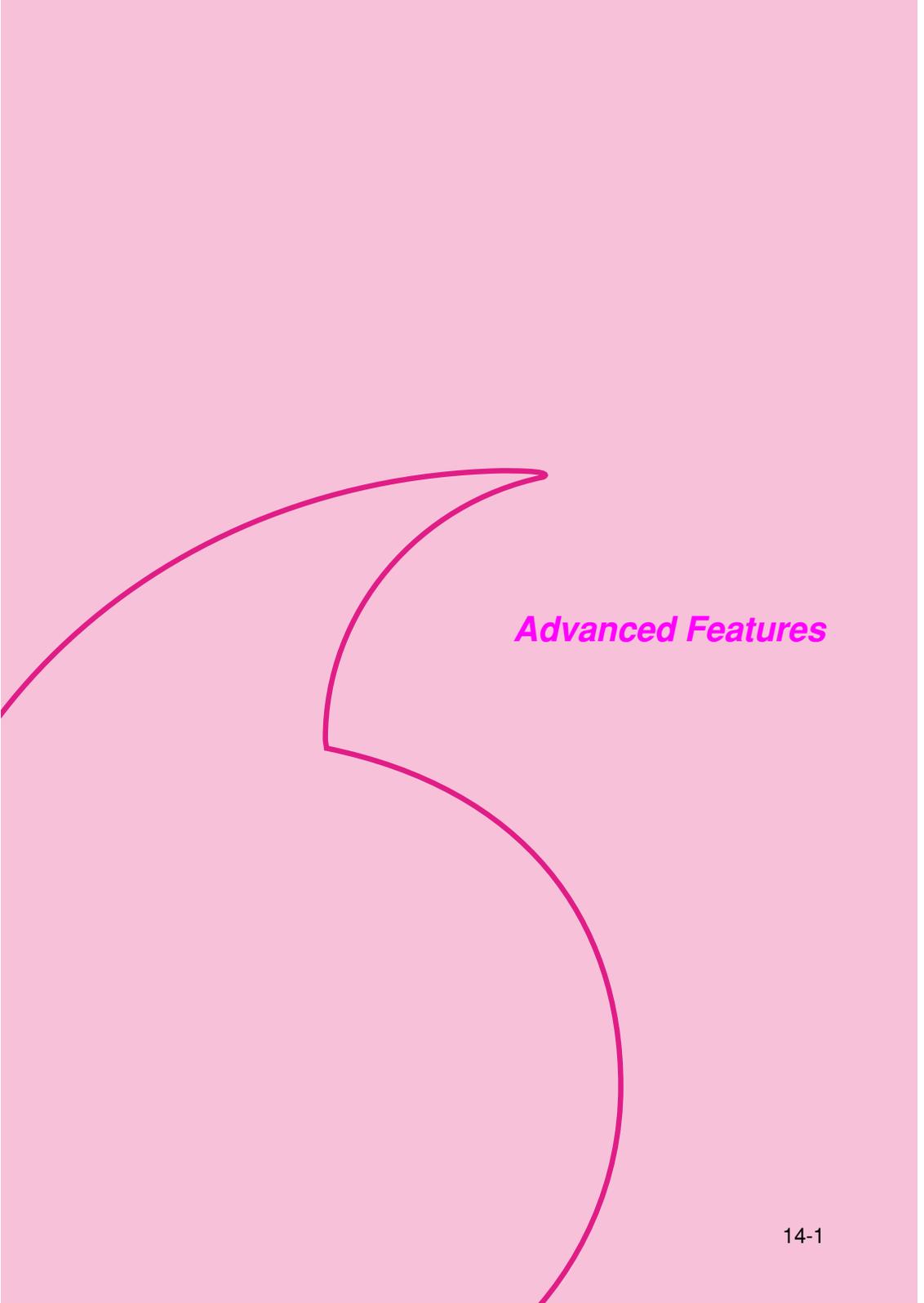
Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station*

1 Select  My List and press 

- Titles with unread information appear in red.

2 Select a title and press **3 Select an information title and press ****Note**

When there are 100 information items in My List and new information arrives, the oldest item is replaced. Save important information to Saved Information (see **P.14-2**). Even when there are fewer than 100 items, items may be deleted depending on the size or type of information.



Advanced Features

Saving Information

Saved Information

Information in Main List is updated automatically (see P.13-5).

To protect information, save items to Saved Information.

- Approximately 3,000 KB is shared between Inbox (Mail), Favorites or Message Folder (Web), and Saved Information (Station).
- Information in My List can be saved to Saved Information.

1 Open information

2 Press **Menu**

- Information can only be saved when **Save** appears.

3 Select **Save** and press

- Information can only be saved when **Saved Information** appears.

4 Select **Saved Information** and press

5 Select **Handset** or **Memory Card** and press

- Some information may not be saved to Memory Card.
- When memory is full, delete entries and try again (see below).

Checking Information

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station*

1 Select **Saved Information** and press

- Received date and time appear in [].

2 Select a title and press

- To save files within information to Data Folder, see P.14-4 "To Data Folder."

Deleting Selected Information

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station* ► *Saved Information*

1 Select information and press **Menu**

2 Select **Delete** and press

3 Choose **Yes** and press

Deleting All Information

- Press ► Select *Vodafone live!* ► Press ► Select **Station** ► Press ► Select **Saved Information** ► Press **Menu** ► Select **Delete All Handset** or **Delete All SD Card** ► Press ► Enter Security Code ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

Using Linked Info

Use numbers, addresses or URLs (<http://> or <https://>) to place calls, send Sky/Super Mail or access Mobile Internet sites.

- Available only when numbers, addresses and URLs are underlined with a dotted line.
- Words may be substituted for the numbers, addresses and URLs.

1 Open information containing a phone number, mail address or URL

2 **Phone Numbers**

1 Highlight a number and press

2 Select **Dial** and press

The number is dialed.

Mail Addresses

1 Highlight an address and press

2 Select **Send** and press

3 Select **Send Super Mail** or **Send Sky Mail** and press

- Creating & Sending a Message: see P.3-3

URLs

1 Highlight a URL and press

Handset connects to the Network.

- **High Security Protected** appears for URLs starting with <https://>.

To continue, select **OK** and press .

Saving to Phone Book

- To save as new entry, open information and follow these steps.

Select a phone number or mail address ► Press ► Select **Save** ► Press ► Select **New Entry** ► Press ► See [Basic]P.5-4 - 5-5 for more about **Phone Book**

- To save as new item, open information and follow these steps.

Select a phone number or mail address ► Press ► Select **Save** ► Press ► Select **New Item** ► Press ► Select an entry (see [Basic]P.5-13) ► Press ► See [Basic]P.5-4 - 5-5 for more about **Phone Book**

Files within Information

Use information in My List or Saved Information.

To Data Folder Save images and other files within information to Data Folder

Open information and select a file → Press **⏏** → Select **To Data Folder** → Press **⏏** → Perform from Step 4 on P.8-5

- Files can only be saved when **To Data Folder** appears.
- Some files may not be saved to Data Folder.

Wallpaper & Display Images Save images as Wallpaper or as Display Images

Open information and select an image → Press **⏏** → Select **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** → Press **⏏** → Perform from Step 3-2 on P.8-6

- Images can only be used when **Save As Wallpaper** or **To Display Images** appears.
- Some images may be too large to use as Wallpaper or Display Images.
- Image files saved as Wallpaper or Display Images are not saved to Data Folder.

Weather Indicator

Activating Weather Indicator

The weather forecast for your current location (sent via the Center) appears as Weather Indicator in Standby.

- Subscription to fee-based information is required to use this service.
- Off** (no Weather Indicator) is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Weather Indicator*

1 Select **Standby Display** and press **⏏**

2 Choose **On** and press **⏏**
 To cancel, choose **Off** → Press **⏏**

3 Press **⏏**
 Weather Indicator appears when forecast is updated.

Tip After you subscribe to fee-based information, **Weather Icon Set Now?** appears. Choose **Yes** and press **⏏**, then follow onscreen prompt to see the indicators. **On** is set for **Standby Display** automatically.

Indicators & Updates



Weather Indicator is updated when:

- Weather Indicator update time arrives
- A different area forecast is received
- Main List update time arrives (see P.15-3)
- Manually updated (see P.13-5)

Example: → Partly cloudy with a chance of Rain

Weather Forecast

See a more detailed weather forecast.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Weather Indicator*

1 Select **Weather Forecast** and press **⏏**
 Information appears.

Changing Weather Indicator Info Number

- Do not change Info Number unless instructed to do so.
 Press **⏏** → Select **Vodafone live!** → Press **⏏** → Select **Station** → Press **⏏**
 → Select **Weather Indicator** → Press **⏏** → Select **Set Info Number** → Press **⏏** → Enter Security Code → Enter a new Info Number → Press **⏏**
 • **57451** is set by default.

Location Info

Checking Location Info

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station*

1 Select **Location Info** and press **Enter**

Location Info Log opens.

When Location Info is protected, enter Security Code (see below).

To update Location Info, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Update Location Info** ▶ Press **Enter**

To delete Location Info, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose

Yes ▶ Press **Enter**

To clear Location Info, press **Menu** ▶ Select **Delete All** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Choose

Yes ▶ Press **Enter**

2 Select Location Info and press **Enter**

Using Location Info

- Share on BBS (see P.6-13)
- Send via Web (see P.9-4)
- Copy and paste into messages (see below)

Pasting into Messages

In a text entry window, move cursor to the paste location and follow these steps.

Press **Menu** ▶ Select **Saved Information** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select

Location info ▶ Press **Enter** three times

- Location Info is inserted to the left of the cursor.

Tip Up to five locations, including the current one, are saved in Location Info Log. When this limit is exceeded, the oldest Location is replaced with the newest.

Protecting Location Info

Restrict access to Location Info Log by making Security Code required to open Location Info.

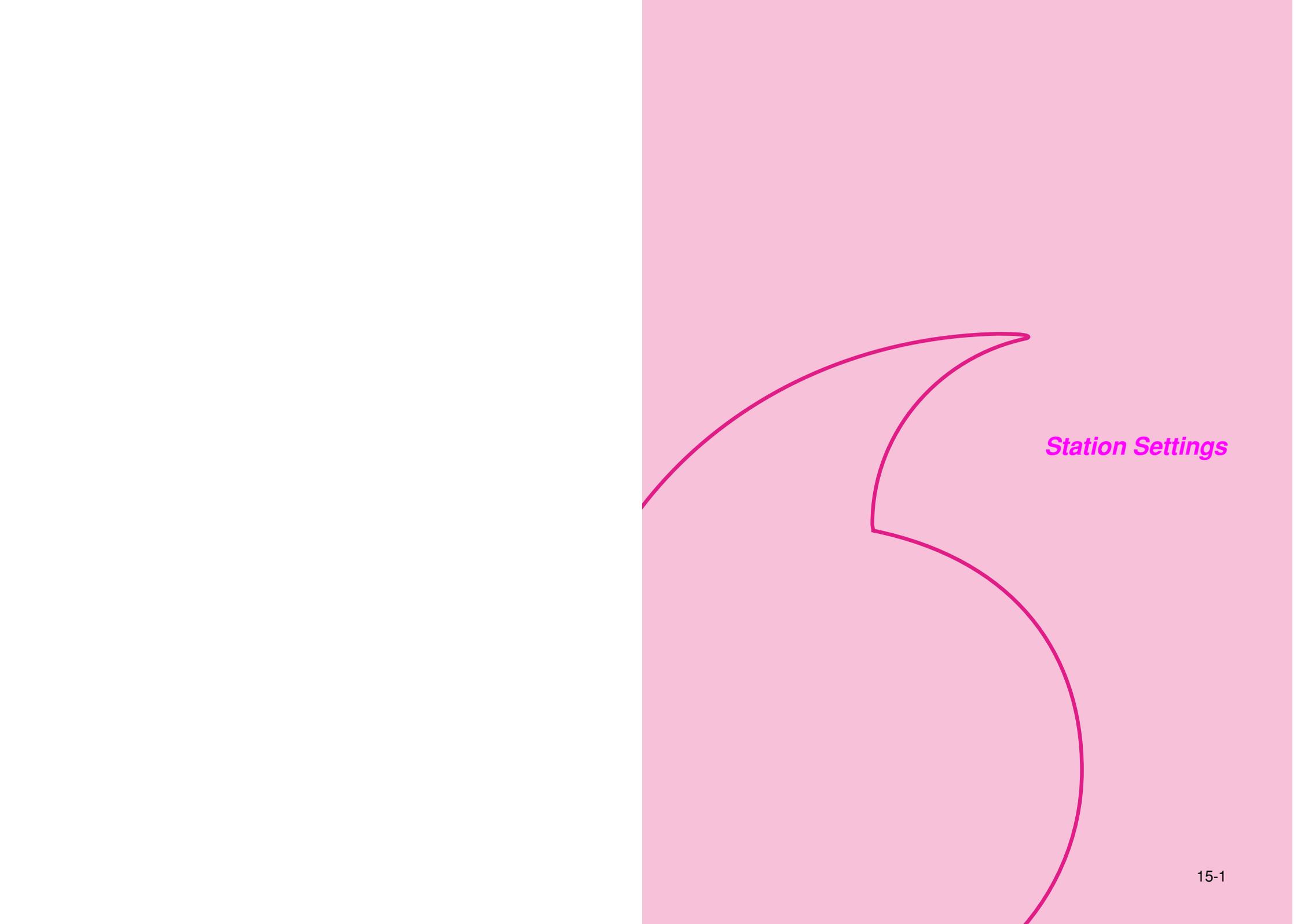
No (Security Code not required) is set by default.

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Location Info* ▶ *Menu* (⌂) ▶ *Set Security Code*

1 Select **Need Setting** and press **Enter**

Handset is set to ask for Security Code.

To cancel, select **No** ▶ Press **Enter**



Station Settings

Sub Menu Settings

Set Display Size Change font and image size

Default: Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100%

Open information and press **Menu** → **Select Set Display Size** → Press → **Select 1 Font Size or 2 Image Size** → Press → **Select a size** → Press

Note

- Some images always appear at 100% depending on the original size.
- Select **100%** if information does not appear properly at **200%**.

Tip

- Press to toggle image size between 200% and 100%. (appears for 100% and for 200%.)
- To change Font Size from Font Settings menu, see **Basic P.7-7**.

Scroll Unit Select from three scroll units

Default: Line

Open information and press **Menu** → **Select Scroll Unit** → Press → **Select from 1 Full Screen to 3 Line** → Press

Text Memo Copy text and save to Text Memo (see **Basic P.4-18**)

Open information and press **Menu** → **Select Save** → Press → **Select Text Memo** → Press → Use to move cursor the first character → Press → Use to specify text → Press → **Choose 1 Yes** → Press

- To save to Memory Card, press after specifying text.
 - Press again to switch back to handset.
- Text can only be saved when **Save** and **Text Memo** appear.

Copy Copy text

Open information and press **Menu** → **Select Copy** → Press → **Perform Steps 3 - 4 in Copy/Cut & Paste on Basic P.4-17**

- Text can only be copied when **Copy** appears.

Property Open information details

Open information and press **Menu** → **Select Property** → Press

- Press again to return to information.
- Check **Reception No**. The smaller the number, the later the information is received.

Basic Settings

Update Frequency Set an interval for Main List automatic update

Default: 4 Times/Day

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station* ► *Station Settings* ► *Update Frequency*

Select from 1 4 Times/Day to 3 Off → Press

- Main List is updated automatically when not manually updated within a set interval (see **P.13-5**).

Save Info Number Save information to My List directly using **Info Number**

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station* ► *Station Settings* ► *Save Info Number*

Enter Info Number → Press

- When 20 titles are saved in My List, **No Space Cannot Save** appears in Station Settings menu. Delete titles and try again (see **P.13-7**).

Image Link Update Wallpaper automatically when the source image is updated

- Image Link is available only when a title of information containing images is saved to My List (see **P.13-6**).

Default: Off

Index Menu ► *Vodafone live!* ► *Station* ► *Station Settings* ► *Image Link*

Choose 1 On or 2 Off → Press

Note

- When Wallpaper is updated, the original image used as Wallpaper is deleted.
- Wallpaper is updated automatically only when the image is saved as Wallpaper directly from opened information, not from Data Folder.

Reset & Changing Center Address

Reset

Reset Station settings
Refer to **P.16-3** for the settings affected by Reset

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Station Settings* ▶ *Reset Station*

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **1** *Reset* ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1** *OK* or **2** *Cancel* ▶ Press **⏻**

Clear Memory

Delete all information in Station

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Station Settings* ▶ *Reset Station*

Enter Security Code ▶ Select **2** *Clear Memory* ▶ Press **⏻** ▶ Select **1** *OK* or **2** *Cancel* ▶ Press **⏻**

Tip

- All files in the following locations will be deleted:
 - New Information
 - Main List
 - My List*
 - Saved Information
 - Location Info
- *Urgent Information remains.
- When **Clear Memory** is performed, ongoing Main List update (see **P.13-5**) will stop.

Center Address

Set Station Center Address

Default: *7053

Index Menu ▶ *Vodafone live!* ▶ *Station* ▶ *Station Settings* ▶ *Center Address*

Enter Security Code ▶ Enter Center Address ▶ Press **⏻**

Note

Do not change Center Address unless instructed to do so. Access to the service will be disabled.

15

Station Settings

Appendix

Reset Settings

Mail Settings

See P.6-14 for resetting Mail Settings.

| | | |
|---------------------|---|-----------|
| Auto Retrieve | Manual | |
| Super Mail Group | Deleted | |
| Sender Name | Off (deleted) | |
| Recipient Name | Off | |
| Rejected Files | Off (all unchecked) | |
| Reply Address | Off (address deleted) | |
| Signature | Off (all deleted) | |
| Reply with Original | Off ¹ | |
| Security | PIN Setting | 0000 |
| | PIN Filter | Off (all) |
| | Reject List | Deleted |
| | Address Filter | Off |
| Set Priority | Normal | |
| Sender | Deleted | |
| 2-Touch Mail | Add Address: all deleted, Save & Send Image: On | |
| Mail Notice | Name | |
| Confirm Delivery | Off | |
| Hide Spam | Off | |
| Auto Send | On | |
| Auto Reply | Off ² | |
| Custom Fixed Text | Deleted | |
| Center Address | ³ | |
| BBS | Off ⁴ | |
| Scroll Unit | Line | |
| Layout | List all | |
| Set Folders | Folder Name: all deleted, Secret Mode: all Off | |
| Chat Mail Log | Chat Group Name (① - ③), Members: all deleted | |
| Auto Open | Image Auto Open: On, Sound Auto Play: Off | |
| Auto Delete Old | Off | |
| Sort By Subject | Off (text all deleted) | |
| Sort By Addresses | Off (text all deleted) | |
| Set Display Size | Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100% | |
| Auto Sort | Date | |
| List | Pattern 1 | |

¹Comment returns to --○○さんは言いました--.

²Title, Reply Text and Reply Time for each mode return to default (see P.6-2).

³Short Message: ¥7033, Data Access: ¥7233000, Super Mail Line: ¥7043
Report Setting: stop@meiwaku.vodafone.jp

⁴New Message: deleted (掲示板データなし), Location Info: deleted (no data)



- Sky Melody Center Address returns to ¥1790.
- Letter Pad in Display Settings is also reset to Off.

Web Settings

See P.9-6 for resetting Web settings.

| | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Text Only | Images and sounds retrieved | |
| Center Address | ¥7223000 | |
| Security | Warning Message | On |
| | Show User ID | Off |
| Location Info | Confirm User | |
| Home | Space Town | |
| Scroll Unit | Line | |
| Character Encoding | Auto Recognition | |
| Set Display Size | Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100% | |
| DNS Cache | Deleted | |
| Tone | Piano | |
| Adjust Loudness | Strong | |

V-Application Settings

See P.12-4 for resetting V-Application settings.

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| Incoming Settings | Pause Application (all) |
| Volume/Vibration | Playback Volume: Level 3, Vibration: On |
| Backlight | On/Off: Link to Backlight, Blink Control: On |
| Standby V-Appli | Start Time: 3 Seconds, Transition Time: 0 Min |
| Server Address | ¥7263000 |

Station Settings

See P.15-4 for resetting Station settings.

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Update Frequency | 4 Times/Day |
| Center Address | ¥7053 |
| Image Link | Off |
| Weather Indicator | Off |
| Scroll Unit | Line |
| Set Display Size | Font Size: Standard, Image Size: 100% |

Display Messages

Mail

Cannot Send

Send failed due to weak signal.

➔ Make sure signal is stable and try again.

Delivery Rejected

The message was not delivered to the recipient.

➔ Check the handset number and try again.

Cannot Send

The Center is undergoing maintenance.

➔ Wait and try again.

Confirm

Unknown if the Center received the message.

➔ Confirm delivery (see P.4-21).

No response
Connection
interrupted

Unknown if the Center received the message.

➔ Wait and try again.

Connection
Interrupted

Unknown if the Center received the message.

➔ Wait and try again.

Cannot connect to
Network

The Center did not receive the message.

➔ Wait and try again.

Check Address

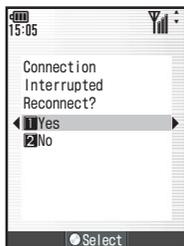
An invalid address was entered.

➔ Check the recipient's address.

Cannot Mail Access

Super Mail is disabled.

➔ Contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).



Disconnected due to weak signal.

➔ Choose **Yes** and press **OK** to reconnect.



The message was not delivered to the recipient.

➔ If recipient is using PIN Filter, enter the matching PIN and resend (see P.3-11).

➔ The recipient may be using Address Filter for security.

➔ If included, remove **184** or **186** from the address and try again.

Sha-mail Cannot be Sent

Possible causes include the following. For details, contact Vodafone Customer Center, General Information (see P.16-16).

- **Recipient does not subscribe to Super Mail or Long Mail.**
- **Recipient handset is not Super Mail-compatible. (Long Mail-compatible handsets cannot receive messages over 6 KB.)**
- **Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.**
 - Convert JPEG files to PNG files before sending to PNG-compatible handsets (see Basic P.12-28).

When Handset Memory is Full

New messages cannot be delivered. Undeliverable mail is saved at the Center for up to 30 days.

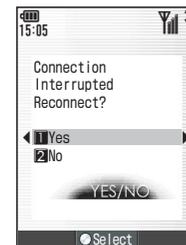
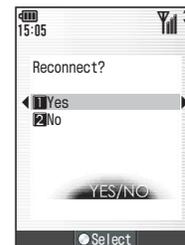
- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (see P.4-11).
When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (see P.4-12).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory (see P.4-11).

Web

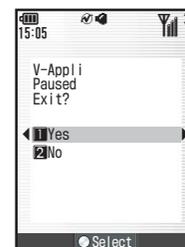
Connection
Interrupted

The Center did not respond.

➔ Establish a connection within the time limit.

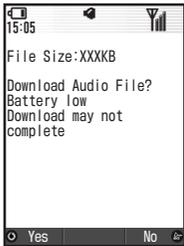


Disconnected due to weak signal.
➔ Choose **Yes** and press **OK** to reconnect.



A V-Application is paused.

➔ Close the application and try again.



Download may fail due to low battery.

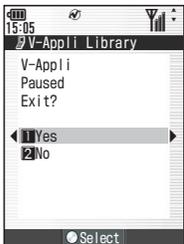
➔ Charge battery beforehand.



Memory is full.

➔ Delete files and try again (see **Basic P.12-45**).

V-Applications



A V-Application is paused.

➔ Close the application and try again.



Download may fail due to low battery.

➔ Charge battery beforehand.



Library memory is full.

➔ Press **Yes** to continue downloading and press **No** to cancel.



100 V-Applications are already saved.

➔ Delete applications and try again (see **P.11-2**).



You are downloading a new version of the saved application.

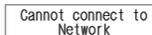
➔ Press **Yes** to continue downloading and press **No** to cancel.



V-Applications cannot be downloaded when the following messages appear:

- **Improper Data Cannot Download Application**
- **Application Size too large Cannot download**
- **Application in Use**

Station



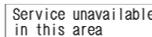
You tried to update Main List or Location Info out-of-range.

➔ Try again where signal is stable.



Location Info cannot be received from the Center.

➔ Try again.



You tried to update Main List or Location Info outside the Service Area.

➔ Try again within the Service Area.

Pictograph List

Open Pictograph Code mode and press **List**. Use to select a Pictograph and press to enter it.

Pictograph Code 1

| Code | Pictograph |
|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|
| 01 | | 19 | | 37 | | 55 | | 73 | |
| 02 | | 20 | | 38 | | 56 | | 74 | |
| 03 | | 21 | | 39 | | 57 | | 75 | |
| 04 | | 22 | | 40 | | 58 | | 76 | |
| 05 | | 23 | | 41 | | 59 | | 77 | |
| 06 | | 24 | | 42 | | 60 | | 78 | |
| 07 | | 25 | | 43 | | 61 | | 79 | |
| 08 | | 26 | | 44 | | 62 | | 80 | |
| 09 | | 27 | | 45 | | 63 | | 81 | |
| 10 | | 28 | | 46 | | 64 | | 82 | |
| 11 | | 29 | | 47 | | 65 | | 83 | |
| 12 | | 30 | | 48 | | 66 | | 84 | |
| 13 | | 31 | | 49 | | 67 | | 85 | |
| 14 | | 32 | | 50 | | 68 | | 86 | |
| 15 | | 33 | | 51 | | 69 | | 87 | |
| 16 | | 34 | | 52 | | 70 | | 88 | |
| 17 | | 35 | | 53 | | 71 | | 89 | |
| 18 | | 36 | | 54 | | 72 | | 90 | |

Pictograph Code 2

| Code | Pictograph |
|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|
| 01 | | 19 | | 37 | | 55 | | 73 | |
| 02 | | 20 | | 38 | | 56 | | 74 | |
| 03 | | 21 | | 39 | | 57 | | 75 | |
| 04 | | 22 | | 40 | | 58 | | 76 | |
| 05 | | 23 | | 41 | | 59 | | 77 | |
| 06 | | 24 | | 42 | | 60 | | 78 | |
| 07 | | 25 | | 43 | | 61 | | 79 | |
| 08 | | 26 | | 44 | | 62 | | 80 | |
| 09 | | 27 | | 45 | | 63 | | 81 | |
| 10 | | 28 | | 46 | | 64 | | 82 | |
| 11 | | 29 | | 47 | | 65 | | 83 | |
| 12 | | 30 | | 48 | | 66 | | 84 | |
| 13 | | 31 | | 49 | | 67 | | 85 | |
| 14 | | 32 | | 50 | | 68 | | 86 | |
| 15 | | 33 | | 51 | | 69 | | 87 | |
| 16 | | 34 | | 52 | | 70 | | 88 | |
| 17 | | 35 | | 53 | | 71 | | 89 | |
| 18 | | 36 | | 54 | | 72 | | 90 | |

Pictograph Code 3

| Code | Pictograph |
|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|
| 01 | | 19 | | 37 | | 55 | | 73 | |
| 02 | | 20 | | 38 | | 56 | | 74 | |
| 03 | | 21 | | 39 | | 57 | | 75 | |
| 04 | | 22 | | 40 | | 58 | | 76 | |
| 05 | | 23 | | 41 | | 59 | | 77 | |
| 06 | | 24 | | 42 | | 60 | | 78 | |
| 07 | | 25 | | 43 | | 61 | | 79 | |
| 08 | | 26 | | 44 | | 62 | | 80 | |
| 09 | | 27 | | 45 | | 63 | | 81 | |
| 10 | | 28 | | 46 | | 64 | | 82 | |
| 11 | | 29 | | 47 | | 65 | | 83 | |
| 12 | | 30 | | 48 | | 66 | | 84 | |
| 13 | | 31 | | 49 | | 67 | | 85 | |
| 14 | | 32 | | 50 | | 68 | | 86 | |
| 15 | | 33 | | 51 | | 69 | | | |
| 16 | | 34 | | 52 | | 70 | | | |
| 17 | | 35 | | 53 | | 71 | | | |
| 18 | | 36 | | 54 | | 72 | | | |

Pictograph Code 4

| Code | Pictograph |
|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|
| 01 | | 17 | | 33 | | 49 | | 65 | |
| 02 | | 18 | | 34 | | 50 | | 66 | |
| 03 | | 19 | | 35 | | 51 | | 67 | |
| 04 | | 20 | | 36 | | 52 | | 68 | |
| 05 | | 21 | | 37 | | 53 | | 69 | |
| 06 | | 22 | | 38 | | 54 | | 70 | |
| 07 | | 23 | | 39 | | 55 | | 71 | |
| 08 | | 24 | | 40 | | 56 | | 72 | |
| 09 | | 25 | | 41 | | 57 | | 73 | |
| 10 | | 26 | | 42 | | 58 | | 74 | |
| 11 | | 27 | | 43 | | 59 | | 75 | |
| 12 | | 28 | | 44 | | 60 | | 76 | |
| 13 | | 29 | | 45 | | 61 | | 77 | |
| 14 | | 30 | | 46 | | 62 | | | |
| 15 | | 31 | | 47 | | 63 | | | |
| 16 | | 32 | | 48 | | 64 | | | |

Note Pictographs do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible Vodafone handsets.

Tip

- Pictographs in are animated.
- Pictographs with appear with background animation in received messages when Standby Animation (see **Basic P.7-15**) is **On**.

Pictograph Code 5

| Code | Pictograph |
|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|
| 01 | | 17 | | 33 | | 49 | | 65 | |
| 02 | | 18 | | 34 | | 50 | | 66 | |
| 03 | | 19 | | 35 | | 51 | | 67 | |
| 04 | | 20 | | 36 | | 52 | | 68 | |
| 05 | | 21 | | 37 | | 53 | | 69 | |
| 06 | | 22 | | 38 | | 54 | | 70 | |
| 07 | | 23 | | 39 | | 55 | | 71 | |
| 08 | | 24 | | 40 | | 56 | | 72 | |
| 09 | | 25 | | 41 | | 57 | | 73 | |
| 10 | | 26 | | 42 | | 58 | | 74 | |
| 11 | | 27 | | 43 | | 59 | | 75 | |
| 12 | | 28 | | 44 | | 60 | | 76 | |
| 13 | | 29 | | 45 | | 61 | | | |
| 14 | | 30 | | 46 | | 62 | | | |
| 15 | | 31 | | 47 | | 63 | | | |
| 16 | | 32 | | 48 | | 64 | | | |

Pictograph Code 6

| Code | Pictograph |
|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|------|------------|
| 01 | | 13 | | 25 | | 37 | | 49 | |
| 02 | | 14 | | 26 | | 38 | | 50 | |
| 03 | | 15 | | 27 | | 39 | | 51 | |
| 04 | | 16 | | 28 | | 40 | | 52 | |
| 05 | | 17 | | 29 | | 41 | | 53 | |
| 06 | | 18 | | 30 | | 42 | | 54 | |
| 07 | | 19 | | 31 | | 43 | | 55 | |
| 08 | | 20 | | 32 | | 44 | | 56 | |
| 09 | | 21 | | 33 | | 45 | | 57 | |
| 10 | | 22 | | 34 | | 46 | | 58 | |
| 11 | | 23 | | 35 | | 47 | | | |
| 12 | | 24 | | 36 | | 48 | | | |

Note Pictographs do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible Vodafone handsets.

Tip

- Pictographs in are animated.
- Pictographs with * appear with background animation in received messages when Standby Animation (see **Basic P.7-15**) is **On**.

Memory List

| Mail | |
|--------|-------------------------|
| Sent | Approximately 1,040 KB |
| Outbox | Approximately 200 KB |
| Inbox | Approximately 3,000 KB* |

*Shared with Favorites or Message Folder (Web) and Saved Information (Station).

| Web | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Favorites/Message Folder | Approximately 3,000 KB* |
| Log | Up to 20 entries |
| Bookmarks | Up to 30 links |
| Internet | Up to 20 URLs |

*Shared with Inbox (Mail) and Saved Information (Station).

| Station | |
|-------------------|---|
| Main List | Up to 63 titles |
| Saved Information | Approximately 3,000 KB* |
| My List | Up to 20 titles (100 information items) |
| Location Info | Up to 5 |

*Shared with Inbox (Mail) and Favorites or Message Folder (Web).

| V-Application | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| V-Appli Library | Up to 10 MB (100 items)* |

*Shared with File Cabinet (see **Basic P.12-2**).

Index

Numbers

2-Touch Mail 3-14

A

Access Log List 7-8
 Acquire Mail List 5-2
 Add Address (2-Touch Mail) 3-14
 Address Filter 6-9
 Attach 240 x 320 3-9
 Attach Thumbnail 3-9
 Attachment (attaching images, etc.) .. 3-8
 Attachment (changing sound format) 3-9
 Attachment (saving) 4-23
 Auto Connect (V-Application) 12-3
 Auto Delete Old 4-12
 Auto Delivery Service 7-11
 Auto Reply 6-2
 Auto Retrieve 6-6
 Auto Send 6-4
 Auto Sort 4-26

B

Backlight (V-Application) 12-3
 BBS 6-13
 Bcc 3-6
 Blink Control (V-Application) 12-3
 Bookmarks 8-2
 Bookmarks (accessing from) 8-3
 Bookmarks (deleting from) 8-4
 Bookmarks (saving to) 8-2
 Bottom Jump 4-28, 9-2
 By Express 3-12, 6-10

C

Cache Memory 7-5
 Call 4-9
 Call Text Memo 3-4
 Call Waiting 1-4
 Call Waiting Off 1-4
 Cancel Delivery 4-21
 Cc 3-6
 Center Address 6-14, 9-6, 12-4, 15-4

Certification 9-5
 Chaku-Uta 8-8
 Change Title (Web) 8-3
 Character Encoding 4-28, 9-3
 chat group 4-13
 Chat Mail Log 4-14
 Clear DNS Cache 9-5
 Clear Memory 9-6, 12-4, 15-4
 Clear Web Cache 9-6
 Clipboard 3-10
 Confirm Delivery 3-11, 4-21, 6-4
 Confirm Request 13-4
 Convert Sky Mail 3-7
 Copy 4-27, 9-2, 15-2
 Copyright (V-Application) 10-7
 Create QR Code 4-26
 Custom Fixed Text 6-4

D

Data Access 6-14
 Delete All (mail messages) 6-14
 Delete All Mail (Server Mail) 5-2
 Delete all Mail (Unretrieved List) 5-4
 Delete Item (Unretrieved List message) .. 5-4
 Delivery Report 2-4
 Dictionary files 8-7
 Dictionary files (saving) 8-5
 Display Images 4-24, 8-6, 14-4
 Download Rest 2-8

E

Edit Comments (Super Mail) 3-6

F

Favorites 8-2
 Favorites (canceling) 8-3
 Favorites (deleting entries) 8-4
 Favorites (opening information) 8-3
 Favorites (saving to) 8-2
 Fixed Text 3-7
 Folder Name 4-15
 Font Size 4-28, 9-2, 15-2
 Forward 4-7

G

Go to 4-28
 Greeting 1-2, 3-16

H

Hide Spam 4-20
 Home Reset 7-10
 Home Setting 7-10

I

Image Auto Open 4-25
 Image Link 15-3
 Image Size 4-28, 9-2, 15-2
 images (saving) 8-5, 14-4
 Inbox 2-6, 4-2
 Inbox Auto Sort 4-18
 Incoming Call 1-4
 Incoming Mail 4-4
 Incoming Settings 12-2
 information content 7-4, 13-4
 Information Menu 2-4, 7-11, 13-7
 Input Memory 7-9
 Internet 7-7

K

Karaoke 10-5

L

Letter Pad 4-17
 Link Limiter 9-5
 Link Limiter Code 9-5
 Location Info 6-13, 14-6
 Location Info (Web) 9-4

M

Mail 2-1
 Mail (checking messages) 4-2
 Mail (checking new messages) 2-4
 Mail (copying message text) 4-27
 Mail (creating & sending) 3-3
 Mail (deleting) 4-11
 Mail (disabling) 1-6
 Mail (editing messages) 4-2
 Mail (entering message text) 3-4
 Mail (entering recipient) 3-3

Mail (entering subject) 3-4
 Mail (protecting messages) 4-10
 Mail (resetting) 6-14
 Mail (saving to Outbox) 3-11
 Mail Address 1-5
 Mail address
 (customizing handset address) 1-5
 Mail Box 4-2
 Mail Box (changing Layout) 4-15
 Mail Box (changing List view) 4-26
 Mail Box (contents) 2-6, 4-4, 4-14
 Mail Notice 6-4
 Mail Request 5-2
 Main List 13-5
 Melody Format 3-9
 Memory List 16-11
 Memory Status 1-5, 7-5, 10-7
 Memory Usage 1-5, 7-5
 Message Contents 2-7, 4-6
 Message Folder 7-5, 8-2
 Message Folder
 (deleting information) 8-4
 Message Folder
 (opening information) 8-3
 Message Folder (saving to) 8-2
 Mobile Internet (accessing) 7-6
 More (retrieving multiple Super Mail) . 2-9
 More (Super Mail) 2-8
 Move Mail Folder 4-17
 Move to Home 7-10
 Multi Selector i
 My List 13-6
 My List (checking information) 13-8
 My List (deleting information) 13-7
 My List (saving information) 13-6

N

Network Setup 1-4
 Network V-Application 10-4
 New Information 13-7
 Next (Unretrieved List) 5-3

O

Open Link 4-9
 Option Settings 3-11

| | |
|---|-----------------------|
| Original Melody..... | 3-9 |
| Outbox | 4-2, 4-21 |
| P | |
| Pause Application..... | 12-2 |
| Phone Book (saving to)..... | 4-8 |
| Pictograph List..... | 16-8 |
| PIN..... | 3-11 |
| PIN Filter | 6-8 |
| PIN Setting..... | 6-9 |
| Playback Volume | 9-3 |
| Playback Volume (V-Application)..... | 12-2 |
| Polling | 3-12, 6-14 |
| Priority Setting | 3-13 |
| Privacy Level..... | 3-12 |
| Property | 9-4, 11-2, 15-2 |
| R | |
| Reacquire..... | 9-3 |
| Recipient Name..... | 6-7 |
| Recipient Type | 3-12 |
| Reject List..... | 6-9 |
| Rejected Files..... | 6-6 |
| Reply Address..... | 3-13, 6-8 |
| Reply to All | 4-7 |
| Reply with Original | 6-5 |
| Report Setting | 6-5 |
| Report Spam..... | 4-27 |
| Resend..... | 4-8 |
| Reset | 6-14, 9-6, 12-4, 15-4 |
| Retrieve All (Server Mail)..... | 5-2 |
| Retrieve all Mail (Unretrieved List)..... | 5-3 |
| Return Mail | 4-7 |
| S | |
| Save & Send Image..... | 6-7 |
| Save As Wallpaper..... | 4-24, 8-6, 14-4 |
| Save Auto Send..... | 3-13 |
| Save Dictionary | 8-7 |
| Save Direct Key..... | 12-4 |
| Save Info Number | 15-3 |
| Saved Information..... | 14-2 |
| Saved Information (checking)..... | 14-2 |
| Saved Information (deleting) | 14-2 |
| Saved Information (saving)..... | 14-2 |
| Scan Code..... | 4-25, 7-7 |
| Scroll Unit (for Mail Box, Message Folder).... | 4-27, 8-3 |
| Scroll Unit (for text, Web/Station info) . | 4-28, 9-2, 15-2 |
| Search (Web)..... | 9-2 |
| Search Next (Web)..... | 9-2 |
| Search this Page..... | 9-2 |
| Secret Mode | 4-16 |
| Security Level | 12-3 |
| Select Contents | 5-3 |
| Send Continuously..... | 4-22 |
| Send As Super Mail..... | 3-7 |
| Send Mail..... | 4-9 |
| Sender | 6-10 |
| Sender Name..... | 6-7 |
| Sent..... | 4-2 |
| Sent Auto Sort | 4-18 |
| Sent Mail..... | 3-6 |
| Server | 3-6 |
| Server Address | 3-6, 12-4 |
| Server Mail (deleting) | 5-5 |
| Server Mail (forwarding) | 5-4 |
| Server Mail Volume | 5-2 |
| Set Display Size..... | 4-28, 9-2, 15-2 |
| Set Info Number..... | 14-5 |
| Set Priority | 3-12, 6-10 |
| Sha-mail Shoot | 3-10 |
| Short Message..... | 6-14 |
| Show Address..... | 4-26 |
| Show as Unread/Read..... | 4-27 |
| Show Certification | 9-4 |
| Show Message..... | 12-2 |
| Show User ID | 9-5 |
| Side Keys | i |
| Signature | 6-8 |
| Sky Mail | 1-2, 3-3 |
| Sky Melody..... | 1-2, 2-10 |
| SMAF (MA-2) Format..... | 3-9 |
| SMAF (MA-3) Format..... | 3-9 |
| Sort By Addresses | 4-19 |
| Sort By Subject..... | 4-19 |
| sound files (saving)..... | 8-5 |
| Sound Auto Play..... | 4-25 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Space Town..... | 8-2 |
| SSL..... | 7-4 |
| Standby Display..... | 14-4 |
| Standby V-Application | 11-3 |
| Station | 13-4 |
| Station (disabling) | 1-6 |
| Station (resetting)..... | 15-4 |
| Sub Address | 3-6 |
| Super Mail | 1-2, 3-2 |
| Super Mail (retrieving)..... | 2-8, 5-3 |
| Super Mail Group (creating) | 6-11 |
| Super Mail Group (deleting) | 6-12 |
| Super Mail Line..... | 6-14 |
| Super Mail Notice | 2-8 |
| Synchronize (V-Application)..... | 10-7 |

T

| | |
|--------------------|-----------|
| Text Memo..... | 9-3, 15-2 |
| Text Only | 9-4 |
| Text Scanner | 7-7 |
| To | 3-6 |
| Top Jump | 4-28, 9-2 |

U

| | |
|----------------------------|------|
| Unread Messages (Web)..... | 7-11 |
| Update | 9-3 |
| Update Frequency | 15-3 |
| uploading | 9-4 |

V

| | |
|---|------|
| V-Appli Library..... | 10-4 |
| V-Application | 10-4 |
| V-Application (deleting) | 11-2 |
| V-Application (disabling) | 1-6 |
| V-Application (downloading)..... | 10-5 |
| V-Application (exiting or pausing) | 10-8 |
| V-Application (remote control)..... | 10-5 |
| V-Application (resetting)..... | 12-4 |
| V-Application (resuming)..... | 10-8 |
| V-Application (starting)..... | 10-6 |
| vFiles (saving)..... | 8-5 |
| Vibration (V-Application) | 12-2 |
| Video Out..... | 11-4 |
| Vodafone live! (disabling)..... | 1-6 |
| Vodafone Web..... | 7-6 |

W

| | |
|----------------------------|------|
| Warning Message (Web)..... | 9-5 |
| Weather Forecast | 14-5 |
| Weather Indicator | 14-4 |
| Web..... | 7-4 |
| Web (disabling) | 1-6 |
| Web (moving cursor) | 7-8 |
| Web (resetting)..... | 9-6 |

Customer Service

If you have questions about Vodafone handsets or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Call these numbers toll free from landlines

Vodafone Customer Centers

From a Vodafone handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

Call these numbers toll free from landlines

| Subscription Area | Service Center | Phone Number |
|--|---------------------|----------------|
| Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui | General Information | ☎ 0088-240-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-240-113 |
| Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka | General Information | ☎ 0088-241-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-241-113 |
| Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama | General Information | ☎ 0088-242-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-242-113 |
| Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane | General Information | ☎ 0088-259-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-259-113 |
| Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi | General Information | ☎ 0088-247-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-247-113 |
| Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa | General Information | ☎ 0088-250-157 |
| | Customer Assistance | ☎ 0088-250-113 |

V501SH Instruction Manual Vodafone live!

August 2005, First Edition

Vodafone K.K.

For additional information, please visit a Vodafone shop.

Model: V501SH

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handset, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always be sure to erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.